

Christchurch City Council MINUTES ATTACHMENTS

Date: Thursday 2 May 2024
Time: 3pm
Venue: Council Chambers, Civic Offices,
53 Hereford Street, Christchurch

TABLE OF CONTENTS NGĀ IHIRANGI	PAGE
3. Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Thursday 2 May 2024	
A. 2269 - Banks Peninsula Community Board - Presentation.....	6
B. 2087 - Waipapa Papanui-Innes-Central Community Board - Presentation	12
C. 2639 - Waihoru Spreydon-Cashmere-Heathcote Community Board - Presentation.....	20
D. 1560 - Kō Mahi Ko Ora (c/- Nōku Te Ao Charitable Trust) - Presentation.....	27
E. 2543 - Governors Bay Jetty - Presentation	34
F. 2833 - Robbie Peacock - Updated Submission	97
G. 3603 - Food Resilience Network Inc - Presentation.....	104
H. 3577 - Marie Byrne - Presentation	115
I. 2919 - Avon Ōtākaro Network Inc - Presentation	123
3. Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Friday 3 May 2024	
A. 783 - Orana Wildlife Trust - Presentation.....	129
B. 2384 - Central Plains Water - Presentation.....	145
C. 3053 - Drucilla Kingi-Patterson - Handouts.....	150
D. 3653 - Andrew McDougall - Presentation	158
E. 2409 - The Youth Hub Trust - Booklet	162
F. 3529 - Marc Duff - Presentation	176
G. 3529 - Marc Duff - Handouts.....	179
H. 3957 - Spokes Canterbury - Presentation.....	193
I. 865 - Kelvin Duncan - Handout	201
J. 2476 - Simeon Park Community Group - Submission	202
K. 2610 - Akaroa District Promotions - Links and photos.....	208
L. 2610 - Akaroa District Promotions - Poem	210
3.. Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Tuesday 7 May 2024	
A. 2068 - Public Art Advisory Group - Presentation.....	212
B. 1969 - Christine Dann - Supporting Document	243
C. 2098 - Christchurch and Hanmer Attractions - Presentation	245
D. 3887 - Commodore Airport Hotel Ltd - Document	254

E.	2000 - Canterbury Community Gardens Association - Presentation.....	259
F.	2055 - Joanne Byrne - Presentation	272
G.	2048 - Naval Point - Handout	279
H.	2686 - Joe Conaghan - Additional Document	297
I.	4019 - Ross Hebblethwaite - Video Link.....	302
J.	3392 - Stephen Wood - Additional Document.....	303

3. Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Wednesday 8 May 2024

A.	3989 - Mary O'Connor - Presentation	309
B.	3989 - Mary OConnor - Handout	334
C.	2776 - Orton Bradley Park Trust - Presentation	338
D.	3325 - Adele Geradts - Presentation.....	340
E.	2669 - Better for Brighton - Presentation	346
F.	2503 - New Brighton Community Gardens - Presentation.....	365
G.	3873 - Transport, Society & Environment Group - Presentation.....	373
H.	3873 - Transport, Society & Environment Group - Infographic.....	384
I.	3665 - Friends of the Banks Peninsula - Presentation.....	386
J.	2995 - Citizen's Advice Bureau - Presentation	402
K.	3954 - Andrew Metherell - presentation	413

3. Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Thursday 9 May 2024

A.	2518 - Deans Avenue Project - Presentation	418
B.	2896 - Free Theatre Christchurch - Presentation.....	424
C.	2338 - Coronation Reserve Residents Group - Presentation	490
D.	1283 - Christchurch Children's Christmas Parade - Presentation.....	540
E.	2525 - Adrienne Georgine - Presentation.....	581
F.	3844 - My-Linh Dang - Submission	589
G.	3717 - Te Pātaka o Rākaihautū Banks Peninsula Geopark Trust - Presentation.....	592
H.	3106 - Te Puna Matarau - presentation.....	597
I.	3650 - Aaron McLoughlin for Leslie Mcauley - Notes	598
J.	851 - Kevin Lamb - Presentation.....	608
K.	2854 - Christchurch Central City Business Association - Presentation.....	619
L.	3713 - Akaroa French Festival Society - Presentation	627
M.	3414 - Chrissie Williams - Presentation.....	642
N.	3986 - Chris Kelly - Presentation.....	646
O.	3883 - Colin Meurk - Presentation	659
P.	3883 - Colin Meurk - Handout	665

3. Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Friday 10 May 2024

A.	3719 - Lena Norton - Presentation	671
B.	2902 - Prawindra Mukhia - Presentation	675
C.	2999 & 3405 - Watch This Space & The Flare Ōtautahi Street Arts Festival - Presentation	679
D.	3834 - Matt Stewart - Presentation.....	695
E.	2954 - Tim Frank - Presentation.....	706
F.	2901 - Conservation Volunteers NZ - Presentation	711
G.	3619 - Richmond Residents and Business Association - Presentation.....	718
H.	95 - Anton Wilke - Supporting Document	734
I.	3998 - Christchurch Envirohub - Presentation.....	740

J.	6903 - Don Jellyman - Submission	746
K.	1472 - Te Pae - Submission	754
L.	1472 - Te Pae - Presentation	757

3. **Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Saturday 11 May 2024**

A.	3922 - Ian McIntosh - Presentation.....	766
B.	2690 - Robbie Dobbie - Presentation	790
C.	3842 - Reuben Davidson - Submission.....	816
D.	3842 - Reuben Davidson - Handout.....	817
E.	3941 - Smith Street Community Farm Trust - Presentation	819
F.	3941 - Smith Street Community Farm Trust - Additional Document (ECan Report)	861
G.	3941 - Smith Street Community Farm Trust - Additional Document (CECAP Report Interactive).....	949
H.	2748 - Age Concern Canterbury - Presentation.....	1071
I.	3752 - Simon Blackburn - Presentation	1077
J.	3978 - Sandra Bragg - Submission.....	1080
K.	2979 - Zac Beckett-Knight - Presentation.....	1088
L.	570 - Greg Partridge - Presentation.....	1104
M.	2897 - Ōnuku Rūnanga - Submission	1116
N.	3429 - Avonhead Community Group Inc - Oral Submission	1124

3. **Draft Long Term Plan 2024-2034 Hearing of Verbal Submissions - Monday 13 May 2024**

A.	3799 - Richmond Community Garden Trust - Presentation	1128
B.	3652 - Andrew Hamlin - Presentation	1139
C.	3652 - Andrew Hamlin - Handout	1161
D.	3501 - Ōpāwaho Heathcote River Network - Presentation.....	1164
E.	1813 - Jenny May - Submission.....	1174
F.	3987 - Garden of Tane - Presentation	1175
G.	2827 - Generation Zero - Presentation.....	1188
H.	931 - Canterbury Museum Trust Board - Presentation	1203
I.	2775 - Robinsons Bay Ratepayers Association - Presentation	1213
J.	3984 - Suky Thompson - Presentation.....	1222
K.	2795 - Brent Martin - Presentation	1227
L.	2784 - Te Whare Roimata - Presentation	1233
M.	2617 - Graeme Moore - Presentation	1234
N.	2843 - Lyttelton Historical Museum Society - Presentation	1238
O.	2688 - Comte de Paris Descendants Group - Presentation.....	1256
P.	2106 - Styx Living Laboratory - Presentation	1272
Q.	1500 - Warwick Schaffer - Presentation.....	1279
R.	2360 - Graham and Linda Harris - Supporting Document	1280
S.	2237 - Pepita Griffiths - Submission	1281
T.	2591 - Bronwyn Hayward - Submission	1287
U.	2213 - Living Wage Christchurch - Submission	1289
V.	2637 - Hannah Herchenbach - Submission	1293
W.	3856 - Portia Bishop - Submission.....	1299
X.	3629 - Marie Graham - Submission.....	1303
Y.	334 - Clare Marshall - Submission	1305
Z.	3629 - Marie Graham - Supporting Document	1313

AA.	4043 - Maurice White Native Trust - Supporting Document	1314
BB.	2606 - Asif Hussain - Supporting Document.....	1316

Slide Show Submission To CCC On The Draft LTP (Long Term Plan) 2024-34

Ian McIntosh (B.App.Sci.Rur.Tech. (Hons))

25 April 2024.

China & India (and others) are both exempt from emissions control

<https://twitter.com/Restitutor/status/1778184851885334908>

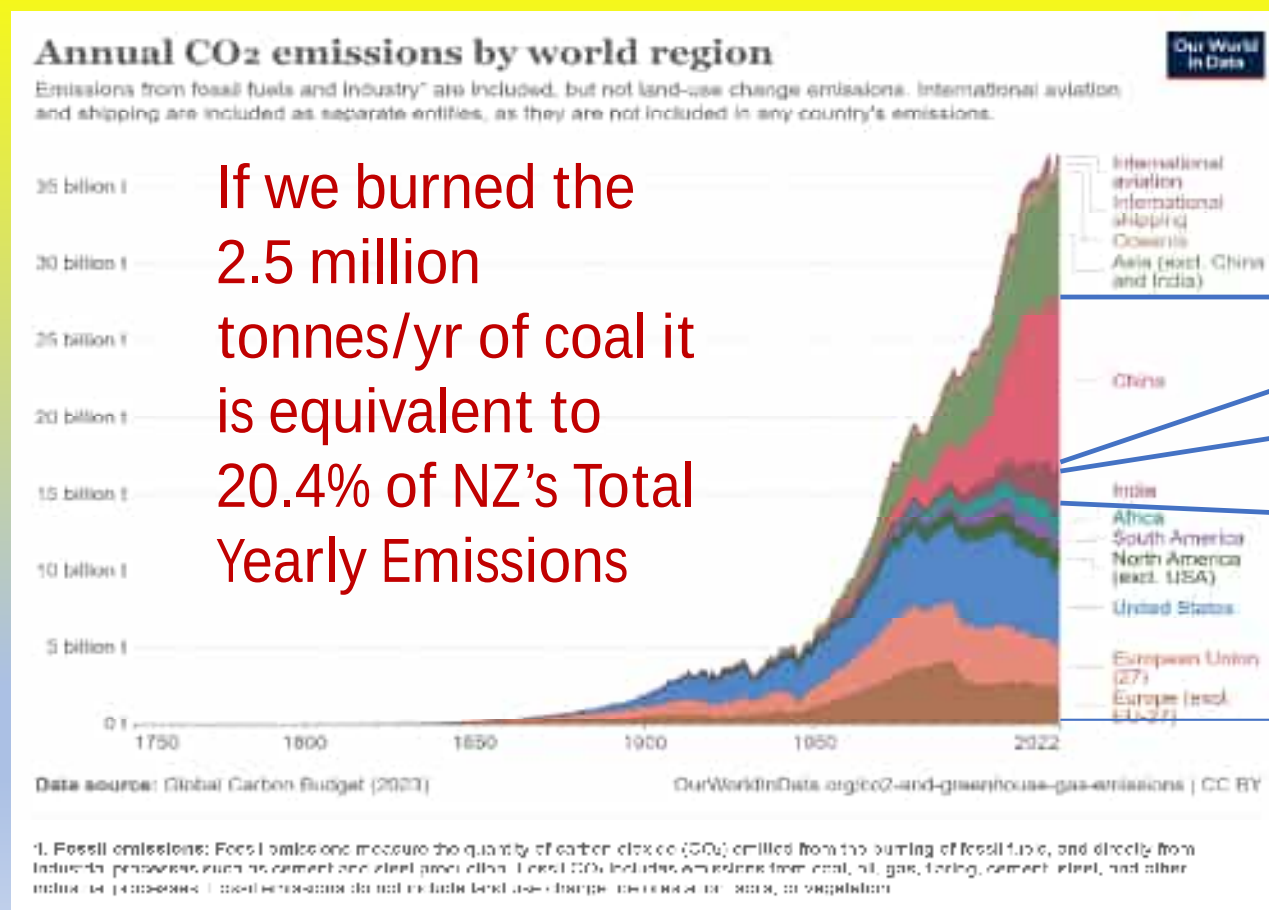
And yet through Lyttelton Port, which is 65% owned by the CCC, 2.5 million tonnes per year of coking coal is exported to China etc.

The utter hypocrisy is that in return the LTP is proposing significant taxes (rates) to reduce emissions & to pay for mitigations.

The impact on the poor & families will be devastating

And here is why that is evil!

NZ Emissions Were Only 0.087% Of The World's Output In 2022 (32.21 Million Tonnes)



If we burned the
2.5 million
tonnes/yr of coal it
is equivalent to
20.4% of NZ's Total
Yearly Emissions

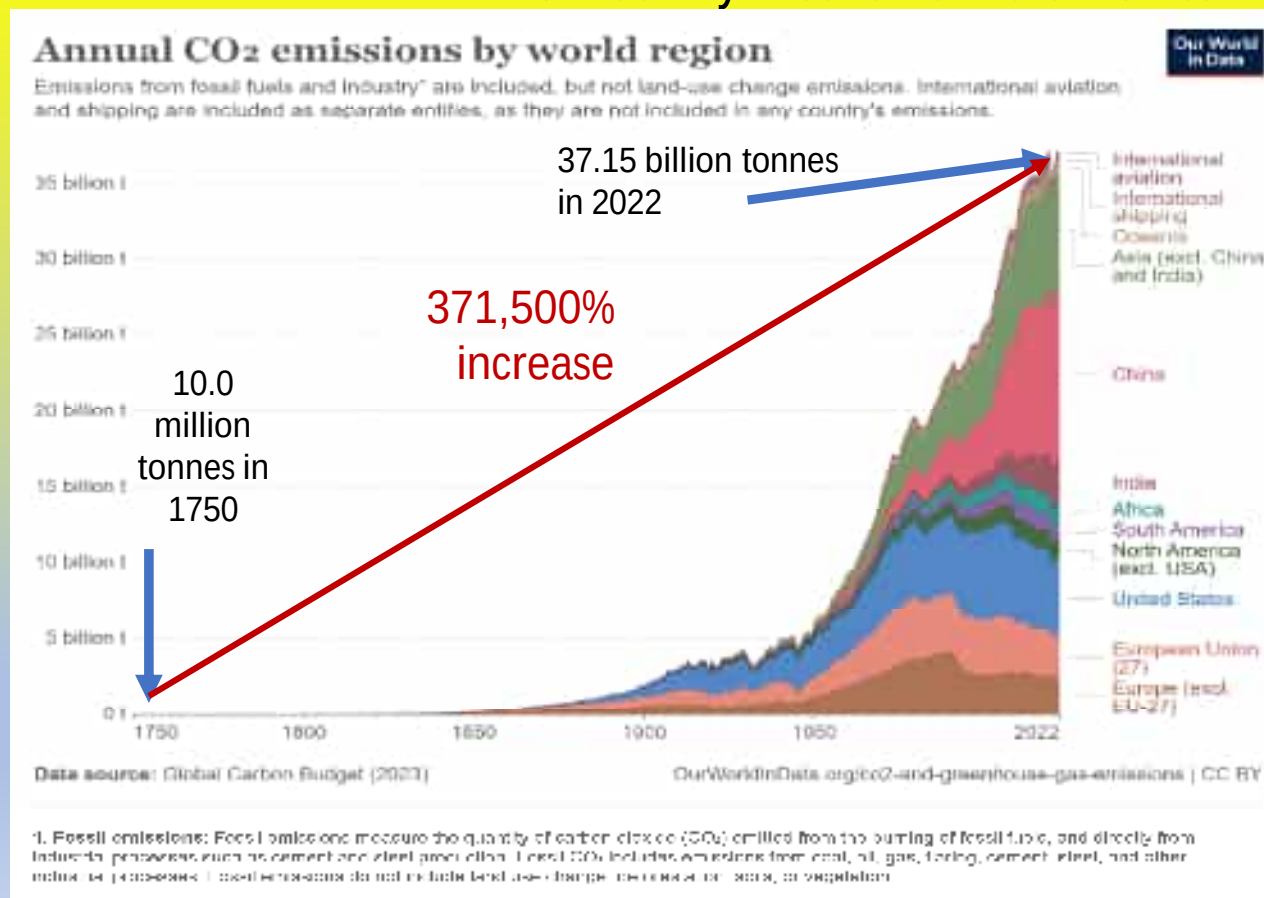
China 11.40 billion tonnes
(30.7%) & they are building 2
coal fired power stations/wk.

India 2.83 billion tonnes (7.6%)
& they are the world's biggest
producers of milk.

<https://apnews.com/article/methane-emissions-dairy-farming-climate-change-india-global-warming-agriculture-5aa77866e27f6d94e14e4e394e0b7201#:~:text=India%20is%20the%20third%20largest,the%20vast%20majority%20from%20cattle>

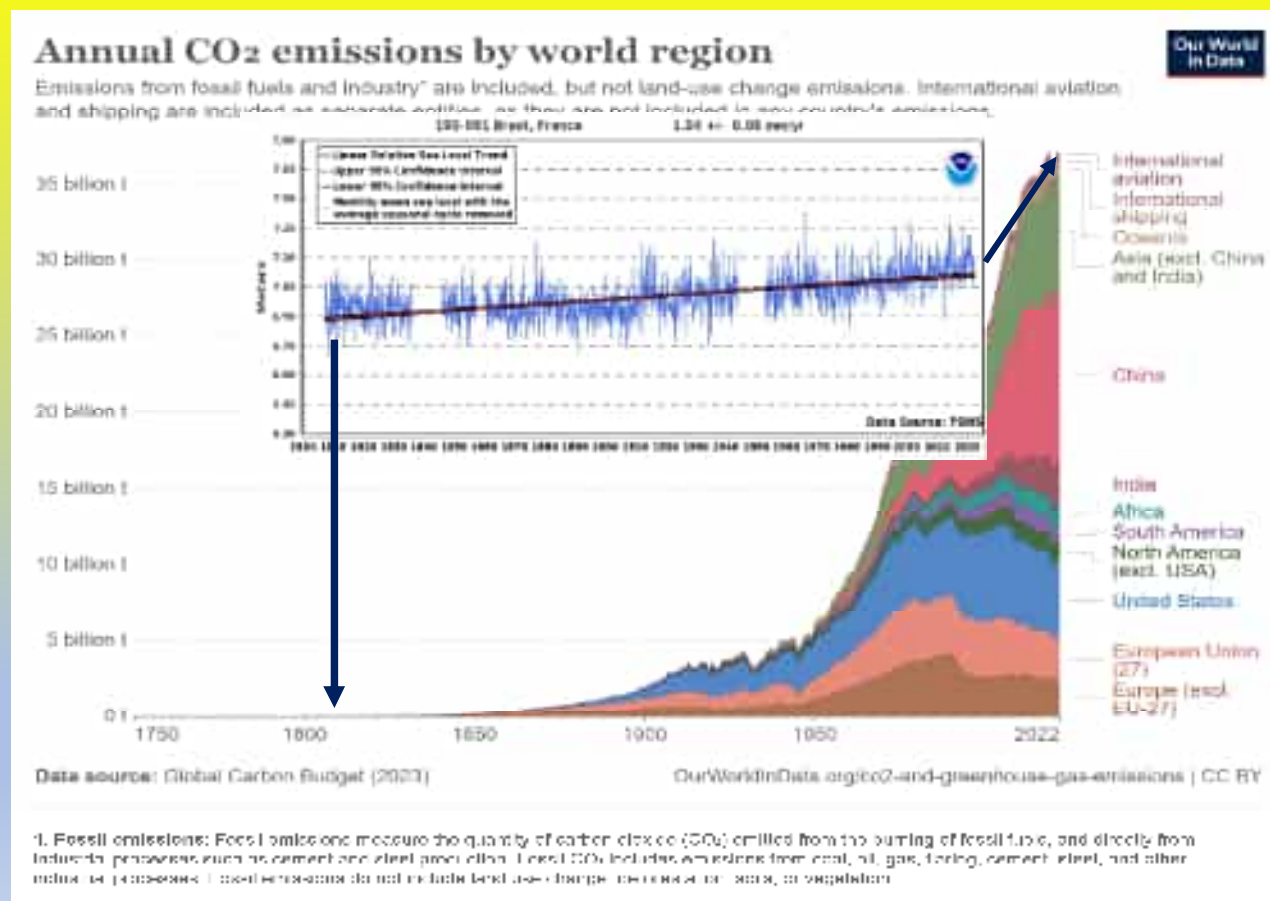
NZ 32.21 Million
Tonnes (0.087%)

A 371,500 % Increase In CO₂ Emissions Since The Start Of The Industrial Revolution In 1750, Has Not Had Any Effect On Climate Metrics

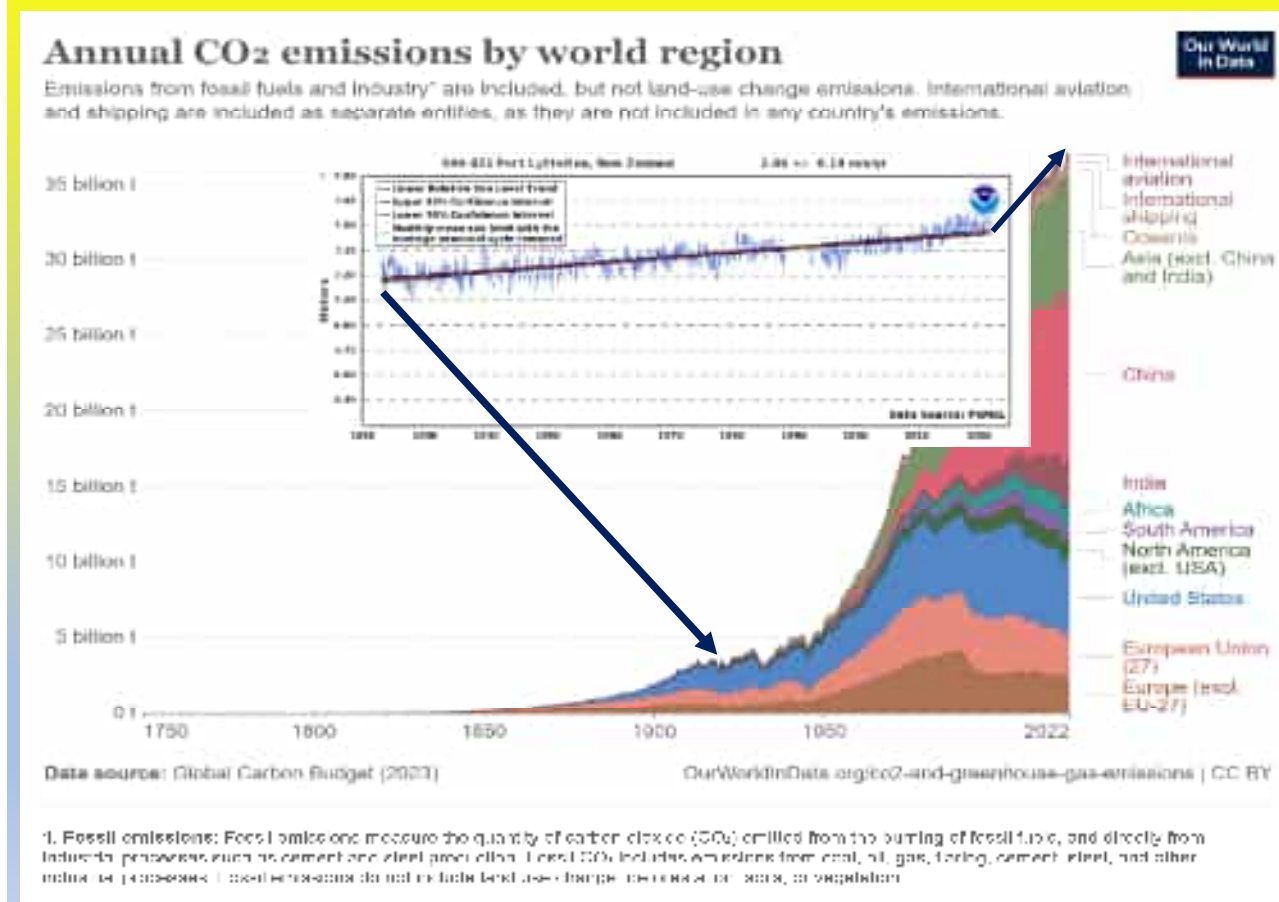


How do we know that?

The Rate Of Sea Level Rise Since 1807 In Brest (France) Has Not Shown Any Increase

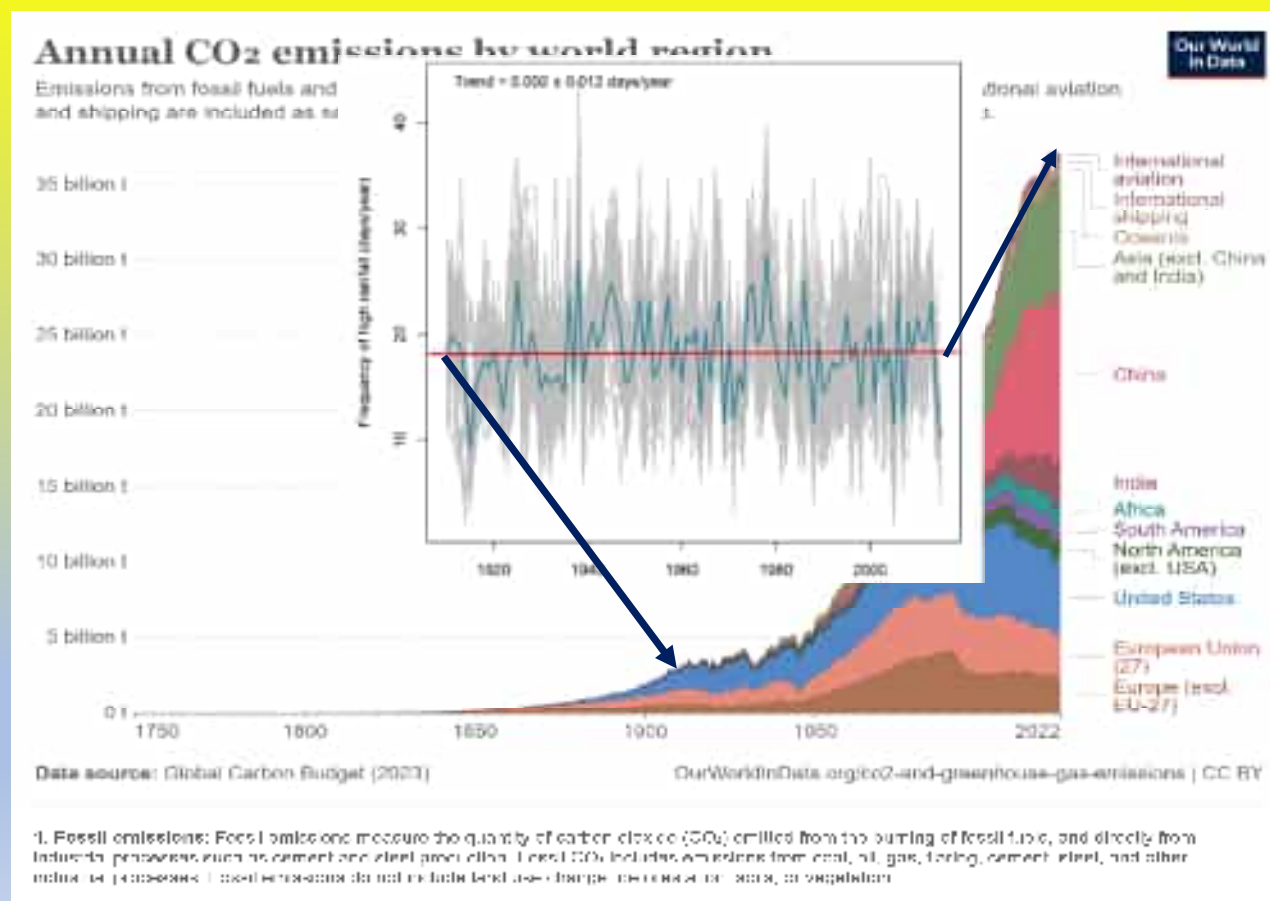


The Rate Of Sea Level Rise Since 1922 At Lyttelton Has Not Shown Any Increase



The linear trend is repeated in multiple world sites e.g. Poland since 1810, New York since 1855, Sydney since 1885, Auckland since 1905.

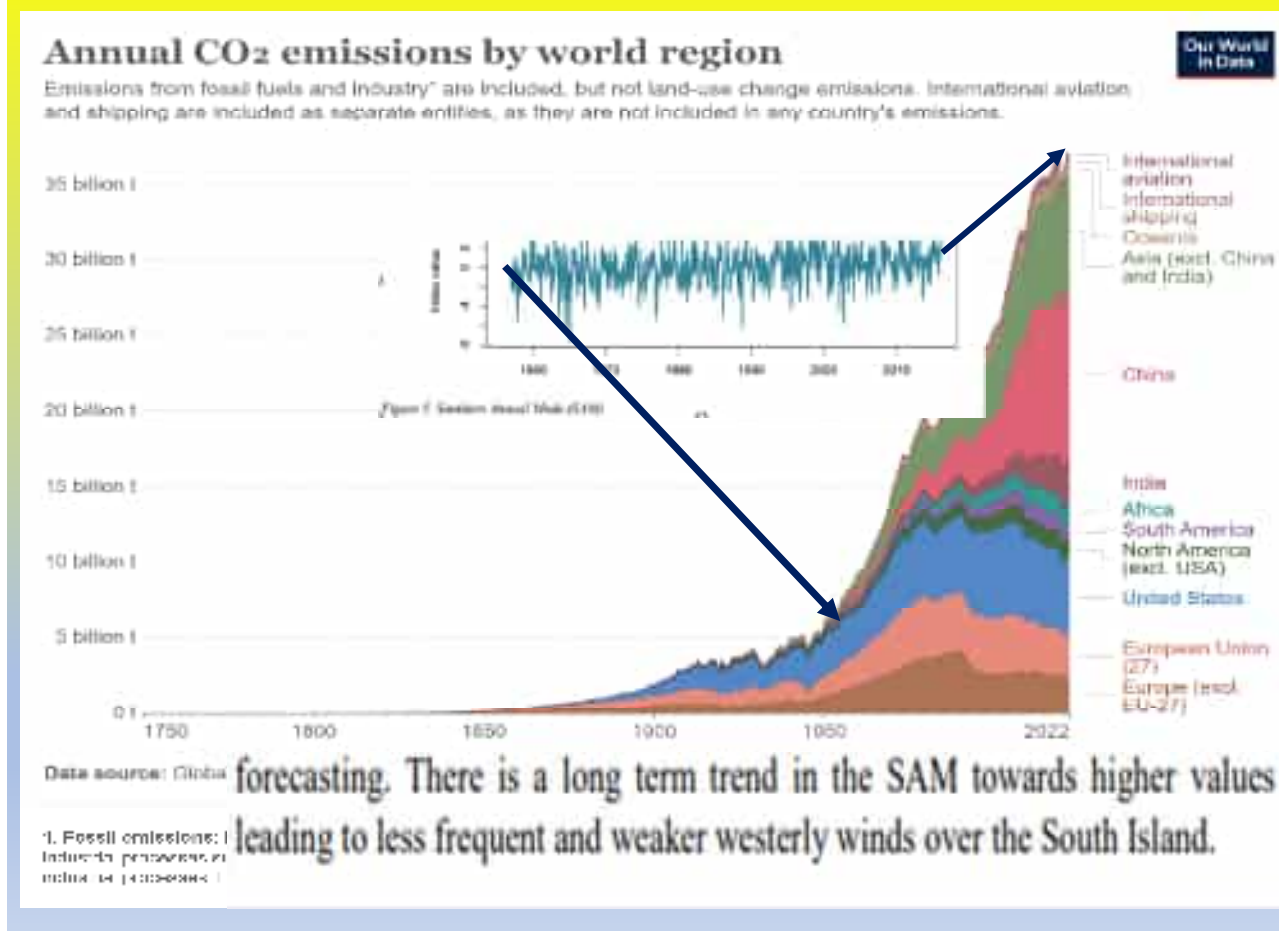
Selwyn District Council's Commissioned Report Shows No Change In Mean & Extreme Rainfall Since 1910.



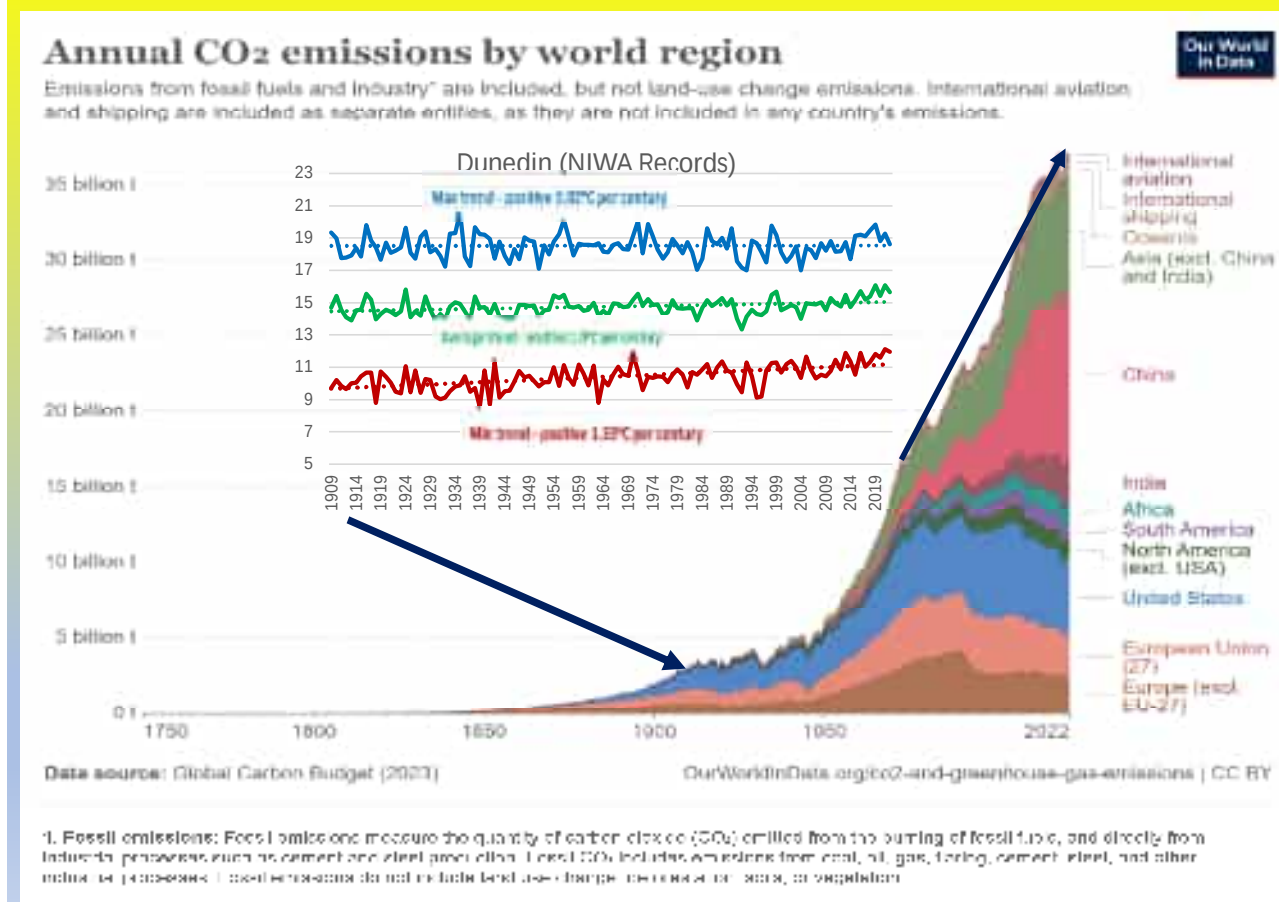
“The time series of annual frequency of rainfall for all 126 stations together with the mean, is shown in Figure 7. Analysis of the mean of these time series shows no long term trend, no statistically significant correlation to the ENSO and SAM signals, and no statistically significant differences between annual frequencies for the different IPO phases”.

IMPACT OF CLIMATE CYCLES AND TRENDS
ON SELWYN DISTRICT WATER ASSETS Helen
Rutter (Aqualinc Research Ltd); Murray
England (Selwyn District Council); Tim Kerr
(Aqualinc Research Ltd)

Selwyn District Council's Commissioned Report Shows A Decreasing Strength In Westerly Winds Since 1955.

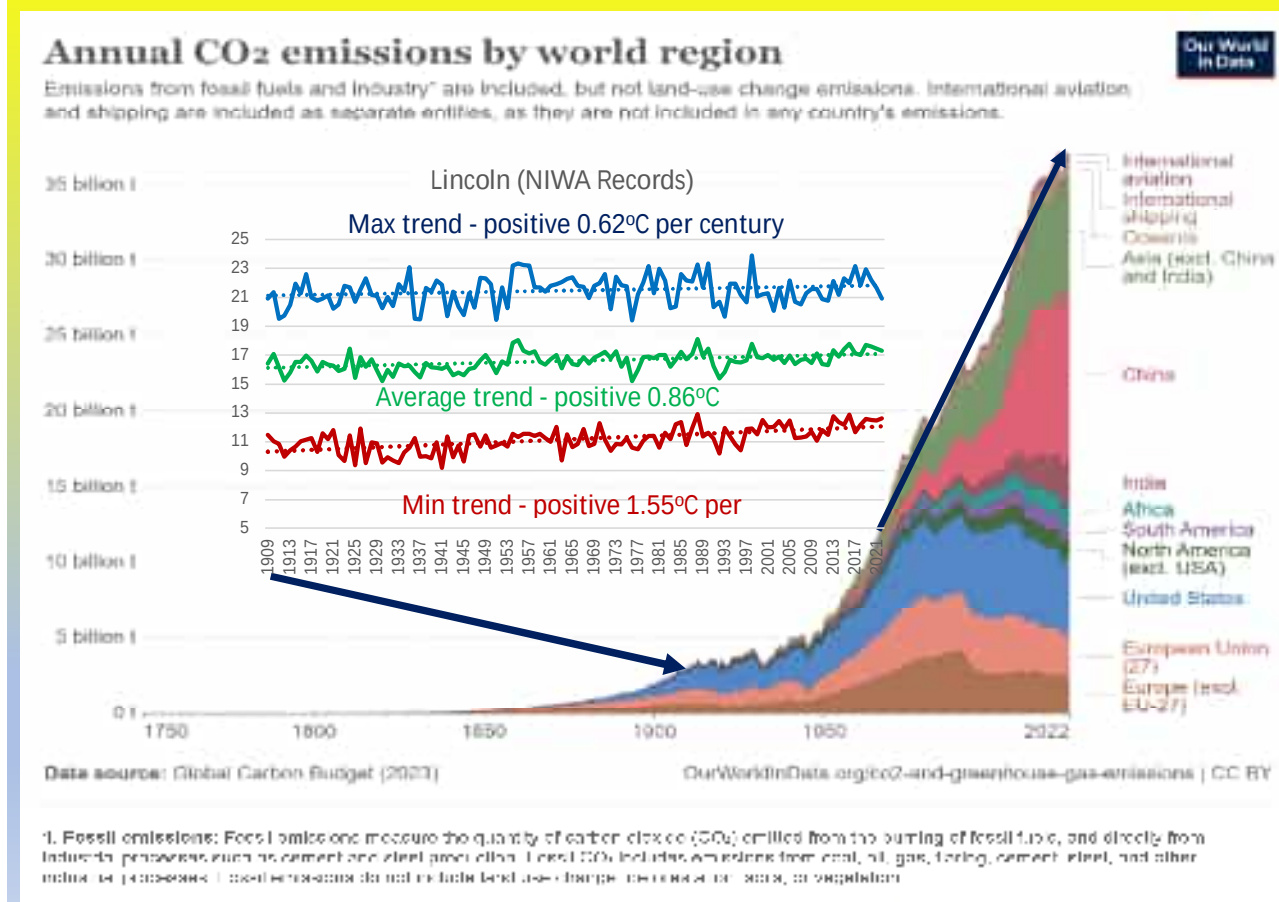


NIWA Records Since 1909 Show Dunedin's Maximum, Average & Minimum Temperatures Show A Linear Increase Not Related To Emissions.



The rate of increase in Dunedin's maximum temperature is 0.02oC per century.

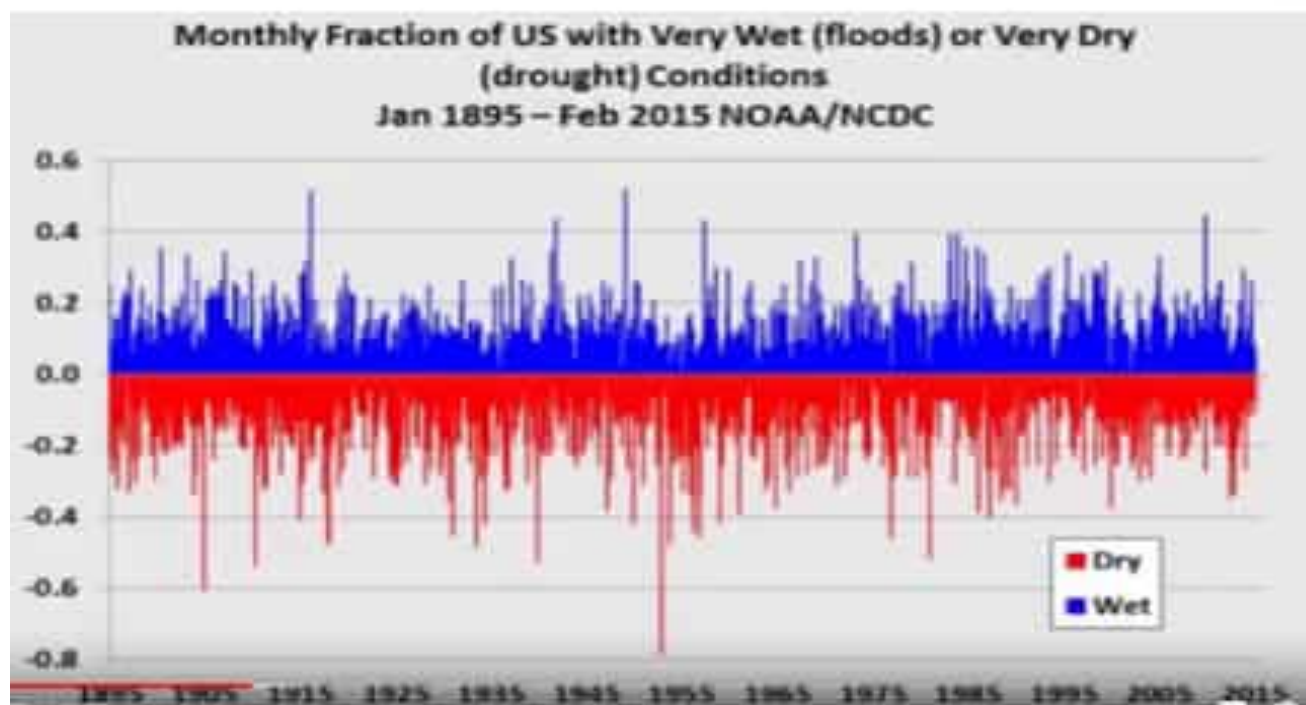
NIWA Records Since 1909 Show Lincoln's Maximum, Average & Minimum Temperatures Show A Linear Increase Not Related To Emissions.



The rate of increase in Lincoln's maximum temperature is 0.62oC per century.

How can taxes, including on the poor, to reduce emissions & to build mitigations, be warranted?

Floods and Droughts In The USA From 1895-2015. (NOAA - National Oceanic & Atmospheric Administration)



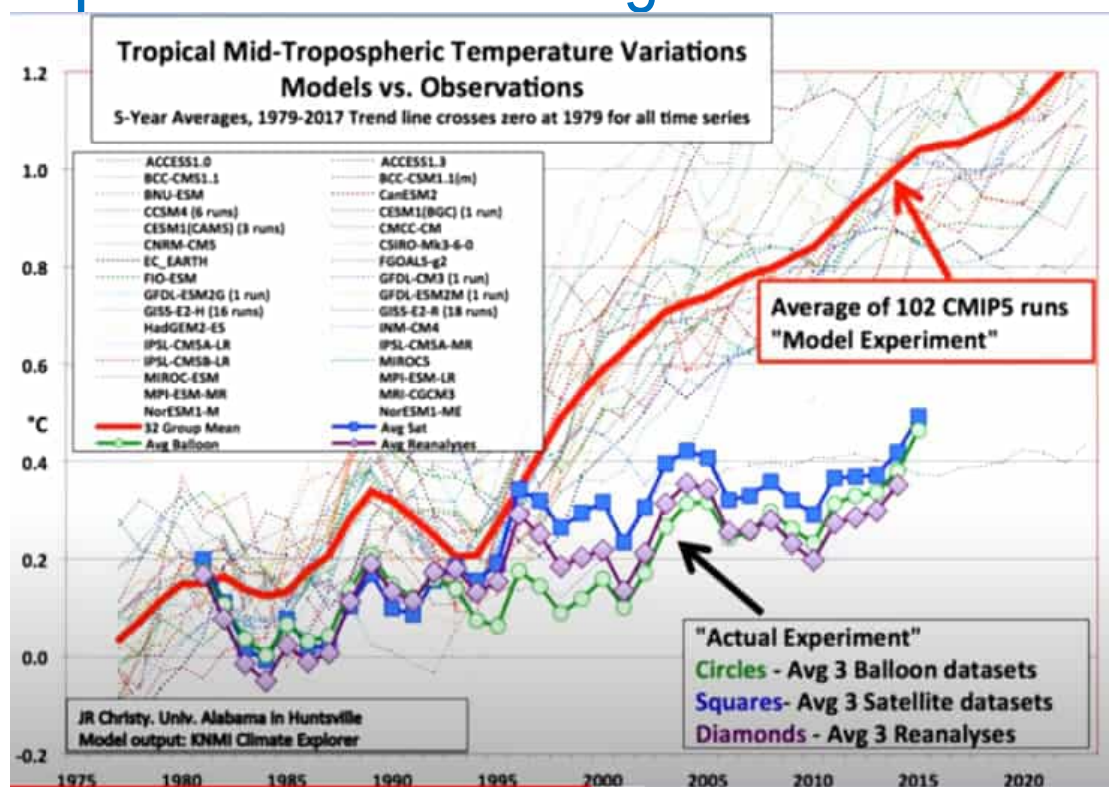
- ▶ The IPCC says that hurricanes & tornadoes show no changes attributed to human influences, and that floods are not getting worse
- ▶ <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I90FpjPGLBE>
 - ▶ See 22:34 mins into the interview

This Is Not Surprising Since According
To The IPCC, Human Influence Is 1%
Of The Radiation Affect.

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=l90FpjPGLBE>
(see at 8:00 mins)

So what makes you think you can achieve any of your
goals via tax funded mitigations against these historic
measures of climate?

Climate Models With > 200% Error In Predicting Temperature Are Being Used To Make Gov't & CCC Policy



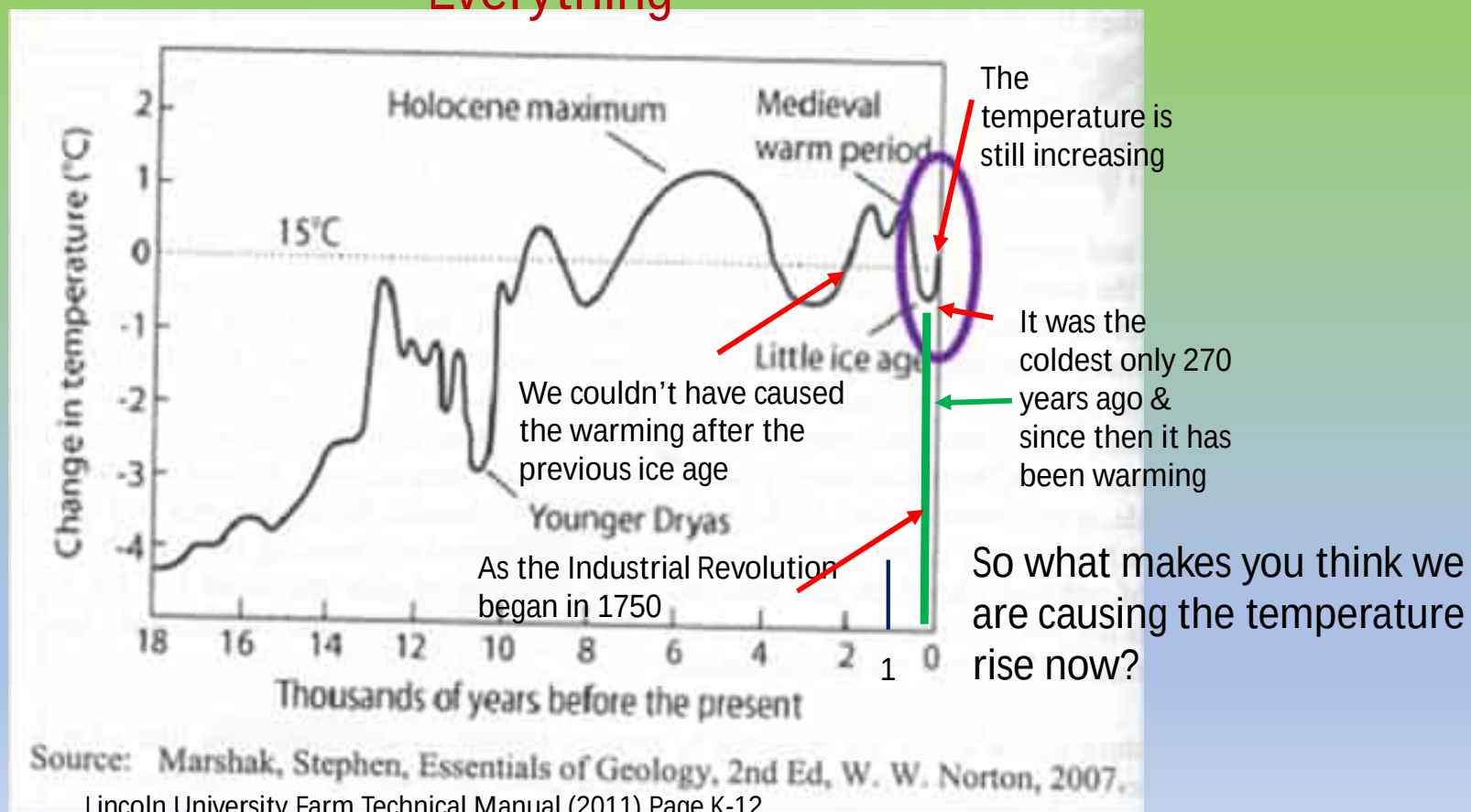
The models have an error of 200% compared to actual records from weather balloons & satellites

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=l8hdE3eZ6vs&feature=youtu.be>

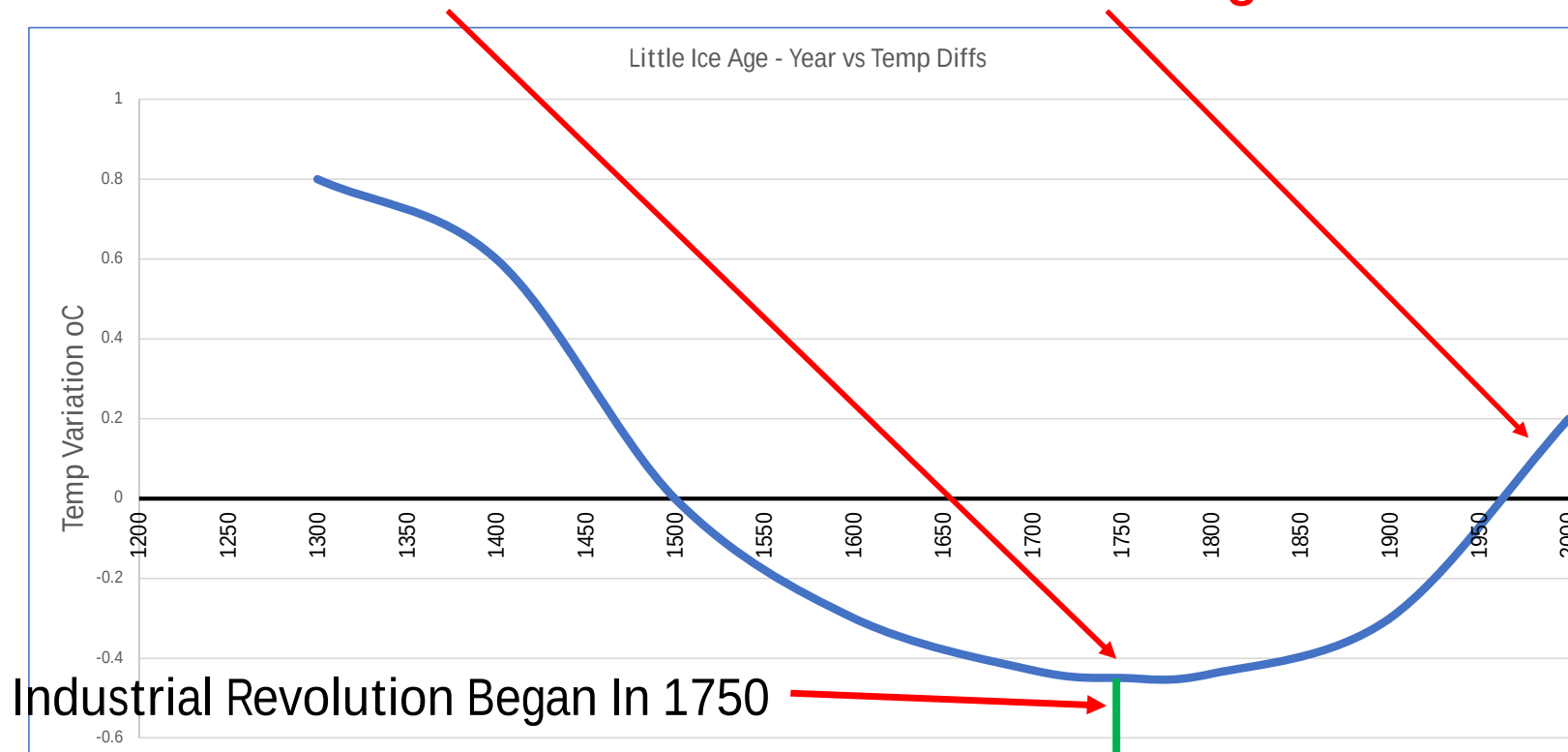
If You Want To Avoid Your Hypocrisy Then Here Is Good News

As I Have Shown, Human Emissions Have Had No Affect
On Climate Metrics, & Here Is The Reason For A Slow
Increase In Temperature & Sea Level & It Has Nothing To
Do With Man.

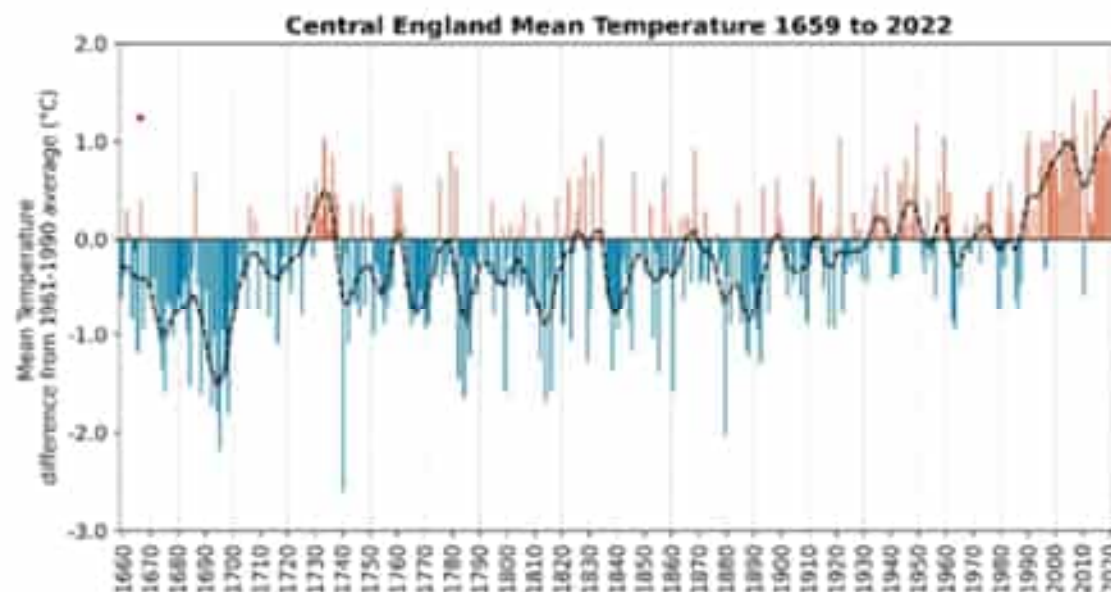
The Little Ice Age of Only 270 Years Ago Explains Everything



The Little Ice Began In The 1300's, It Peaked
Around 1750 & We Are Still Recovering From It

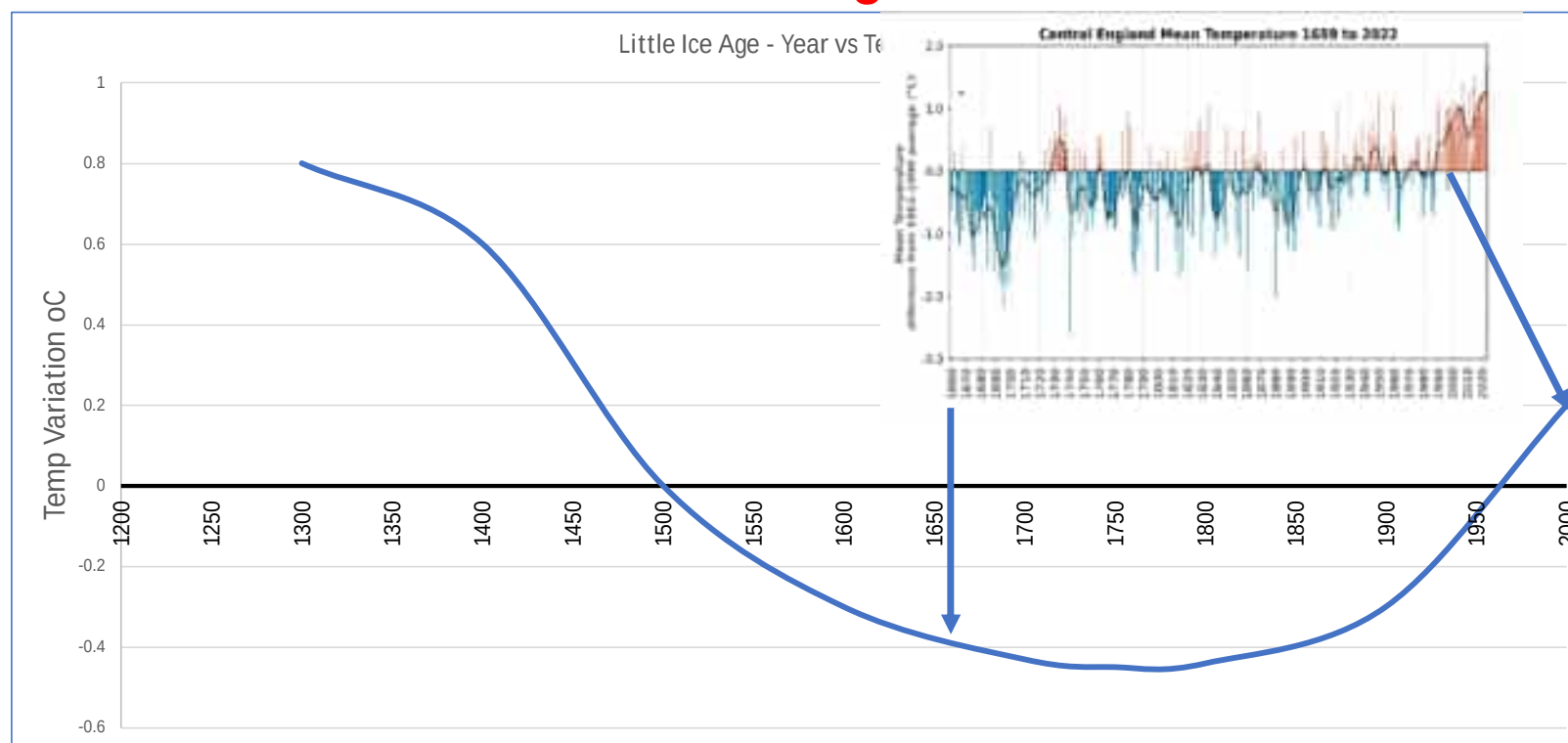


The Oldest Temperature Records In The World. They Commenced When The Thermometer Was Invented Around 1654.

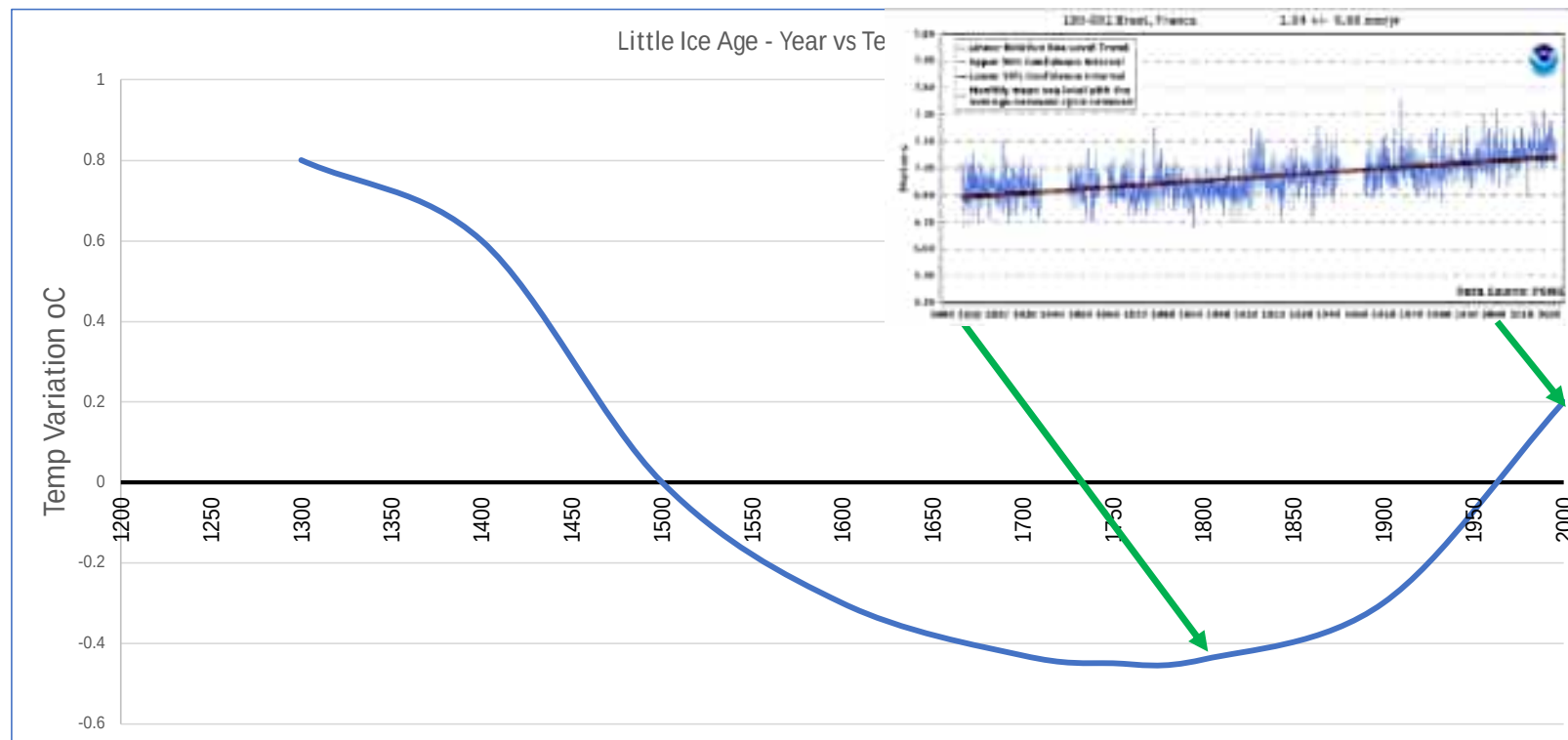


<https://www.metoffice.gov.uk/research/climate/maps-and-data/cet-series>

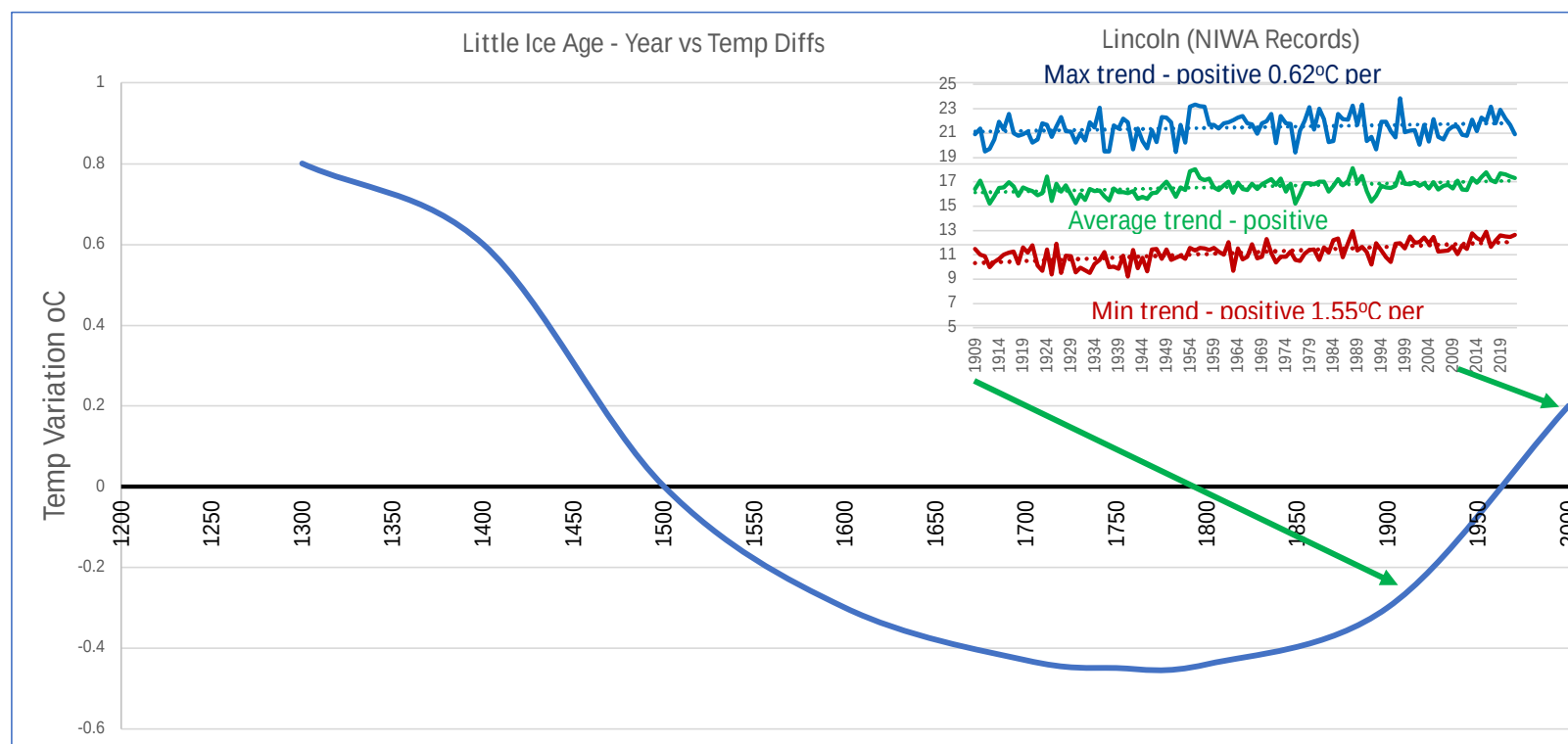
And They Support The Hypothesis That The Earth Is Slowly Getting Warmer Due To Recovery From The Little Ice Age.



As Do The World's Oldest Sea Level Records



As Do 110 Years Of Lincoln's Temperature Records



**There Is No Justification For Climate
Change To Warrant An Increase In Rates.**

To do so shows that ideology is driving the agenda, not truth.



French electric police van powered by a diesel generator is a screaming example of how ridiculous it is to be taxing your own people for a theory so desperately short of evidence.

By The Way, The Rise In Temperature Of
The Little Ice Age Explains The Slow Rise
In CO₂.

Just Watch This Short Video.

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wK4reyh86w0>

Thank you.

CCC Long Term Plan 2024 - 2034

Presented By Robbie Dobbie

My Experience

- Meteorological observer
- Geology technician
- Air Traffic Control – retrained in meteorology
- Early adopter in technology
- Analyst & Financial Director
- Business Mentor/Coach & Strategy Consultant

What I Will Talk About

- ✓ Climate Change
- ✓ Alpine Fault
- ✓ Fiscal

Climate is the...

Average Long-term Pattern of Weather in a Particular Area

He Who Controls the Weather Will Control the World



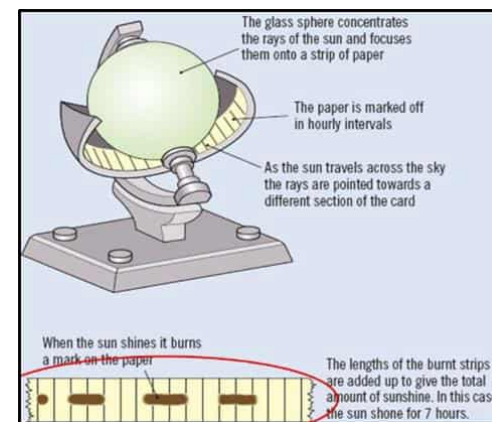
***Lyndon B. Johnson
May 27, 1962 Former US President***

***"It lays the predicate & foundation
for the development of a weather
satellite, that will permit man to
determine the world's cloud layer,
and ultimately to control the
weather.***

***He who controls the weather will
control the world."***

Changes to our Climate...

- Different ways of measuring:
 - Positioning of equipment
 - Types of equipment
 - Mercury/Analog vs Electronic/Digital
- The two are not comparable
- Changes to location of weather stations
- Sun data removed from Met service website after query

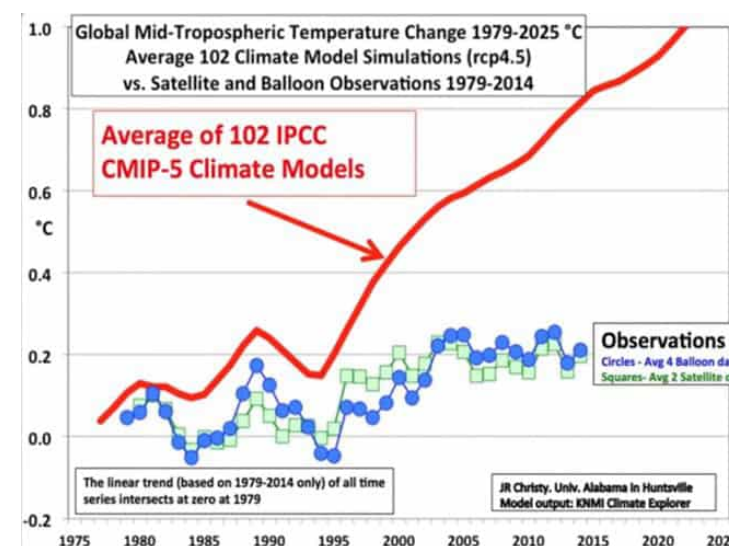


Facts vs Modelling

- Real Climate Data Sets from Satellites and Weather Balloons
- [Dr John D Christy on Making Sense of Data in the Climate Change Debate](#) (14:05)

Vs.

- Media bias – dramatizing extremes
- Theories – based on assumptions
- [NIWA missing data](#)
- IPCC data based on flawed data



Scientists Deny Climate Emergency

Item 3

Attachment B

Air Con by Ian Wishart

["More than 31,000 scientists have signed a petition denying that man is responsible for global warming"](#) – Britain's Daily Telegraph
30th May 2008



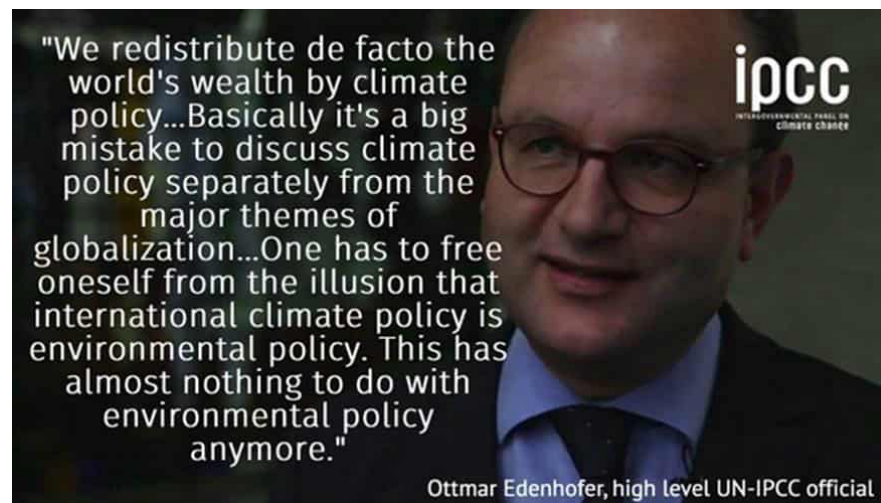
[46 'Climate Change Denying' Statements Made by Former IPCC Scientists](#)



UN-Intergovernmental Panel for Climate Change

IPCC Co-Chairman, Ottmar

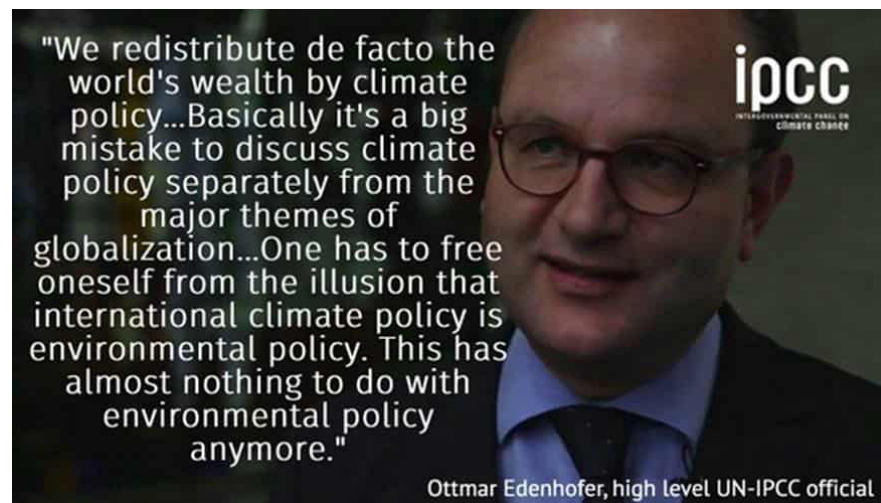
Edenhofer November 2010



“We **redistribute de facto the world’s wealth by climate policy**... Basically it’s a big mistake to discuss climate policy separately from the major themes of **globalisation**... One has to free oneself from the illusion that international climate policy is environmental policy. This **has almost nothing to do with environmental policy anymore**”.

UN-Intergovernmental Panel for Climate Change

IPCC Co-Chairman, Ottmar Edenhofer
November 2010



- Get some broad-based support, to capture the public's imagination
- **Entails getting loads of media coverage**
- **We have to offer up scary scenarios**
- **Make simplified, dramatic statements**
- Make little mention of the doubts we might have
- **Each of us** has to decide the **right balance between being effective and being honest**

What Climate Changes are Happening?

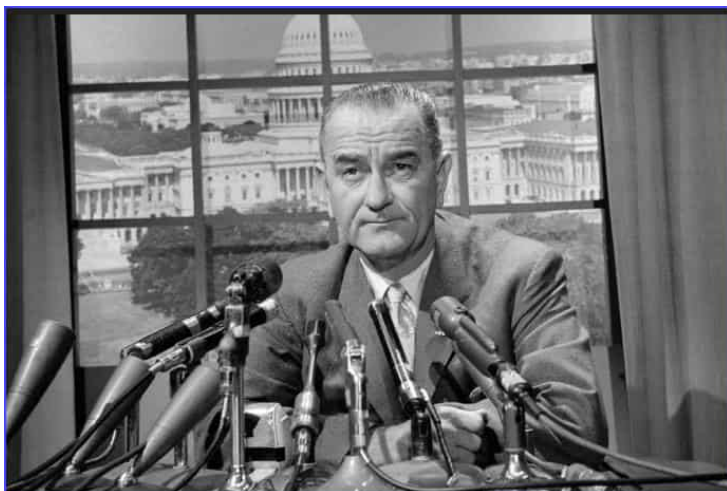
We hear of climate fear via the media...

- **Flooding**
- **Fires**
- **Change of tides**
- **Sea-level rise**
- **Geo Engineering**
- **Change in temperatures**

Control of Space Means Control of the World

Senate Armed Services Committee Hearing, January 1959

From “The Future of Space 2060 & Implications for U.S. Strategy: Report on the Space Futures Workshop



“From space, the masters of infinity would have the power to control the earth’s weather, to cause drought and flood, to change the tides and raise the levels of the sea, to divert the gulf stream and change temperate climates to frigid.”
VP Lyndon B. Johnson

On Nov. 25, 1957 Senator Lyndon B. Johnson began hearings on American space and missile activities in the Preparedness Investigating Subcommittee of the Senate Armed Services Committee. This led on Feb. 6, 1958 to the establishment of a Senate Special Committee on Space and Aeronautics, with the goal of establishing a space agency, and Senator Johnson as its chairman. ***NASA formally opened for business on Oct. 1, 1958.***

If Space is Being Manipulated to Control the Earth's Weather **- *How could that be done?***

High Altitude Active Auroral Research Programme 1997 (HAARP) technology - used for civil and defence purposes

- Weather modification – potential for weather disasters
- Beneficial civil operations – Locating – oil, natural gas, gold, etc.
- Military applications – defence; destroying missiles; comms disruption
- Natural disasters - earthquakes
- Resonance Effects on: Living Things; Insects; Human Brain Waves

Control of Space

“What they are not paying any attention to is what’s happening to the ionosphere while it is being held 80 miles out into space by this high energy beam; it’s heating up and all of the molecules in that ionosphonic region are absorbing energy out of that radio beam...”

– Brooks Agnew Ph.D. Earth Tomographer Physicist

“HAARP is playing with the energy system of the earth” – Dr. Patrick Flanagan, Electromagnetic Specialist

Technology Advancements

1997 - 1999



HAARP facility in Gakoma, Alaska



[HARP CubeSat 2020](#)

Naseby – Phased-array radar

2022

Birdlings Flat Facility 1980s to Nov 2016 – Started 1960s



*Birdlings Flat –
18-wavelength
Meteor Radar
transmitters are half
a kilometre long*



Alpine Fault

- ✓ There is a **75% chance** of the fault rupturing **by 2027 to 2069**
- ✓ There is an **82%** probability that the next earthquake on the Alpine Fault will be a magnitude **8+** lasting for **4+ minutes**
- ✓ Likely to be largest earthquake ever recorded in NZ
- ✓ Impact on **Electricity – unavailable** for many **weeks**
 - **Electric cars won't work**
 - **No internet**
 - **Resort to cash for economy – CBDC will not operate**



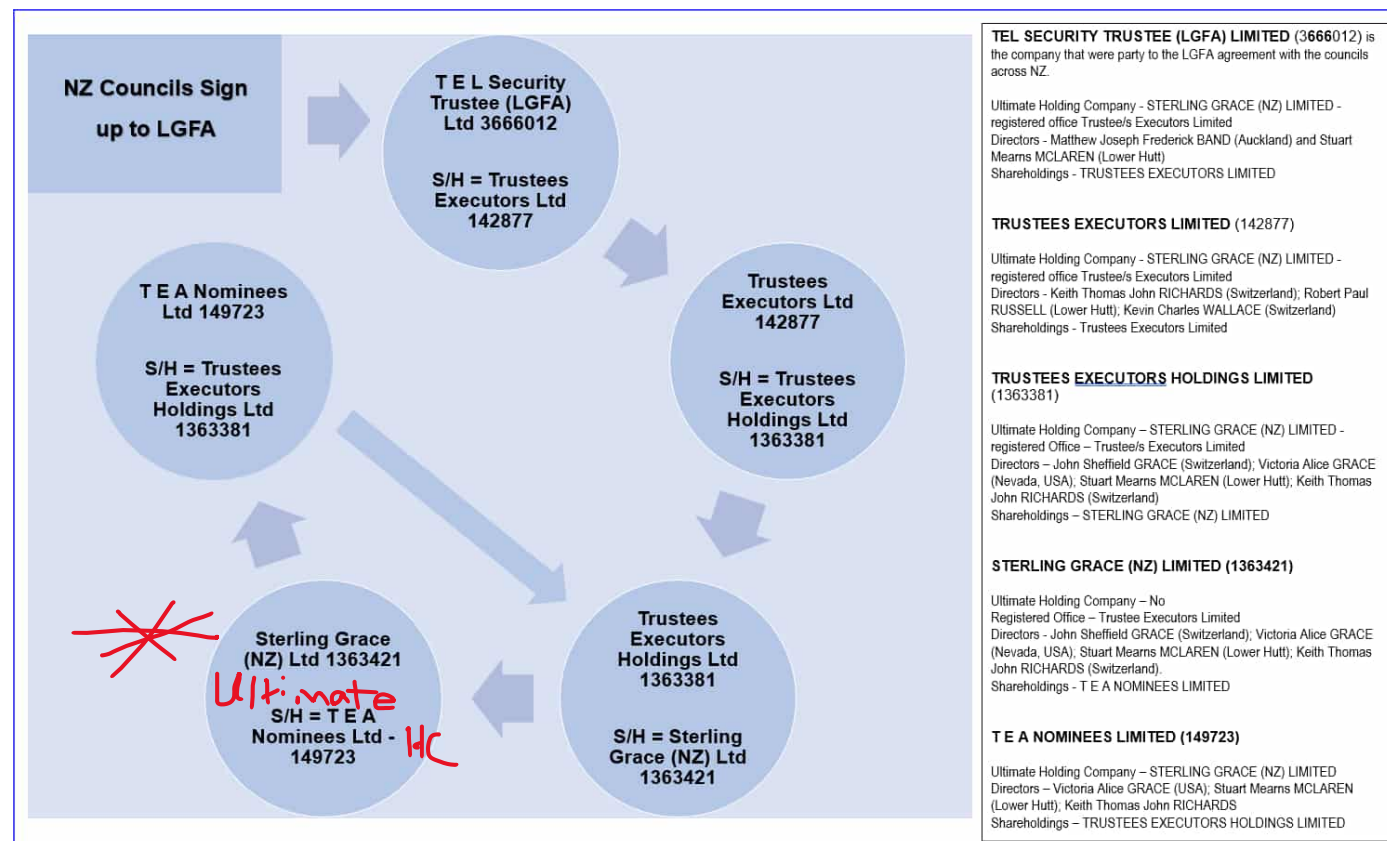
Fiscal Control

- Many of the public are struggling financially
- City Councils debt \$9B to \$11B 1/6/23 to 31/1/24 (8 mths)
- Pre-loading future debt based on assumptions - danger
- City assets NOT about maximum debt to income
- Are Sea-Levels a greater risk than AF8+?
- What safeguards do your lenders have?

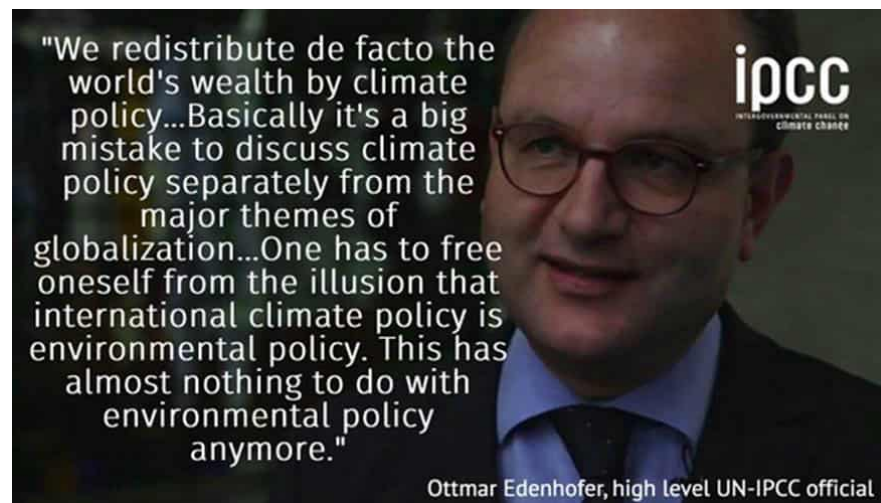
LGFA Agreement

Shareholders of
**TEL Security
Trustee (LGFA)
Ltd**

Ultimate Holding
Company: Two
directors –
Nevada &
Switzerland



UN-IPCC Co-Chairman,
Ottmar Edenhofer
November 2010



“We **redistribute de facto the world’s wealth by climate policy**... Basically it’s a big mistake to discuss climate policy separately from the major themes of **globalisation**...”

First Steps to Better Management of Climate Risk

UN Decision Making Frameworks:

- Tame problem with simple solution
- The problem and solution are **irreversibly** global
- **Control**
- Speaking consensus to power
- Precautionary Principle
- Agree on the problem
- **Impose targets and deadlines**

Pragmatic Decisions with Uncertainty:

- Recognise the problem, no single solution
- Problems and solutions are **local/regional – AF8+**
- **Understand and manage**
- Acknowledge uncertainty & disagreement
- Robust decision making
- Agree on solutions
- **Adaptive management**

Be Careful Who You Listen To...

Pilot Project – National Conversation
e.g. Trust can be enhanced by:

Independent expert: Having a trusted third-party to broker agreement between the public, politicians and technical experts. They can translate data and provide information that is reliable, accurate and easily understood and to work as the go-between in building trust.

Summary

- ✓ Climate Change
- ✓ Alpine Fault – Real risk & long term economic impact
- ✓ Fiscal control

References:

- Dr John D Christy on Making Sense of Data in the Climate Change Debate
 - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ULpGDnuz308>
- Ian Wishart on The Platform
 - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Nbd5SlwHdo0>
- >31,000 Scientists petition
 - <https://www.telegraph.co.uk/news/worldnews/2053842/Scientists-sign-petition-denying-man-made-global-warming.html>
- 46 “Climate Change Denying” Statements made by Former IPCC Scientists
 - <https://electroverse.info/climate-change-denying-statements-by-former-ipcc-scientists/>
- Ottmar Edenhofer - Climate Change Policy is about how we redistribute de facto the world’s wealth
 - <https://www.forbes.com/sites/larrybell/2013/02/05/in-their-own-words-climate-alarmists-debunk-their-science/?sh=62561a0a68a3>
- Putting the ‘con’ in consensus
 - <https://www.fraserinstitute.org/article/putting-the-con-in-consensus-not-only-is-there-no-97-per-cent-consensus-among-climate-scientists-many-misunderstand-core-issues>
- Control of Space Means Control of the World
 - <https://apps.dtic.mil/sti/pdfs/AD1095527.pdf>
- HARP CubeSat
 - <https://esi.umbc.edu/hyper-angular-rainbow-polarimeter/>
- Augie Auer on Global Warming – Two short videos
 - <https://www.desmog.com/august-auer/>
- CarbonMajors Database Launch Report
 - <https://carbonmajors.org/>

More References:

New Zealand's largest fault line, the Alpine Fault, is even longer than previously thought – Jun 2023

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UME4QhHddcY>

The Big Bad News about the Alpine Fault – 2021

<https://youtu.be/5fUj7zjbAFw>

New Zealand's Twisted Plate Boundary – 2020

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=POUwntNPFmc>

Earthquake Risk in New Zealand: A Major Model Update – Feb 2019

<https://www.air-worldwide.com/Publications/AIR-Currents/2019/Earthquake-Risk-in-New-Zealand--A-Major-Model-Update/>

New study says Alpine Fault quake interval shorter than thought: GNS Science – Mar 2017

<https://www.stuff.co.nz/science/90081709/new-study-says-alpine-fault-quake-interval-shorter-than-thought-gns-science>

Alpine Fault quake more damaging for plains – May 2016

<https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/regional/304705/alpine-fault-quake-'more-damaging'-for-plains>

UC Connect: What will an Alpine Fault earthquake feel like? - 2016

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WkNXFrTkVnc>

The Next Alpine Fault Earthquake in New Zealand

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tfj8MlAxec4>

Drilling NZ's Most Dangerous Fault – 2014

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=n9ZPq5FRmnE>

BBC – Christchurch earthquake: Your stories - 2011

<https://www.bbc.com/news/world-middle-east-12534169>

Patents & References re Control of Space Technology

Bernard J. Eastlund's patent # 4,686,605 "Method and apparatus for altering a region in Earth's atmosphere, ionosphere, and/or magnetosphere" was sealed by the U.S. Government under a secrecy order. In the description, the work is based on original research by Nikola Tesla during the early 1900's.

Power Beaming, Earth-to-Earth. (Taken from U.S. Patent 5,202,689.)

Begich, N., and Manning, J., "Angles Don't Play This HAARP," Earthpulse Press, P.O. Box 916, Homer Alaska 99603, 907-249-9111, (or at local bookstores), 1995.

Begich, N., "The Flashpoints Newsletter," P.O. Box 201393, Anchorage, Alaska 99520, current.

Begich, N., "HAARP Patent Package (12 Patents)," P.O. Box 201393, Anchorage, Alaska 99520, current.

Fisher, Drew, "Presentations from the HAARP Workshop on Ionospheric Heating Diagnostics", 30 April - 2 May 1991, Phillips Laboratory (AFSC), Hanscom AFB, MA 01731-5000, Major Drew R. Fisher, Editor, www.micronet.net/~lb/Hc/nstlmnt1.html, 22 Oct 1991.

HAARP Program, "HAARP HF Active Auroral Research Program Joint Services Program Plans And Activities", www.xyz.net/~nohaarp/jspd.htm, Feb. 1990.

The HAARP Home Page, server5550.itd.nrl.navy.mil/projects/haarp/index.html, current.

HISTORY AND APPLICATIONS OF HAARP TECHNOLOGIES: THE HIGH FREQUENCY ACTIVE AURORAL RESEARCH PROGRAM – by Patrick Bailey & Nancy Worthington 1997 (copy of this paper available on request)

Patents - HAARP PATENTS (Assigned to APTI, Inc.)

U.S. Patent 4686605: Method And Apparatus For Altering A Region In The Earth's Atmosphere, Ionosphere, And/Or Magnetosphere Inventors: Eastlund; Bernard J., Spring, TX
Assignees: APTI, Inc., Los Angeles, CA Issued: Aug. 11, 1987 Filed: Jan. 10, 1985

U.S. Patent 5038664: Method For Producing A Shell Of Relativistic Particles At An Altitude Above The Earth's Surface Inventors: Eastlund; Bernard J., Spring, TX
Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Aug. 13, 1991 Filed: Jan. 10, 1985

U.S. Patent 4712155: Method And Apparatus For Creating An Artificial Electron Cyclotron Heating Region Of Plasma Inventors: Eastlund; Bernard J., Spring, TX Ramo; Simon, Beverly Hills, CA
Assignees: APTI, Inc., Los Angeles, CA Issued: Dec. 8, 1987 Filed: Jan. 28, 1985

U.S. Patent 5068669: Power Beaming System Inventors: Koert; Peter, Washington, DC Cha; James T., Fairfax, VA
Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Nov. 26, 1991 Filed: Sep. 1, 1988

U.S. Patent 5218374: Power Beaming System With Printer Circuit Radiating Elements Having Resonating Cavities Inventors: Koert; Peter, Washington, DC Cha; James T., Fairfax, VA
Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: June 8, 1993 Filed: Oct. 10, 1989

U.S. Patent 5293176: Folded Cross Grid Dipole Antenna Element Inventors: Elliot; Paul G., Vienna, VA
Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Mar. 8, 1994 Filed: Nov. 18, 1991

U.S. Patent 5202689: Lightweight Focusing Reflector For Space Inventors: Bussard; Robert W., Manassas, VA Wallace; Thomas H., Gainesville, FL

Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Apr. 13, 1993 Filed: Aug. 23, 1991

U.S. Patent 5041834: Artificial Ionospheric Mirror Composed Of A Plasma Layer Which Can Be Tilted Inventors: Koert; Peter, Washington, DC

Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Aug. 20, 1991 Filed: May. 17, 1990

U.S. Patent 4999637: Creation Of Artificial Ionization Clouds Above The Earth Inventors: Bass; Ronald M., Houston, TX

Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Mar. 12, 1991 Filed: May. 14, 1987

U.S. Patent 4954709: High Resolution Directional Gamma Ray Detector Inventors: Zigler; Arie, Rishon Le Zion, Israel Eisen; Yosset, Rishon Le Zion, Israel

Assignees: APTI, Inc., Washington, DC Issued: Sep. 4, 1990 Filed: Aug. 16, 1989

U.S. Patent 4817495: Defense System For Discriminating Between Objects In Space Inventors: Drobot; Adam T., Annandale, VA

Assignees: APTI, Inc., Los Angeles, CA Issued: Apr. 4, 1989 Filed: Jul. 7, 1986

U.S. Patent 4873928: Nuclear-Sized Explosions Without Radiation Inventors: Lowther; Frank E., Plano, TX

Assignees: APTI, Inc., Los Angeles, CA Issued: Oct. 17, 1989 Filed: June 15, 1987

3842

Draft Long-Term Plan 2024-2034

Submitter Details

Submission Date: 21/04/2024

First name: Reuben Last name: Davidson

What is your role in the organisation:

Do you want to speak to the Council about your submission at a hearing?

☒ Yes

☐ I do NOT wish to speak in support of my submission and ask that the following submission be fully considered.

Fri 10 May

Please select the hearing date(s) above that suit you best. You can select more than one date.

Hearings will be held in the Council Chambers at 53 Hereford Street.

We'll be in touch to arrange a date and time and will try to accommodate your preferences.

Please make sure you've provided your telephone number in **Section 1** so we can contact you.

Feedback

Have we got the balance right - comments

I support the overall direction of travel of the Long Term Plan.

Capital: Transport - comments

I would like to endorse the inclusion of the Pages Road bridge renewal, I believe this project should be prioritised for earlier commencement and completion. This is literally a lifeline for our Coastal communities and I cannot see a greater priority. I understand the current bridge is well below code and we all accept it will be a literal lifeline in the event of a natural disaster or mass evacuation. It also carries essential services (power/water/fibre) and provides a crucial link for the local police (Eastern side of the river) and the Fire Service (Western side of the river). The Council should act fast to proceed with a bridge renewal to provide the safe access residents can reasonably expect.

Agree to future contact for consultations - multiple-choice

Yes.

Attached Documents

Link	File
No records to display.	



Councillors
Christchurch City Council

**Reuben
Davidson**

MP for Christchurch East

03 382 0288

chcheast@parliament.govt.nz

Freepost PO Box 18 888

Parliament Buildings, Wellington 6160

[f /ReubenDavidsonLabour](#)

[@ /reuben4east](#)

Long Term Plan Submission, in support of the Pages Road Bridge project [27273]

I strongly urge Councillors to remain committed to the Pages Road Bridge Renewal (OARC) [27273] for the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

The Pages Road Bridge is literally a lifeline for tens of thousands of residents. It connects New Brighton to the rest of the city. Following the Kaikoura Earthquake, Firework Spectaculars, and other high-volume exits, we saw the impact that the current structure has on evacuations. There is simply not the capacity to accommodate an evacuation at the speed and scale required. Forty minutes of added evacuation time could be the difference between life and death for residents.

The bridge is also carrying critical infrastructure. In the event of an earthquake or another emergency, Council has a responsibility to ensure these critical infrastructure points remain operational.

In the event the current bridge is compromised emergency services will be limited. The nearest Fire

Department to New Brighton, the ANZAC Fire Station, is on the west side of the bridge, meaning critical emergency services cannot access the Greater Brighton Area. The local Police Station, is on the East side of the bridge, meaning Police cannot get out to assist areas of high need past the bridge. This could leave tens of thousands of households without access to emergency services when they need them the most.

I note that residents have been waiting for this project which was originally due for completion in FY 22/23 of Christchurch City Council's 2018-2028 Long Term Plan and highlight the stress this has caused.

We are seeing developments across New Brighton, Lynette Ellis says, "This part of our city is going to be an increasingly popular place to visit." I urge the Council to meet the community's need, and ensure that we are complementing the increased development, infrastructure, and patronage with a fit-for-purpose bridge.

I seek the Council's strong support and advocacy to ensure a future-proof lifeline for the people of New Brighton.

Nāku noa,



Reuben Davidson
MP for Christchurch East

Authorised by Reuben Davidson MP, Parliament Buildings, Wellington.



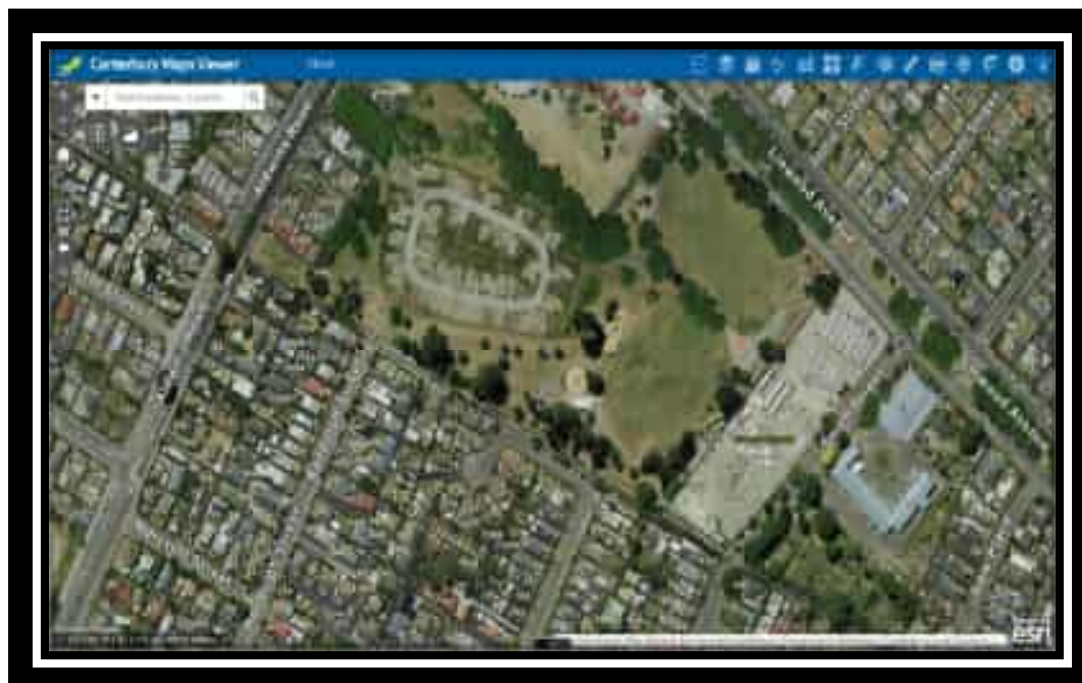
The City Outfall Drain- Linwood canal – Linwood esplanade reserve, Linwood Park-

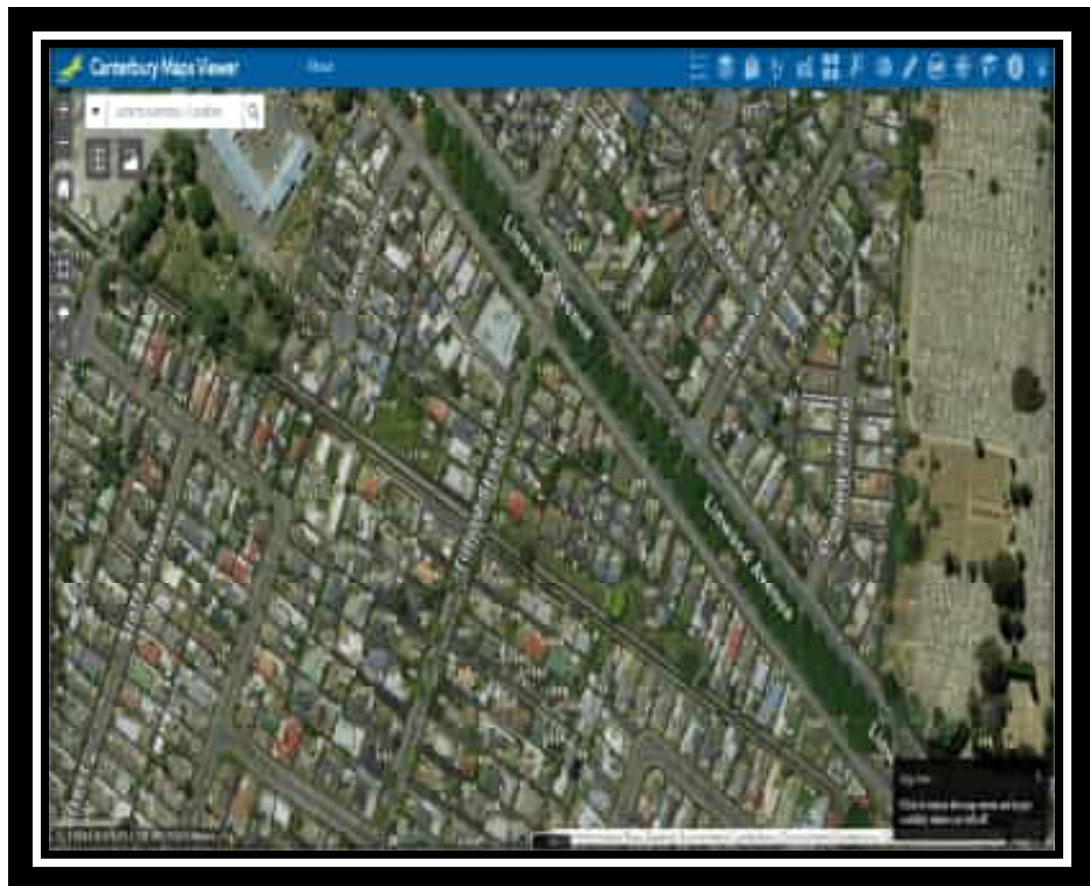
The outfall drain borders Linwood park, it is in much need of renewal, there have been many plans and inquiries over the last two decades – that's two long term plans What has been discovered is that it is an urban stream, it is ground fed and is a tributary to a significant ecological catchment.

What is also known is that significant rain fall events push contaminants into the estuary as a rate that would not occur to the same extent if it was naturalised.

The adjacent residential developments- we have a 4x density in the block between Aldwins Road and Tilford street. Randolph street and Mackworth street as well as Gow and Arran Crescent all traverse the drain with narrow and uninviting pedestrian bridges the shared walk way from Smith Street to Hargood street is well used by the community. Enhancing the shared walk way with nature play and water access – the neighbourhood kids are already climbing in and out of the drain, eeling is a popular past time on this note please allocate funding to Te tuna Taone Their team do an exceptional work. Like the name of our local high school te Aratai denotes the path way is still being used for mahinga kai. As such we are strongly advocating for the inclusion of Fruit trees with in the next season.

Renewal needs to be done on a larger scale than just water way restoration – not to detract from the this very important outcome. But the assets need to be upgraded to relieve traffic that will see exponential pressure on existing services





Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

Shane Orchard



Prepared for

Christchurch City Council
June 2018



Cover photograph:
Steamwharf Stream upstream of Ferry Road. Photo: S. Orchard

Waterlink Ltd
CONSERVATION PLANNING • RESOURCE MANAGEMENT
439 Marine Parade, Christchurch 8062
Aotearoa / New Zealand
T: +64-3-388 8281 | M: +64-21-318548 | E: enquiries@waterlink.nz

This document has been prepared for the sole benefit of the client. It is the responsibility of the reader to verify the currency of the document version and status.

Document revision and status

Revision	Date	Status	Approved by	Issued by
v1	08/06/2018	Draft for client review	S. Orchard	S. Orchard
vFinal	18/06/2018	Final	S. Orchard	S. Orchard

Inanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

Shane Orchard

Prepared for

Christchurch City Council
June 2018

© Copyright Waterlink Ltd 2018

Disclaimer

This document has been prepared for the benefit of the client and is subject to with the provisions of the agreement between Waterlink Ltd client. Findings, recommendations, and professional opinions expressed within this document relate only to the requirements communicated to Waterlink Ltd by the client and may not be applicable to other contexts. Assumptions relied upon in preparing this report includes information provided by the client and other third parties, some of which may not have been verified. Waterlink Ltd undertakes no duty, nor accepts any responsibility, to any party who may rely upon or use this document other than the client. This disclaimer shall apply notwithstanding that this report may be made available to other legal entities.

Copyright

Copyright in the form of this report remains with Waterlink Ltd. This report is entitled to full protection given by the Copyright Act 1994 to the holders of the copyright, and reproduction of any substantial passage from the report except for the educational purposes therein specified is a breach of the copyright of the author and/or publisher. Subject to the above conditions, this document may be transmitted, reproduced or disseminated only in its entirety. This copyright extends to all forms of photocopying and any storing of material in any form of information retrieval system.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY.....	1
1. Introduction	2
1.1 Background.....	2
1.2 Objectives	3
1.3 Scope	4
2. Methods.....	4
2.1 Study area.....	4
2.2 Salinity surveys	5
2.3 Spawning site surveys.....	5
2.4 Straw bale monitoring.....	7
3. Results.....	7
3.1 Linwood Canal	7
3.1.1 Salinity surveys.....	7
3.1.2 Spawning site surveys	9
3.2 Steamwharf Stream	12
3.2.1 Salinity surveys.....	12
3.2.2 Spawning site surveys and straw bale monitoring.....	13
4. Discussion	14
4.1 Īnanga spawning in Linwood Canal	14
4.2 Īnanga spawning in Steamwharf Stream	15
4.3 Study limitations.....	17
5. Recommendations.....	17
6. Acknowledgements.....	18
7. References	19
Appendix 1. Examples of Īnanga spawning sites in Linwood Canal.....	20
Appendix 2. Examples of Īnanga spawning sites in Steamwharf Stream.....	22

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The purpose of this study was to gather information on Īnanga spawning activity in Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream during the 2018 spawning season to support current and future restoration work in these waterways. The methodology consisted of salinity monitoring on spring high tides, surveys of riparian vegetation to detect spawning sites, and monitoring of artificial habitats provided by straw bales. In Linwood Canal, a single comprehensive spawning survey was completed during April to determine the distribution of spawning sites, spatial characteristics, and an estimation of egg numbers in the catchment following the early April spring high tides. In Steamwharf Stream, spawning surveys were completed over four consecutive months (Feb–May) that included monitoring of six straw bale installations.

In Linwood Canal the upstream limit of salt water intrusion was located at the Dyers Road culvert on most of the tides measured. The waterway has a strongly stratified salinity regime associated with a layer of relatively high salinity water at the bottom of the water column. This is generated by salt water ingress through the flap-gate structure at Humphrey's Drive with the southern pipe permitting in-flow of tidal water and the other three pipes apparently well sealed. A total of 16 spawning sites were found in the April spawning survey. These were distributed over a 340 m reach downstream of Dyers Road with the majority (12 sites) being located on the true right bank. Most sites on the true right were located on a bench that is a characteristic of the river bank in this reach. The total area of occupancy (AOO) of the spawning sites was 15.6 m² and egg production 162,000 eggs. These results show that Linwood Canal is an important waterway for Īnanga spawning and must support an appreciable population of adult fish.

In Steamwharf Stream the salinity regime is also highly stratified. The upstream limit of salt water is typically located between Dyers Road and Alport Place on spring high tides. Fluctuations in the exact position were observed in response to different stream flows as well as tidal heights. There were no eggs found on the straw bales in any of the four months of monitoring. However, spawning sites were discovered in riparian vegetation in three of the four months, consisting of one site in March, two in April, and one in May. One of the two sites found in April has been used repeatedly in the past two years, as recorded in other studies. This same site was also the location of the eggs found in March and May in this study, although the AOO and number of eggs present were less on those months. The other site found in April was a location not previously recorded as a spawning site. The April (peak month) AOO was 0.71m² and egg production was 36,700 eggs. The total egg production recorded over the four months was ~50,000 eggs. This is considerably less than was recorded in comparable studies completed in 2016 that included riparian vegetation surveys and the use of straw bale installations to bolster spawning habitat as was the case this year. These findings suggest that the population of adult Īnanga was relatively small in 2018. This is consistent with observations made during field surveys in which adult fish were seldom seen.

Recommendations for Linwood Canal include:

- Protection of the spawning sites identified in this study, and restoration of an area of potential spawning habitat on the true left bank.
- Further monitoring to investigate temporal aspects of spawning activity and habitat use, and to provide additional information on whether the true left bank may support a greater area of spawning habitat than was recorded in this study.
- Monitoring the effectiveness of habitat protection measures over time.
- Careful attention to the ecological impacts of any proposed alteration to the flood gate structures on Humphrey's Drive.

Recommendations for Steamwharf Stream include:

- Continued monitoring of spawning activity to support the proposed riparian restoration project.
- Consideration of restoration options for juvenile & adult fish habitat for integration with other management activities in the catchment.
- Establishing a monitoring programme to provide information on characteristics of the adult fish population, including the potential movement of fish to and from the lower Heathcote/Ōpāwaho.

1. Introduction

1.1 Background

The purpose of this study was to gather information on Īnanga spawning activity in Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream during the 2018 spawning season to support current and future restoration work in these waterways.

Christchurch City Council (CCC) is undertaking riparian restoration work at Steamwharf Stream involving the stabilisation and revegetation of stream banks that were affected by the Canterbury earthquakes, and have been slow to recover. Most of these areas are in close proximity to a gravel walking track that contributes to potential disturbance of the stream banks for vegetation recovery, as well as being source of sediment in rainfall events. These areas have been targeted for long term restoration in the current CCC project (Figure 1). The project will involve re-establishing riparian vegetation cover, preferably using native plant species that are suited to the area and can provide Īnanga spawning habitat (B. Margetts, pers. comm.). The restoration planting design will be finalised and implemented after the 2018 Īnanga spawning season. As an aspect of this project, straw bale installations are being used to provide temporary support for spawning in advance of the restoration work being completed.



Figure 1. Two views of the Steamwharf Stream restoration area showing initial stabilisation work on the riparian margins between the recreational track and the waterway, January 2018. Photos: S. Orchard.

Previous studies have identified Īnanga (*Galaxias maculatus*) spawning sites throughout this stretch of the waterway. Pre-earthquake spawning in this area was first detected by Taylor (2004). However, the Canterbury earthquakes caused considerable damage that included lateral spread and liquefaction effects, and no spawning was found in a 2011 post-earthquake survey (Taylor & Blair 2011). More recent studies included a survey in 2015 that also failed to detect any spawning sites (Orchard & Hickford 2016). In 2016, straw bales were installed as a detection tool (Orchard et al. 2018b) as part of the Whaka Inaka - Causing Whitebait project (McMurtrie et al. 2016; Orchard et al. 2016). Spawning was detected on the straw bales and also in riparian vegetation that year. In the following year, no straw bales were in place but spawning was again detected in the riparian vegetation (Orchard 2017).

At Linwood Canal, there is no current riparian restoration project that targets Īnanga spawning habitat. However, works are underway to improve the road network in the area, and these include ground stabilisation measures close to the waterway (Figure 2). These and other sites provide opportunities for ecological restoration activities in the near future. Previously, there has been only one record of Īnanga spawning in this waterway. This was a small spawning site found in 1999 close to Dyers Road (Taylor 1999). In other respects, very little is known about the potential extent of spawning activity in the catchment or details of the fish population, especially in the post-earthquake context. However, adult

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

Īnanga were observed there in January 2018 (S. Orchard, B. Margetts, unpubl. data) indicating that migratory juveniles had successfully bypassed the outlet structure and may have done so previously.

Due to the extensive area of riparian vegetation that might support spawning in Linwood Canal, it was decided to focus the effort for this study on characterising the salinity regime and completing one comprehensive survey of riparian vegetation to detect spawning sites. The latter was completed after the early April spring high tide which was thought be a good candidate for the peak month of spawning activity based on previous studies in the Avon/Ōtākaro and Heathcote/Ōpāwaho catchments (Orchard et al. 2018a).



Figure 2. Linwood Canal looking downstream from Dyers Road showing current road works in the riparian zone. A silt curtain can be seen protecting the waterway from construction site run-off.

1.2 Objectives

Objectives for the Linwood Canal survey were:

- to determine whether this waterway is currently providing spawning habitat.
- to guide if, where, and how suitable riparian vegetation could be planted in the long term to provide favourable spawning habitat.

Objectives for the Steamwharf Stream survey were:

- to provide guidance on the placement of straw bales at Steamwharf Stream to provide temporary Īnanga spawning habitat.
- to determine whether the straw bales or riparian vegetation are supporting spawning.
- to guide where, and how suitable vegetation should be planted in the coming months to provide favourable spawning habitat over the long-term.

1.3 Scope

Linwood Canal

The study consisted of:

- monitoring of salinity conditions during spring high tides, entailing one measurement per month for three months (February–April), to determine characteristics of salt water intrusion.
- a survey of riparian vegetation during April to determine the distribution of spawning sites, spatial characteristics, and an estimation of egg numbers at all sites found.

Steamwharf Stream

The study consisted of monthly monitoring over four months (February–May) to assess:

- the condition and position of bales on spawning high tides to inform adjustments as necessary.
- salinity conditions during spring high tides.
- Īnanga egg numbers both within straw bales and riparian vegetation in the study area.

The remainder of this report is set out as follows: Section 2 describes the field survey methodology. Section 3 presents the major findings, Section 4 provides a brief discussion of management implications, and Section 5 concludes the report with brief recommendations.

2. Methods

2.1 Study area

The study area included Linwood Canal from the outlet structure on Humphrey's Drive to upstream of Dyers Road, and Steamwharf Stream from Ferry Road to the culvert at Alport Place (Figure 3).

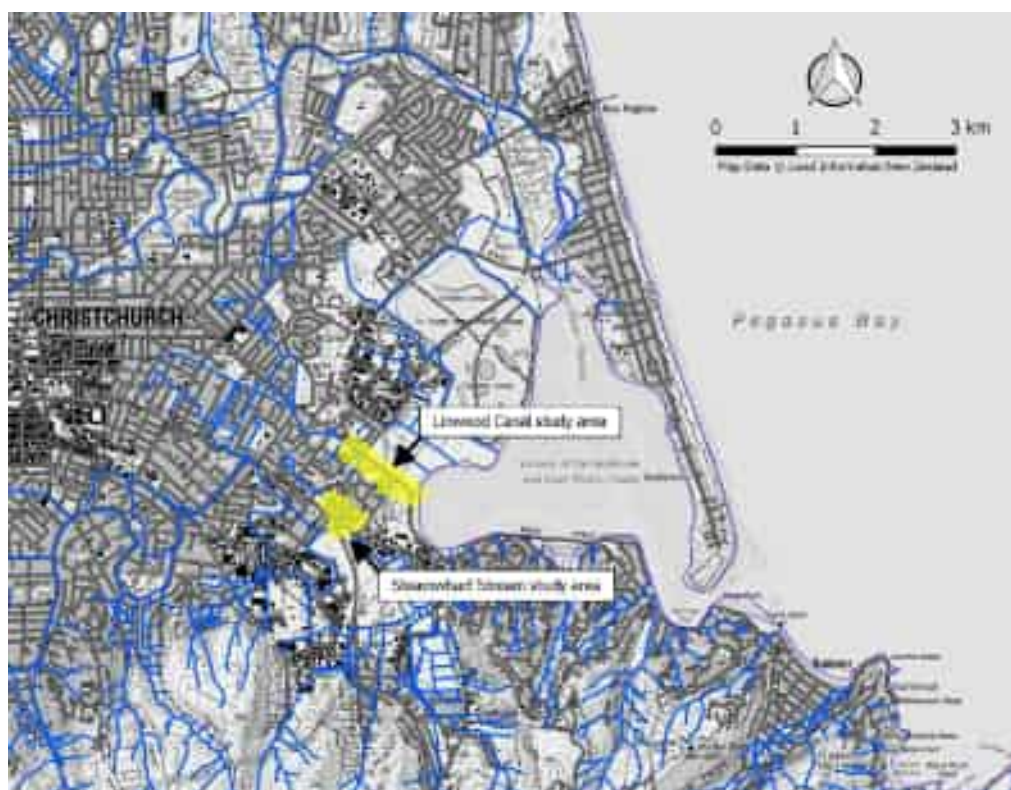


Figure 3. Overview map showing location of the study areas at Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream.

2.2 Salinity surveys

Salinity monitoring sites were established at regular intervals across the study area in both waterways (Figure 4). At each site, salinity was measured on spring high tides using a YSI Model 30 salinity meter following Orchard & Hickford (2018). Two measurements were taken at each monitoring site; the first at the bottom, and the second 10 cm from the top of the water column. Each survey was timed to follow the incoming tide upstream with the objective of taking the furthest upstream measurement at time of peak high water in that location. In both waterways this is associated with a turn-around point in flow direction under most conditions (i.e. typical discharge rates). Because of its proximity to the main estuary, the time of peak high water at Linwood Canal occurs 1-2 hours earlier than at Steamwharf Stream.



Figure 4. Location of salinity monitoring points in Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream.

2.3 Spawning site surveys

Egg searches

Intensive surveys of riparian vegetation were completed in each of four months (February – May) at Steamwharf Stream and in April at Linwood Canal (Table 1). A census survey approach following Orchard & Hickford (2018) was used with the objective of locating all spawning sites in the catchment. The search area was first assessed in a subjective survey of the riparian vegetation using set criteria to define areas of high, moderate and poor quality habitat (Table 2). All areas of moderate and high quality habitat were then searched systematically for eggs. This involved conducting three searches at random locations for every 5 m length of river bank in these areas. Each search involved inspecting the stems and root mats of the plants along a transect line spanning and perpendicular to the high water mark. Typically, a 0.5 m wide swathe of vegetation 1-2 m long was inspected on each transect depending on the bank slope and degree

Tinanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

of difficulty locating the high water mark. Where eggs were found the survey was extended at least 50 m either side of the last occurrence to confirm the full extent of the spawning site.

Table 1. Tidal cycle data and egg survey periods for the 2018 survey.

Survey Month	Peak tidal cycle start	Peak tidal cycle end	Peak tidal height* (m)	Survey periods	
				Linwood Canal	Steamwharf Stream
February	Feb 1	Feb 2	2.7	-	Feb 8
March	Mar 1	Mar 3	2.6	-	Mar 8
April	Mar 30	Apr 1	2.5	April 8 – 10	Apr 7
May	Apr 25	Apr 30	2.4	-	May 7

* predicted tide levels above Chart Datum at Port of Lyttelton (Lat. 43° 36' S Long. 172° 43' E) (Source: LINZ).

Table 2. Habitat quality classes.

Class	Quality of habitat for supporting spawning	Expected egg mortality rate	Criteria
1	Poor	High	Vegetation cover <100% or Stem density <0.2cm ⁻²
2	Moderate	Moderate	Vegetation cover 100% Stem density >0.2cm ⁻²
3	High	Low	Aerial root mat depth <0.5cm Vegetation cover 100% Stem density >0.2cm ⁻² Aerial root mat depth >0.5cm

Classification schema

- A. Vegetation cover <100% Class 1
Vegetation cover >100% Class 2 or 3
- B. Stem density <0.2cm⁻² Class 1
Stem density >0.2cm⁻² Class 2 or 3
- C. Aerial root mat depth <0.5cm Class 2
Aerial root mat depth >0.5cm Class 3

Area of occupancy (AOO)

All egg occurrences were associated with a given location that was identified as a spawning site (Orchard & Hickford 2018). Individual sites were defined as continuous or semi-continuous patches of eggs with dimensions defined by the pattern of occupancy. For all egg occurrences the upstream and downstream extents of the patch were established, and the length along the riverbank measured. GPS coordinates were recorded using hand-held units in the field and corrected in QGIS v2.18 (QGIS Development Team 2017) against ground-truthed landmarks to obtain an estimated accuracy of ± 1 m.

For each spawning site, the width of the egg band was measured at each search transect that fell within the extent of the site. Additional transects were inspected where needed to provide a minimum of three measurements at all sites. Zero counts were recorded when they occurred such as where the egg distribution was not a continuous band. AOO was calculated as length x mean width.

Spawning site productivity

Productivity was assessed by direct eggs counts using a sub-sampling method (Orchard & Hickford 2016; Orchard & Hickford 2018). At each transect, as above, a 10 x 10 cm quadrat was placed in the centre of the egg band and all eggs within the quadrat counted. Egg numbers in quadrats with high egg densities (> 200 / quadrat), were estimated by further sub-sampling using five randomly located 2 x 2 cm quadrats and the average egg density of these sub-units used to calculate an egg density for the larger 10 x 10 cm

quadrat. The mean egg density was calculated from all 10 x 10 cm quadrats sampled within the site. Productivity was calculated as mean egg density x AOO.

2.4 Straw bale monitoring

Straw bales were installed by City Care Ltd at six locations in Steamwharf Stream on 29 January 2018. At each location a set of three straw bales was positioned with the long side perpendicular to the stream bank and a 5 cm gap between adjacent bales following Hickford & Schiel (2013), except that pea straw bales were used instead of wheat straw due to availability. Each bale set was placed to straddle the high tide waterline on the spring high tides of each month, and secured in place using a wire loop between two steel warratahs. At all locations the ground surface had previously been stabilised with GeoCoir 400 g/m² coconut fibre sheets which also provided a potentially suitable surface for spawning in the gap between the bales. A field inspection was completed on the spring high tides each month to check on the condition of the bales and ascertain the waterline position. This resulted in adjustments to bale positions in first month (February) to ensure correct placement relative to the waterline. Due to some concerns with deterioration of the pea straw (which is less robust than wheat straw), and since no spawning had been recorded on the bales in monitoring prior to then, all installations were replaced with fresh bales in April. All installations were monitoring for eggs over four months (February–May). Monthly monitoring consisted of inspecting all surface of each bale and also the GeoCoir surface within a 1 m radius of each installation to check for a halo effect that is sometime observed, as detailed in Orchard et al. (2018b).

3. Results

3.1 Linwood Canal

3.1.1 Salinity surveys

Despite being a shallow waterway, field measurements showed that the salinity regime is highly stratified in Linwood Canal (Figure 5). This is associated with a relatively high salinity layer at the bottom of the water column with lower salinity water near the surface (Figure 6). Repeat measurements at different times showed that the tidal waters move slowly upstream on incoming tides and may also sit in locally deeper areas between tides creating a complex salinity environment.

Inspection of the outlet structure at Humphrey's Drive showing that salt water ingress occurs through the flap-gate on the southern pipe with the other three pipes apparently well sealed (Figure 7). A weir prevents ingress of tidal water to the small freshwater lake near the Charlesworth footbridge on small tides, but retains saline waters following larger tides. Salinity recorded in this lake was as high as 7.4 ppt (on February 2nd). In the main channel of Linwood Canal, a sill created by the floor of the large box culvert at Dyers Road appears to prevent the intrusion of salt water further upstream on all but the largest tides. Salinity above 0.1 ppt (which is the background value in the waterway) was recorded only once in the survey period upstream of Dyers Road (0.2 ppt on February 2nd).

Ūnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream



Figure 5. Typical spring high tide salinity ranges in Linwood Canal, as recorded on 2 March 2018. Two measurements are shown at each monitoring site; at the bottom of the water column (bottom marker), and 10 cm below the water surface (top marker). All measurements are the maximum salinity value recorded during the field survey at different times on the incoming tide.

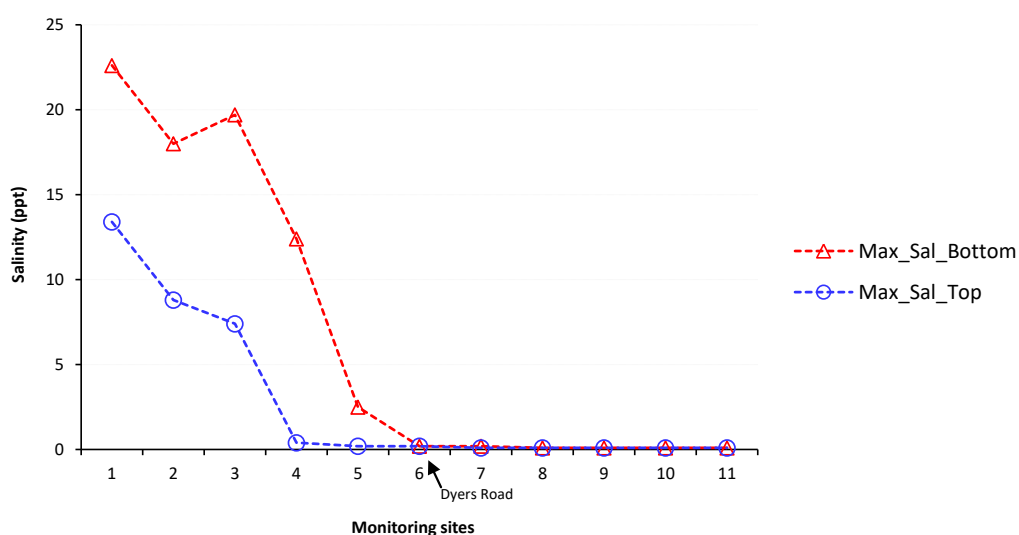


Figure 6. Plot of maximum salinities at the bottom and 10 cm from the top of the water column, as recorded on the spring high tide of 2 March 2018 in Linwood Canal. Upstream is to the right of the plot.



Figure 7. Linwood Canal outlet structure at the Avon Heathcote Estuary Ihutai on Humphrey's Drive. (a) View of the four flap-gates in operation on a high tide. (b) Tidal ingress into Linwood Canal through the southern culvert on an incoming tide.

3.1.2 Spawning site surveys

A total of 16 spawning sites were found in the Linwood Canal survey completed in April (Figure 8). These were distributed over a 340 m reach downstream of Dyers Road with the majority (12 sites) being located on the true right bank. Most sites on the true right were located on a bench that is a characteristic of the river bank in this reach (Figure 9a). The vegetation species supported spawning on the true right were mainly clumps of tall fescue (*Schedonorus arundinaceus*) and dense swards of creeping bent (*Agrostis stolonifera*). However another species present is Caldwell's sedge (*Bolboschoenus caldwelli*). It appears to provide an important scaffolding function, especially in association with creeping bent. The four spawning sites on the true left were all relatively small and located at the toe of the main bank. The vegetation here consisted of a mixed grass and herb community that is relatively short in stature compared to the true right (Figure 9b). This difference results from regular weed-eating down to the waterline that does not occur on true right (J. Carlton, pers. comm.).

The total area of occupancy (AOO) of spawning sites was 15.6 m². Spawning sites on the true right bank accounted for 95% of the AOO (Figure 10). The largest site was 20 m in length with an AOO of 7.1 m². Total egg production across all sites was 162,000 eggs with spawning sites on the true right contributing 99% of the total. The largest site (TR7) contributed 52%. Figure 11 shows the spatial distribution of egg production across the different sites.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream



Figure 8. Location and extent of Īnanga spawning sites identified in Linwood Canal, April 2018.



Figure 9. Examples of Īnanga spawning habitat in Linwood Canal. (a) A bench at the toe of a steeper slope on the true right bank was found to support several spawning sites. (b) Typical spawning habitat at the high tide waterline on the true left where regular weed-eating occurs. Although spawning sites were identified on this bank egg mortality rates are likely to be high.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

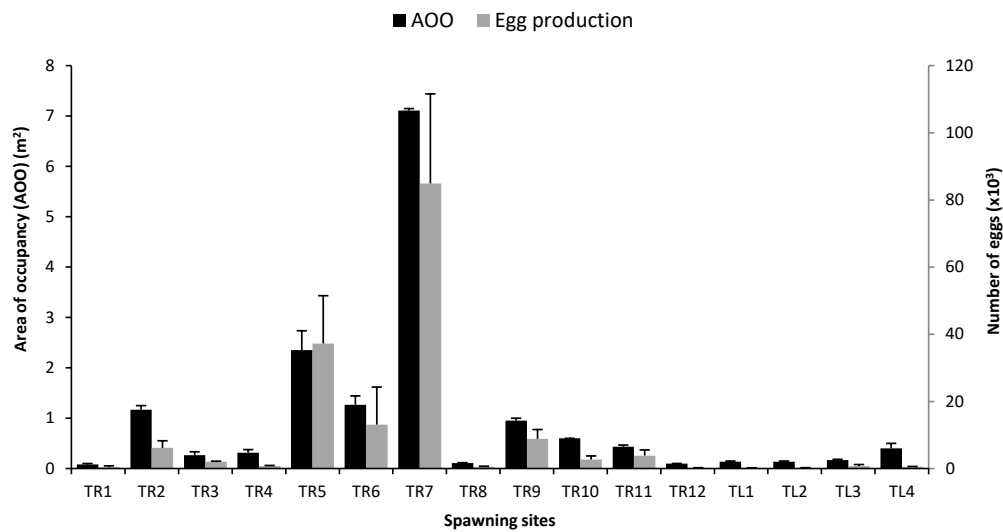


Figure 10. Area of occupancy (AOO) and egg production of Īnanga spawning sites in Linwood Canal on 9 April 2018. Error bars are standard error of the mean

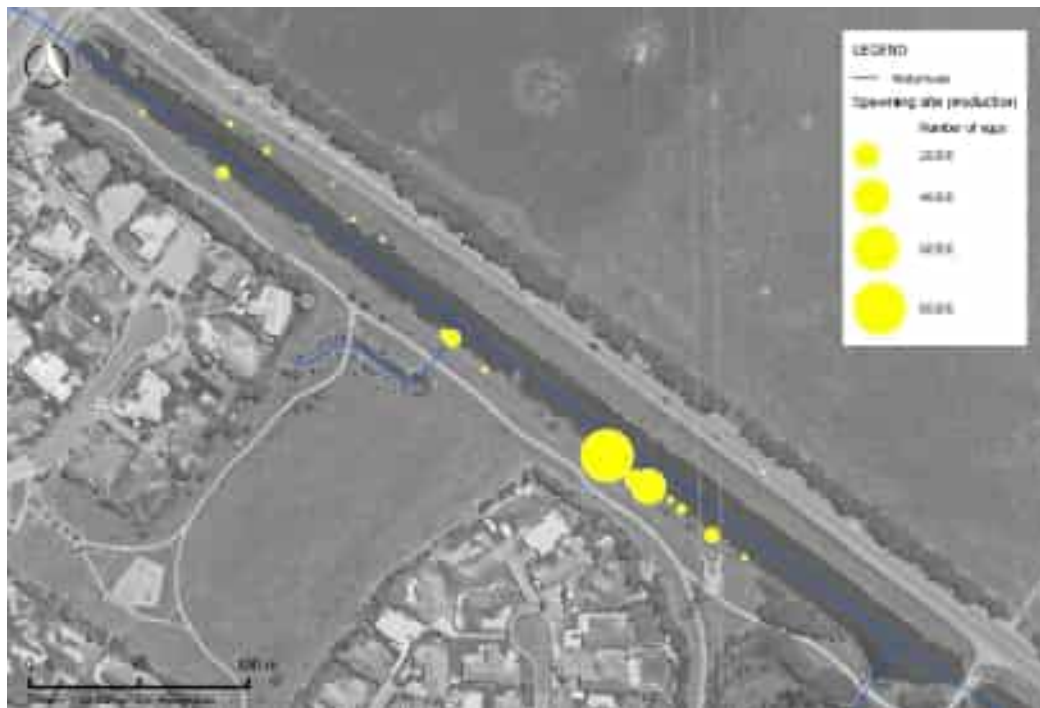


Figure 11. Spatial distribution of egg production in Linwood Canal as recorded on 9 April 2018.

Ūnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

3.2 Steamwharf Stream

3.2.1 Salinity surveys

The salinity range in Steamwharf Stream is typically less than at Linwood Canal (Figure 12) consistent with the effects of mixing in the mainstem of the Heathcote/Ōpāwaho (Orchard & Measures 2017). However, as with Linwood Canal it is also highly stratified (Figure 13). The upstream limit of salt water typically occurs close to Dyers Road on spring high tides. Fluctuations in the exact position were observed in response to different stream flows as well as tidal heights.

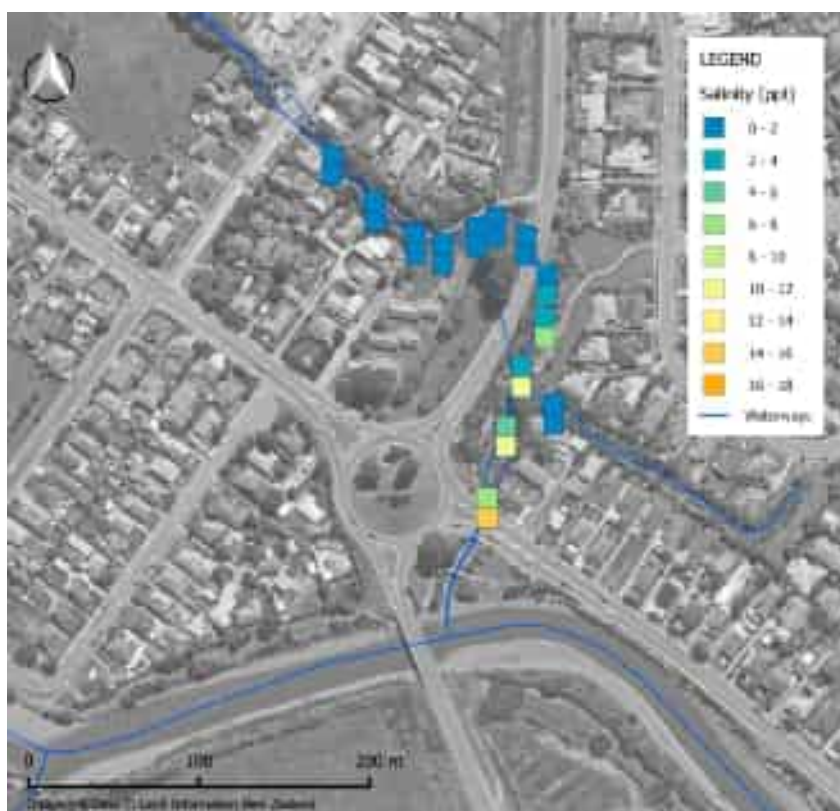


Figure 12. Typical spring high tide salinity ranges in Steamwharf Stream on the spring high tide of 2 March 2018. Two measurements are shown at each monitoring site: at the bottom of the water column (bottom marker), and 10 cm below the water surface (top marker). All measurements are the maximum salinity value recorded during the field survey at different times on the incoming tide.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

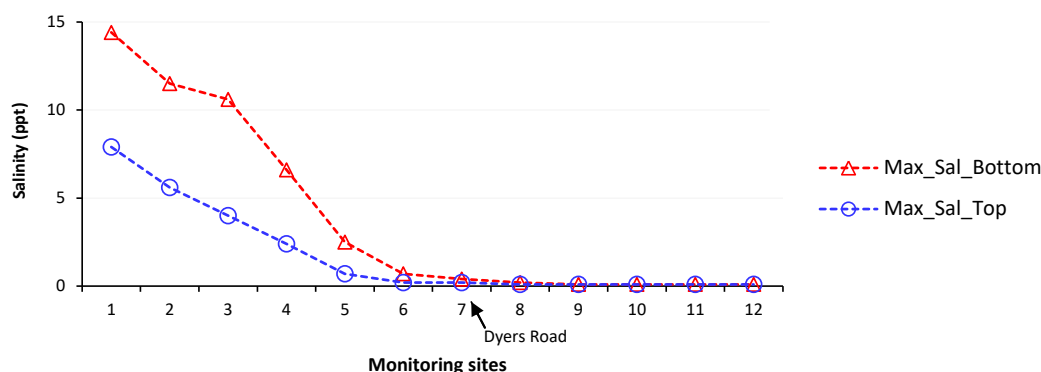


Figure 13. Plot of maximum salinities at the bottom and 10 cm from the top of the water column, as recorded on the spring high tide of 2 March 2018 in Steamwharf Stream. Upstream is to the right of the plot.

3.2.2 Spawning site surveys and straw bale monitoring

No eggs were found on the straw bales in any of the four months of monitoring. However, spawning sites were discovered in the riparian vegetation surveys on three of the four months. One spawning site was found in March, two in April, and one in May. There was no spawning found anywhere in the catchment in February. One of the two sites found in April has been used repeatedly in other years (as reported in other studies), and the other was a location not previously recorded as a spawning site [see Orchard (2017)]. Figure 14 shows the location of these sites with the previously used site being the further upstream site of the two. This same site was also the location of the eggs found in March and May.



Figure 14. Location and extent of Īnanga spawning sites identified in Steamwharf Stream over four months (February–May) in 2018. Downstream is to the right.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

April was the month of peak spawning activity in terms of the number of spawning sites (two), total AOO (0.71m²) and total number of eggs (~38, 300). The upstream site was the major contributor with an AOO of 0.44m² and 36, 700 eggs in this month. This site was dominated by buttercup (*Ranunculus* spp.) and had changed little from previous years. The downstream site was smaller (AOO of 0.27m²) and contributed 1, 600 eggs. This site was partly shaded by toetoe (*Cortaderia richardii*) with most of the eggs laid in creeping bent (*Agrostis stolonifera*). See Appendix 2 for site photographs.

Figure 15 summarises the AOO and egg production trends as recorded over the four month survey period.

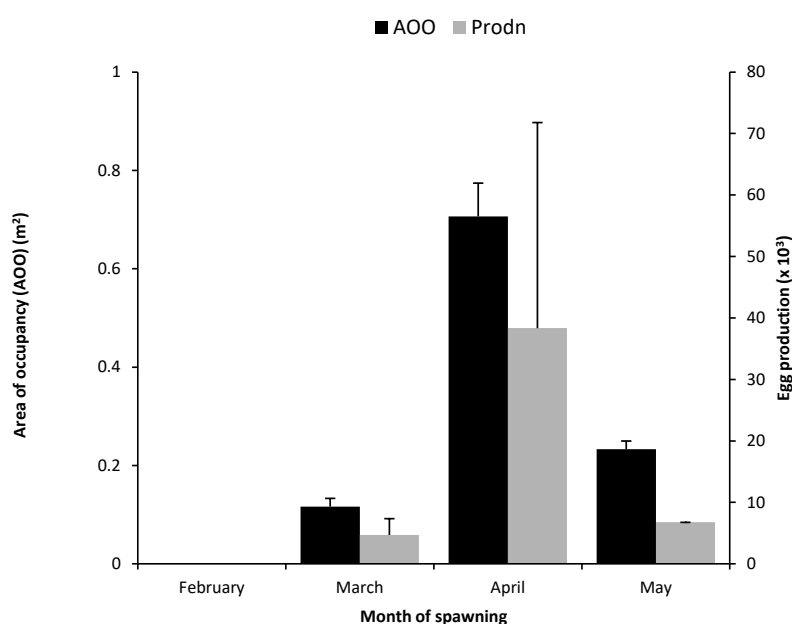


Figure 15. Area of occupancy (AOO) and egg production of Īnanga spawning sites in Steamwharf Stream over four months (February– May) in 2018. Error bars are standard error of the mean.

4. Discussion

4.1 Īnanga spawning in Linwood Canal

The discovery of 16 spawning sites in Linwood Canal was a notable finding and confirms that this waterway must support an appreciable population of adult Īnanga. The total AOO of these sites (15.6 m²) is comparable to the pre-quake AOO (~20 m²) that was typically recorded in surveys of the Heathcote/Ōpāwaho mainstem (Taylor 2002). Since the 2018 survey provided only a one month 'snapshot' of spawning activity, the full extent of spawning habitat is likely to be greater than that recorded here. To address this, future surveys over a minimum of three months are recommended to provide a better picture of the habitat distribution and seasonal patterns in occupancy and egg production. In addition, further attention is needed on the true left bank where weed-eating of riparian vegetation down to the waterline had occurred during the 2018 spawning season. Only small spawning sites were found in the patchy vegetation that remained. With vegetation recovery more extensive areas of spawning are likely to be found on this bank.

Ensuring that the spawning habitat in Linwood Canal is effectively protected is an important next step. This will be assisted by appropriate recognition of the areas involved in resource management plans (Orchard

2016). It is also important that the known spawning sites are monitored to evaluate the effectiveness of the protection methods used (Orchard et al. 2018a). In this case, the locations involved appear to be relatively straightforward to protect since there are wide riparian margins between the waterway and adjacent land uses. On the true right bank the spawning habitat is located on a bench at the foot of a steeper slope. The steeper slope helps isolate the bench from foot traffic and other disturbances, and the vegetation is well established. On the true left bank, protection from weed-eating is required as noted above. The bank profile in the area of potential habitat is relatively steep and only the toe of the bank is likely to be in the elevation range that becomes inundated on spring high tides and would therefore provide habitat. Maintenance treatments such as mowing or weed-eating are unlikely to pose a problem higher on the bank face though it would be important to provide contractors with a means of identifying the correct position of the area to be protected. Alternatively, strategically placed riparian plantings could be introduced as a long term maintenance solution to provide a buffer between the spawning habitat and the grassed area that is regularly mown adjacent to Linwood Avenue.

4.2 Īnanga spawning in Steamwharf Stream

The Steamwharf Stream study found considerably less spawning than was recorded in comparable studies in 2016. These included riparian vegetation surveys and the use of straw bale installations to bolster spawning habitat as part of the Whaka Inaka – Causing Whitebait project (McMurtrie et al. 2016; Orchard et al. 2016). The total egg production recorded in 2016 was nearly 300, 000 eggs (University of Canterbury & Whaka Inaka Partners, unpubl. data). In comparison, the 2018 total (~ 50, 000 eggs) strongly suggests that there were less adult Īnanga present this year. In contrast to the 2016 studies, the straw bale installations were not utilised on any of the months within the survey period this year. However, they did ensure that the availability of good quality habitat was not a limiting factor.

The conclusion of low adult fish numbers is also consistent with walk-through surveys of the reach between Ferry Road and Alport Place that were conducted on each of the four months of monitoring, and in which adult Īnanga were seldom seen. In comparison, fish were commonly seen in 2015/2016, especially between Ferry Road and Dyers Road (Figure 16). Comparatively low spawning activity was also found in 2017, although the survey period was only a single month in that study. Spawning was found at two sites that produced a total of ~18, 000 eggs, and other areas of high quality habitat were not utilised (Orchard 2017).



Figure 16. Juvenile Īnanga in Steamwharf Stream in December 2015 in the reach between Ferry Road and Dyers Road.
Photo: S. Orchard.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

These results suggest that attention to the quality of rearing habitat for juvenile Īnanga may be beneficial in Steamwharf Stream. In general, habitat quality can be improved by ensuring that adequate cover is provided, for example by overhanging vegetation, in-stream debris, or macrophyte beds (Richardson & Taylor 2002). During the 2018 survey period, large scale clearance of emergent vegetation in the channel was observed between Ferry Road and Dyers Road (Figure 17). Reducing these activities when fish are present is one potential strategy for ecological restoration. Another possibility might involve forms of ecological engineering such as the introduction of large in-stream debris, which is rarely found at present. Investigating the opportunities to integrate these potential enhancements with flood management work is recommended.

In conjunction with the above, monitoring the stream for adult fish may also be a useful strategy. There are at least three potential influences on spawning activity for which information is currently lacking. The first is the degree to which recruitment varies in the stream year to year which relates to the number of juvenile whitebait entering stream. The second is their survival rate which can be expected to be influenced by the quality of rearing habitat, and potential other stressors such as pollution. Lastly, although adult fish are generally thought to mature in the waterway to which they migrated as juveniles (McDowall 1968), there is the possibility of some exchange between adult populations. In this case, a current unknown is whether adult fish may move from Steamwharf Stream to the lower Heathcote/Ōpāwaho or vice versa. A previous study by Hill (2013) found that some adult fish migration may occur between tributaries of the same river or estuarine system.



Figure 17. Clearance of emergent vegetation in the channel observed on 7 April 2018 in Steamwharf Stream.
Photo: S. Orchard.

4.3 Study limitations

Salinity surveys

The salinity profiling methodology aims to establish the furthest upstream extent of salt water intrusion. As a result the salinity measurements taken downstream do not represent the peak salinity value at that point on that particular tide. This would require near-simultaneous measurements throughout the waterway to capture the peak salinity at each monitoring point. The salinity profile obtained should be interpreted with this in mind. Although it provides a general indication of salinity characteristics near the salt water limit there is the potential for considerably higher salinities to have occurred (versus those measured) at the downstream end of the study area.

The positioning of each monitoring site is also important in relation to the thalweg (deepest part of the channel). In both waterways the channel profile was relatively easy to ascertain due to clear water conditions and/or shallow depths. However, even small differences in the positioning of the measurement point have the potential to influence the measurements obtained, especially in highly stratified waterways such as Linwood Canal.

Spawning site surveys

Important limitations of the methodology include egg detection issues that may arise from mortality between the date of spawning and the date of survey (Hickford & Schiel 2011; Orchard et al. 2018b). These effects can have a bearing on the number of sites detected, the AOO observed, and the estimation of egg production. In this study, both waterways were observed to have stretches where the habitat had been degraded as a result of disturbances during the study period. However, despite the potential for egg detection issues to have affected results if spawning had occurred in those areas, there were also considerable areas of unused high quality habitat nearby. In Steamwharf Stream this included the straw bale installations which were provided for the purpose of ensuring that high quality spawning habitat was available. These aspects improve confidence for interpreting the survey results in terms of their ability to provide a measure of the full extent of spawning habitat in each of the waterways. For the Linwood Canal study, however, the single month surveyed is unreliable as an indication of the overall level spawning activity in the catchment. Important seasonal trends such as the months of peak activity, total area of spawning habitat used, and total egg production, would require surveys over consecutive months (similar to those completed for Steamwharf Stream). These data are also needed to facilitate comparisons between years since one-off measurements are susceptible to variations in the timing of peak activity in relation to the survey date. If unaddressed, this produces a confounding factor for the interpretation of apparent trends (Orchard & Hickford 2018).

5. Recommendations

Linwood Canal:

- Take steps to protect the spawning sites identified in this study.
- Restore the area of potential spawning habitat on the true left bank.
- Complete further monitoring to investigate temporal aspects of spawning activity and habitat use, and to provide additional information on whether the true left bank may support a greater area of spawning habitat than was recorded in this study.
- Monitor the effectiveness of habitat protection measures over time.
- Give careful attention to the ecological impacts of any proposed alteration to the flood gate structures on Humphrey's Drive.

Steamwharf Stream:

- Continue monitoring of spawning activity to support the proposed riparian restoration project.
- Consider options for the restoration of juvenile & adult fish habitat for integration with other management activities in the catchment.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

- Consider establishing a monitoring programme to provide information on characteristics of the adult fish population, the potential for the movement of fish to and from the lower Heathcote/Ōpāwaho, and consequences for the level of spawning activity observed in Steamwharf Stream.

6. Acknowledgements

Thanks to Dr. Belinda Margetts, CCC, for coordinating this study. Thanks to Christian Wild and David Louw for field assistance, and to Dr. Mike Hickford at the Marine Ecology Research Group, University of Canterbury, for technical support. Comparative data on Īnanga spawning in Steamwharf Stream were sourced from the Whaka Inaka - Causing Whitebait project and studies conducted by the University of Canterbury.

7. References

- Hickford, M. J. H., & Schiel, D. R. (2011). Synergistic interactions within disturbed habitats between temperature, relative humidity and UVB radiation on egg survival in a diadromous fish. *PLoS ONE*, 6(9), e24318. doi:doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0024318
- Hickford, M. J. H., & Schiel, D. R. (2013). Artificial spawning habitats improve egg production of a declining diadromous fish, *Galaxias maculatus* (Jenyns, 1842). *Restoration Ecology*, 21(6), 686-694. doi:10.1111/rec.12008
- Hill, J. C. B. (2013). *Reproductive biology, movement and spawning dynamics of Galaxias maculatus in central New Zealand*. Masters Thesis, University of Canterbury, Christchurch. 152pp.
- McDowall, R. M. (1968). *Galaxias maculatus* (Jenyns), the New Zealand whitebait. *New Zealand Marine Department, Fisheries Research Bulletin*, 2, 1-83.
- McMurtrie, S., Brennan, K., Hickford, M., Orchard, S., & Lenihan, T. M. (2016). *Whaka Inaka : Causing Whitebait – improving Īnanga spawning in Christchurch's waterways*. New Zealand Freshwater Sciences Society Conference. Invercargill, New Zealand, 5-9 December, 2016.
- Orchard, S. (2016). *Identifying Īnanga spawning sites in plans: options for addressing post-quake spawning in Ōtautahi Christchurch*. Report prepared for Christchurch City Council and Environment Canterbury. Christchurch: University of Canterbury. 14pp.
- Orchard, S. (2017). *Response of Īnanga spawning habitat to riparian vegetation management in the Avon & Heathcote catchments*. Report prepared for Christchurch City Council. 35pp.
- Orchard, S., & Hickford, M. (2016). *Spatial effects of the Canterbury earthquakes on Īnanga spawning habitat and implications for waterways management*. Report prepared for IPENZ Rivers Group and Ngāi Tahu Research Centre. Waterways Centre for Freshwater Management and Marine Ecology Research Group. Christchurch: University of Canterbury. 37pp.
- Orchard, S., Hickford, M., & Schiel, D. (2016). *Use of artificial habitats to quantify Īnanga spawning areas for conservation and management*. New Zealand Freshwater Sciences Society Conference. Invercargill, New Zealand, 5-9 December, 2016.
- Orchard, S., & Hickford, M. J. H. (2018). Census survey approach to quantifying Īnanga spawning habitat for conservation and management. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*, 52(2), 284-294. doi:10.1080/00288330.2017.1392990.
- Orchard, S., Hickford, M. J. H., & Schiel, D. R. (2018a). Earthquake-induced habitat migration in a riparian spawning fish has implications for conservation management. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems*, 2018, 1-11. doi:10.1002/aqc.2898
- Orchard, S., Hickford, M. J. H., & Schiel, D. R. (2018b). Use of artificial habitats to detect spawning sites for the conservation of *Galaxias maculatus*, a riparian-spawning fish. *Ecological Indicators*, 91, 617-625.
- Orchard, S., & Measures, R. (2017). *Sea level rise impacts in the Avon Heathcote Estuary Ihutai. Salinity intrusion and Īnanga spawning scenarios*. Report prepared for Christchurch City Council. 56pp.
- QGIS Development Team. (2017). *QGIS Geographic Information System*. Open Source Geospatial Foundation Project. <http://qgis.org>.
- Richardson, J., & Taylor, M. J. (2002). A guide to restoring inanga habitat. *NIWA Science and Technology Series*, 50, 1-29.
- Taylor, M. J. (1999). *Inanga spawning on the Avon and Heathcote Rivers, 1999*. National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research Ltd. Christchurch.
- Taylor, M. J. (2002). *The national inanga spawning database: trends and implications for spawning site management*. *Science for Conservation* 188. Wellington: Department of Conservation. 37pp.
- Taylor, M. J. (2004). *Inanga spawning grounds on the Avon and Heathcote rivers*. Aquatic Ecology Ltd. Christchurch.
- Taylor, M. J., & Blair, W. (2011). *Effects of seismic activity on inaka spawning grounds on city rivers*. Aquatic Ecology Limited. Christchurch.

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

Appendix 1. Examples of Īnanga spawning sites in Linwood Canal.

A. Sites on the true right bank. Clockwise from top left – TR2, TR5, TR10, TR11.



20

Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

Appendix 1. Examples of Īnanga spawning sites in Linwood Canal.
B. Sites on the true left bank. Left – TL1, right - TL2.



Īnanga spawning survey of Linwood Canal and Steamwharf Stream

Appendix 2. Examples of Īnanga spawning sites in Steamwharf Stream.

A. April 2018 spawning sites. (a) & (b) two views of the furthest downstream of the two spawning sites identified in the 2018 surveys. (c) & (d) two views of the furthest upstream site. This site accounted for most of the spawning recorded in 2018 and has been used in previous years (Orchard 2017).



22

**Christchurch District Plan
Site of Ecological Significance
Site Significance Statement**

Site name: Avon Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai & Environs

Site number: SES/LP/14

Summary of Significance:

The Avon Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai is an originally rare ecosystem that contains indigenous vegetation communities that have been greatly reduced within the Low Plains Ecological District, and is also of local, national and international importance in terms of it supporting a representative assemblage of indigenous and migratory birdlife, including 23 threatened species.

Site Maps



Contents

Summary of Significance:	1
Site Maps	1
Contents	2
Additional Site Information	3
Site Description	3
Extent of Site of Ecological Significance	3
Assessment Summary	3
Assessment against Significance Criteria	5
Representativeness.....	5
Rarity/Distinctiveness	5
Diversity and Pattern	6
Ecological Context.....	7
Site Management	9
Existing Protection Status.....	9
References	11
Appendix 1: Indigenous Bird Checklist	14
Appendix 2: Fish Taxa	Error! Bookmark not defined.

PLEASE NOTE THIS STATEMENT IS BASED ON INFORMATION AVAILABLE AT THE TIME OF WRITING. DUE TO THE DYNAMIC NATURE OF ECOSYSTEMS, FUTURE REASSESSMENT OF THE SITE MAY BE NECESSARY TO REFLECT ANY CHANGES IN KNOWLEDGE OF ITS ECOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE.

Additional Site Information

Central point: 2487783, 5740761

Area of SES (ha): 1363.20 ha

Site Description

The Avon-Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai is located on the eastern fringes of Christchurch City, in central Canterbury, New Zealand. The site is separated from the Pacific Ocean by a 4.5 km long sand spit and comprises c.880 ha of inter-tidal flats and peripheral salt marsh. The estuary is roughly triangular in shape and fed by 3 small rivers (Avon River, Heathcote River and Linwood Avenue Canal) which collectively drain a largely urbanised catchment of 188 km². Tides are semi-diurnal with a range of 2.1 m for spring tides and 1.1 m for neap tides.

The Avon-Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai and its surrounding associated features comprise a mosaic of coastal environments, ecological units and vegetation types including salt marsh, and turf saltmeadow on riparian terraces, and planted shrubland and coastal bush. In addition to extensive areas of mudflat and peripheral salt marsh, the greater Avon-Heathcote area also includes the c.275 ha Bromley Oxidation Ponds/Te Huingi Manu Wildlife Refuge, c.100 ha of lowland wet grassland (Linwood Paddocks), and a combined area of c.40 ha of human-created tidal wetlands located around the margins of the estuary (Charlesworth, Bexley and Ferrymead wetland reserves, respectively). In total, c.1300 ha of habitat is available for wetland birds and at peak times these combined habitats support upwards of 30,000 birds (Crossland 1993, 2010, 2013a).

Extent of Site of Ecological Significance

The Avon-Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai and Environs SES includes the tidal extent of the estuary basin and shoreline, the lower Avon and Heathcote Rivers, Jellicoe Marsh, Bexley Wetland, McCormacks Bay (including the sports fields at the western end of the bay), the extent of the Bromley oxidation ponds, coastal paddocks between the oxidation ponds and the Avon Rivermouth, Linwood paddocks north of Linwood Avenue/east of Dyers Road, Charlesworth reserve, the portion of the Southshore spit south of the existing residential area, and large areas of grazed pasture, salt meadow and constructed wetlands within Ferrymead Park and on adjacent privately owned land as shown on the location maps. Note that the SES excludes the golf course area within Ferrymead Park, as indicated on the location map.

Assessment Summary

The Avon Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai and Environs SES has been evaluated against the criteria for determining significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna listed in Appendix 3 of the Canterbury Regional Policy Statement (Environment Canterbury, 2013) (see below) referring also to the Wildland Consultants (2013) Guidelines and advice from the relevant Specialist Ecologist

Groups. Under these criteria the site is ecologically significant because it meets the representativeness (criteria 1 & 2), rarity/distinctiveness (criteria 3, 4, 5 & 6), diversity and pattern (criterion 7), and ecological context criteria (criteria 9 & 10).

Assessment against Significance Criteria

Representativeness

- 1. Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that is representative, typical or characteristic of the natural diversity of the relevant ecological district. This can include degraded examples where they are some of the best remaining examples of their type, or represent all that remains of indigenous biodiversity in some areas.***

The site is significant under this criterion.

The Avon-Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai and immediate surroundings has had 144 bird species recorded between 1840 and 2014, including 54 resident species, 20 seasonal visitors, 61 vagrants and nine species which are now locally extinct. Of these, 47 native and migratory species (Appendix 1) are described as either being a) resident all year round, b) resident and breeding, c) resident with seasonal population influxes, or d) seasonal or regular visitors (Crossland 2013a).

Thirty-four species of fish representative of both marine and freshwater habitats have been recorded at the Avon Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai (Cromarty and Scott 1996). Sixteen species of fish were recorded during a 2011 survey of the Estuary, and sampling found no evidence for large scale changes in fish communities that could be associated with the 2011 earthquakes (Unwin and Hawke 2012).

- 2. Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that is a relatively large example of its type within the relevant ecological district.***

The site is significant under this criterion.

The Avon-Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai is the largest, semi-enclosed shallow estuary in Canterbury, and remains one of the Low Plains Ecological District's and New Zealand's most important coastal wetlands, despite being almost totally surrounded by the residential housing suburbs to the east of Christchurch City (Crossland 2009, Mac Farlane 2012; Cromarty and Scott 1996).

Rarity/Distinctiveness

- 3. Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that has been reduced to less than 20% of its former extent in the Region, or relevant land environment, ecological district, or freshwater environment.***

The site is significant under this criterion.

Site contains wetland vegetation that has been reduced to less than 20% of its former extent in the Low Plains Ecological District. The Threatened Environment Classification reports that less than 10% of indigenous cover remains in the Low Plains Ecological District (See Walker *et al.* 2007; Lloyd *et al.* 2013; Harris 1992).

- 4. Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that supports an indigenous species that is threatened, at risk, or uncommon, nationally or within the relevant ecological district.**

The site is significant under this criterion.

The site supports 23 avian species that are identified by Robertson et al. (2012) as either Threatened, Nationally Endangered, Nationally Vulnerable, At Risk, Relict, Naturally Uncommon or Recovering (refer Crossland 2009; Crossland 2013a).

The site supports the At Risk/Naturally Uncommon horses mane lakeweed (*Ruppia megacarpa*) (CCC Natural Areas Database).

- 5. The site contains indigenous vegetation or an indigenous species at its distribution limit within Canterbury Region or nationally.**

The site is significant under this criterion.

The Avon Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai is the southern limit of national and global range for Little Black Cormorant (*Phalacrocorax sulcirostris*) (Crossland 2013b).

- 6. Indigenous vegetation or an association of indigenous species that is distinctive, of restricted occurrence, occurs within an originally rare ecosystem, or has developed as a result of an unusual environmental factor or combinations of factors.**

The site is significant under this criterion.

Estuaries are listed by Williams et al. (2007) as historically rare ecosystems, and as such the associations of indigenous species that occur within the Avon Heathcote Estuary are significant under this criterion.

Diversity and Pattern

- 7. Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that contains a high diversity of indigenous ecosystem or habitat types, indigenous taxa, or has changes in species composition reflecting the existence of diverse natural features or ecological gradients.**

The site is significant under this criterion.

The wider site contains a high diversity of ecological units, including: mud flats, ribbonwood-rush shrub saltmarsh, reed-rush/turf saltmarsh, turf saltmeadow, exotic turf saltmeadow, raupo swamp, raupo/NZ flax/reed/rush/sedge tussock swamp, freshwater aquatic ecosystems, pine/NZ tree planted coastal bush, and exotic grazed pasture that supports indigenous migratory waders and waterfowl.

Ecological Context

8. *Vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that provides or contributes to an important ecological linkage or network, or provides an important buffering function.*

Does not meet this criterion

9. *A wetland which plays an important hydrological, biological or ecological role in the natural functioning of a river or coastal system.*

The site is significant under this criterion.

The estuary is a semi-enclosed basin with a surface area of over 800 ha, within which the combined flows of the Avon and Heathcote Rivers meet and mix with seawater during each tidal cycle. It functions as a trap for sediments transported down the beds of the two inflowing rivers. The extensive mudflats support an abundant and diverse invertebrate community which forms much of the food source for a wide variety of fish species, as well as resident and migratory waterfowl (Cromarty and Scott 1996).

10. *Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that provides important habitat (including refuges from predation, or key habitat for feeding, breeding, or resting) for indigenous species, either seasonally or permanently.*

The site is significant under this criterion.

The Avon Heathcote Estuary/Ihutai complex regularly support peak numbers of 30,000-35,000 wetland birds including peak numbers of waterfowl and 3000 individuals of other species (including cormorants, gulls, terns, swallows, spoonbills, herons, kingfisher, coot and pukeko). Of the 15,000 waterfowl, only 2000 of these were reported to be introduced species (mallard ducks and Canada geese) (Crossland 2005).

The highest counts are in late summer/autumn with c.36,637 birds in Jan 2010, followed by 34,292 birds in Feb 2010 and 31,743 birds in Mar 2010. More than 20,000 wetland birds were present during each of the 5 months from Dec to Apr 2010. This is the annual peak period when the area supports a considerable influx as part of the moulting, post-breeding flocking and migration strategies of many bird species (Crossland 1993, 2010). Lowest numbers occurred in Sep 2009 which coincides with many native species being away on inland breeding grounds and was immediately prior to the arrival of migratory bar-tailed godwits. The 7871 total recorded in Sep 2009 excludes cormorants and gulls. Based on counts in other years (unpubl. data), Sept estimates for gulls (3000+) and cormorants (400+) would give an estimated annual low population of c.11,000 – 12,000 wetland birds (Crossland 2013a).

Twelve species were recorded with populations exceeding 1000 individuals. These included New Zealand shoveler (7046), grey teal (5881), New Zealand scaup (5739), South Island pied oystercatcher (4844), paradise shelduck (3092), Canada goose (*Branta Canadensis*) (2871), mallard/grey duck hybrid (*Anas*

platyrhynchos x *A. superciliosa*) (2617), black-backed gull (*Larus dominicanus*) (2344), bar-tailed godwit (2110) and black swan (*Cygnus atratus*) (1104). In addition, both red-billed gull and black-billed gull (with a combined peak count of 6214) had peak populations estimated at 5000+ and 1000+, respectively. Another 8 species were recorded with numbers exceeding 100 individuals in at least one month: pukeko (881), pied cormorant (427), white-fronted tern (*Sterna striata*) (319), pied stilt (*Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus*) (312), little cormorant (*Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris*) (142), spur-winged plover (*Vanellus miles novaehollandiae*) (116), variable oystercatcher (109) and royal spoonbill (*Platalea regia*) (102). Three additional species had peak counts slightly under 100 during the 2009-2010 study but in other years each of these has regularly exceeded 100 in number: black cormorant (*Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae*) (93), banded dotterel (*Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus*) (86), and white-faced heron (*Egretta novaehollandiae*) (85) (Crossland 2013a).

The Bromley oxidation ponds regularly support peak numbers of more than 15,000 waterfowl and 3000 individuals of other species (including cormorants, gulls, terns, swallows, spoonbills, herons, kingfisher, coot and pukeko). Of the 15,000 waterfowl, only 2000 of these were reported to be introduced species (mallard ducks and Canada geese) (Crossland 2005). The Bromley oxidation ponds area is also a critical moulting site for NZ Scaup, NZ Shoveler, Paradise Shelduck, Grey Teal and Grey Duck. Oxidation Ponds area an important national/international breeding site for NZ Scaup, and regional importance for four cormorant species Crossland (2009).

Site Management

Existing Protection Status

To be completed

Threats and risks	Management recommendations	Support package options
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Pest plant incursion	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Monitor pest plant infestations and implement control as required.Assess new pest plant incursions and implement control as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none">
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Animal pest incursion	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Monitoring of possible animal pest incursions and trapping as necessaryUtilise moat and island concept in wetland restoration/creation around edges of estuary to deter access to sensitive breeding areas and roosting areas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reclamation, habitat loss and modification of the estuary margins (Grove and Parker 2013)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Consider improving the condition of the saltmarsh habitat on the margins of the estuary by ensuring that further degradation and habitat loss does not occur through the establishment of an appropriate buffer between the estuary and grazed pasture.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Disturbance of birds by humans and dogs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Ensure levels of human disturbance are minimised, for example by erecting temporary fencing and signage around nest sites.Ensure that dogs are under control or on a leash and prohibit dogs within core wetland areas of SES areaInterpretation highlighting the impacts dogs can have on wildlife valuesRestrict access to the estuary shoreline adjacent to the oxidation ponds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">

<ul style="list-style-type: none">Human disturbance to pied and little shag breeding colonies and royal spoonbill roost site	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Restrict access to the vicinity of the nesting colony (specifically to anglers and staff undertaking maintenance of restoration plantings) during the breeding season.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">
--	--	--

References

- Cromarty, P., Scott, D. A. (1996). *A Directory of Wetlands in New Zealand*. Wellington: Department of Conservation. IWRB, Ramsar Convention Bureau.
- Crossland, A. C. (1993) *Birdlife of the Avon-Heathcote Estuary and Rivers, and their margins*. Canterbury Conservancy Technical Report Series No.6. Christchurch: Department of Conservation.
- Crossland, A. C. (1999). *A summary of birdlife values of the Avon-Heathcote Estuary and Bromley Oxidation Ponds. Appendix A*. In: Anon. *Estuary Green Edge, Te Ihutai. Final Report. Dec 1999*. Christchurch: Woodward Clyde.
- Crossland, A. C. (2005) *A national biodiversity hot-spot from the treatment of urban wastewater - the Bromley Oxidation Ponds and Te Huingi Manu Wildlife Refuge, Christchurch*. Greening the City: Bringing Biodiversity Back into the Urban Environment, Proceedings of Royal New Zealand Institute of Horticulture Conference, 21-24 October 2003: 189-198.
- Crossland, A. C. (2009) *Assessment of the importance of the Avon-Heathcote Estuary area to birdlife: with reference to criteria under the RAMSAR convention for the identification of wetlands of international importance*. Internal Report, Christchurch City Council, Christchurch. New Zealand.
- Crossland, A. C. (2010) *The Avon-Heathcote Estuary and the Bromley Oxidation Ponds, Christchurch, New Zealand: An important area for waterbirds*. Stilt 57: 5-10.
- Crossland, A. C. (2013a) *Wetland bird monitoring at the Avon-Heathcote Estuary and Bromley Oxidation Ponds, Christchurch: August 2009 to July 2010*. Notornis 60: 151-157.
- Crossland, A. C. (2013b). First record of little black cormorant (*Phalacrocorax sulcirostris*) nesting in Canterbury and presumed first breeding for the South Island. Notornis 60: 191-193.
- Crossland, A. C. (2014) *Checklist to the birds of the Avon-Heathcote Estuary, the Bromley oxidation ponds and environs*. 10th update to Dec 2014. Christchurch City Council, Christchurch, New Zealand.
- Environment Canterbury. (2013). *Canterbury Regional Policy Statement 2013*. Environment Canterbury.

Harris, R. (1992) *A sense of place and time*. In Owen, S. J. (Ed) *The estuary: where our rivers meet the sea*. Christchurch City Council, Christchurch, New Zealand.

Lloyd, K., McClellan, R., Hutchison, M., Patrick, B., and Shaw, W. (2013) *Guidelines for the application of ecological significance criteria for indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna in Canterbury region*. Report prepared for Environment Canterbury by Wildlands Consultants, Rotorua, New Zealand.

MacFarlane, R. P. (2012) *Tidal and estuary margin invertebrate communities from Pegasus bay; a major national update for temperate littoral vegetation*. Unpublished Report.

Robertson, H., Dowding, J., Elliott, G., Hitchmough, R., Miskelly, C. O'Donnell, C., Powlesland, R., Sagar, P., Scofield, P., Taylor, G. (2013) *Conservation status of New Zealand birds, 2012*. New Zealand Threat Classification Series 4, Department of Conservation.

Unwin, M., and Hawke, L. (2012) *Assessment of fish populations in the Avon-Heathcote Estuary: 2011*. Report for Christchurch City Council. NIWA, Christchurch, New Zealand.

Walker, S., Cieraad, E., Grove, P., Lloyd, K., Myers, S., and Porteous, T. (2007) *Guide to users of the threatened environment classification*. Landcare Research, Lincoln, New Zealand.

Williams, P. A., Wider, S., Clarkson, B., and Stanley, M. C. (2007) *New Zealand's historically rare terrestrial ecosystems set in a physiognomic framework*. New Zealand Journal of Ecology 319(2): Pp 119 – 128.

Assessment completed by: Dr Antony Shadbolt
Date: 14th January 2015

Statement completed by: Dr Antony Shadbolt
Date: 14th January 2015

Statement updated by: XXX
Date: XXX

Appendix 1: Indigenous Bird Checklist

White-flipped Penguin (<i>Eudyptula minor albosignata</i>)	w Rb *
Australasian Gannet (<i>Morus serrator</i>)	w S #
Black Cormorant (<i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae</i>)	w Rb **
Pied Cormorant (<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>)	w Rb ***
Little Cormorant (<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i>)	w Rb **
Spotted Shag (<i>Stictocorax punctatus punctatus</i>)	w Rb ****
Little Black Cormorant (<i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i>)	w Rb #
White-faced Heron (<i>Ardea n. novaehollandiae</i>)	w RbS **
White Heron (<i>Egretta alba modesta</i>)	w S #
Australasian Bittern (<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>)	w S #
Royal Spoonbill (<i>Platalea regia</i>)	w RS **
Black Swan (<i>Cygnus atratus</i>)	w RbS ****
Paradise Shelduck (<i>Tadorna variegata</i>)	w RbS *****
Grey Duck (<i>Anas s. superciliosa</i>)	w RbS *
Grey Teal (<i>Anas gracilis</i>)	w RbS *****
New Zealand Shoveler (<i>Anas rhynchotis</i>)	w RbS *****
New Zealand Scaup (<i>Aythya novaseelandiae</i>)	w RbS *****
Australasian Harrier (<i>Circus approximans</i>)	w RbS *
New Zealand Falcon (<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>)	t S #
Marsh Crake (<i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i>)	w S *
Pukeko (<i>Porphyrio porphyrio melanotus</i>)	w RbS ****
Australasian Coot (<i>Fulica atra australis</i>)	w S *
South Island Pied Oystercatcher (<i>Haematopus ostralegus</i>)	w RS *****
Variable Oystercatcher (<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>)	w RS **
Pied Stilt (<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>)	w RbS ***
Wrybill (<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i>)	w S #
Banded Dotterel (<i>Charadrius bicinctus</i>)	w RbS **
Spur-winged Plover (<i>Vanellus miles</i>)	w RbS **
Turnstone (<i>Arenaria interpres</i>)	w S #
Red Knot (<i>Calidris canutus canutus</i>)	w S #
Eastern Bar-tailed Godwit (<i>Limosa lapponica baueri</i>)	w RS *****
Arctic Skua (<i>Stercorarius parasiticus</i>)	w S #
Pomarine Skua (<i>Stercorarius pomarinus</i>)	w S #
Black-backed Gull (<i>Larus dominicanus</i>)	w RbS *****
Red-billed Gull (<i>Larus novaehollandiae</i>)	w RbS *****
Black-billed Gull (<i>Larus bulleri</i>)	w RbS ***
White-fronted Tern (<i>Sterna striata</i>)	w RbS ****
Black-fronted Tern (<i>Sterna albobriata</i>)	w S **
Caspian Tern (<i>Sterna caspia</i>)	w RS **
New Zealand Pigeon (<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</i>)	t S #
Shining Cuckoo (<i>Chrysococcyx lucidus</i>)	t Sb *
New Zealand Kingfisher (<i>Halcyon sancta</i>)	w RbS **
New Zealand Pipit (<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae</i>)	t S *
Welcome Swallow (<i>Hirundo tahitica</i>)	w RbS ***
Grey Warbler (<i>Gerygone igata</i>)	t RbS *
South Island Fantail (<i>Rhipidura fuliginosa</i>)	t RbS *
Silvereye (<i>Zosterops lateralis</i>)	t RbS ****
Bellbird (<i>Anthornis melanura</i>)	t RbS *

Definition of terms To be completed.

Appendix 2: Fish Taxa

Fish taxa recorded from the Avon-Heathcote estuary during five fish surveys reported by Unwin and Hawke (2012) between 2005 and 2011.

Common name	2005	2006	2007	2010	2011
Chinook salmon	y	y			
Clingfish	y		y		y
Common Bully					y
Common smelt	y	y	y	y	y
Common sole	y	y	y	y	y
Estuary stargazer	y	y	y	y	
Giant bully	y		y		y
Globefish	y	y			
Inanga			y		y
Kahawai	y	y	y		y
Sand flounder	y	y	y	y	y
Shortfin eel	y	y	y	y	y
Slender sprat	y				y
Slender stargazer	y	y	y	y	y
Speckled sole		y			
Spotted stargazer	y	y	y	y	y
Spotty	y	y	y		
Stout sprat	y	y	y	y	y
Triplefins	y	y	y	y	y
Yellowbelly flounder	y	y	y	y	y
Yelloweye mullet	y	y	y	y	y
Number of species	21	16	16	11	16



Wairakei Research Centre
114 Karetoto Road
Wairakei
Private Bag 2000, Taupo
New Zealand
T +64-7-374 8211
F +64-7-374 8199
www.gns.cri.nz

**Waterways, Swamps and Vegetation of
Christchurch in 1856 and Baseflow Discharge
in Christchurch City Streams**

P.A. White
K. Goodrich
S. Cave
G. Minni

**GNS Science Consultancy Report 2007/103
May 2007**



Environment Canterbury Report U07/39

CONFIDENTIAL

This report has been prepared by the Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences Limited (GNS Science) exclusively for and under contract to Environment Canterbury. Unless otherwise agreed in writing, all liability of GNS Science to any other party other than Environment Canterbury in respect of the report is expressly excluded.

CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	IV
1.0 INTRODUCTION	1
2.0 1856 MAP OF VEGETATION AND WATERWAYS	1
3.0 1856 VEGETATION	2
4.0 SURFACE WATER FEATURES.....	3
4.1 1856 surface water features	3
4.2 1856 springs	4
4.3 Historic infrastructure and surface water features	4
4.4 Modern surface water features	4
4.4.1 Water courses.....	4
4.4.2 Springs.....	4
4.4.2.1 Environment Canterbury data	4
4.4.2.2 Christchurch City Council data.....	5
4.4.2.3 All springs.....	5
4.4.3 Gaugings.....	5
4.4.3.1 Environment Canterbury data	5
4.4.3.2 Christchurch City Council data.....	5
4.4.3.3 All gaugings.....	6
5.0 1856 SURFACE WATER FEATURES & MODERN SURFACE WATER FEATURES	6
5.1 Streams and water courses	6
6.0 SURFACE CATCHMENTS	8
6.1 Catchment boundaries in 1856.....	8
6.2 Catchment boundaries in 2006.....	9
6.3 Catchment boundary changes 1856-2006.....	9
7.0 BASE FLOW ESTIMATES	9
7.1 Old South Branch catchment.....	10
7.1.1 Median flow estimates	10
7.1.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features.....	10
7.1.3 Baseflow estimates	10
7.2 Styx River catchment.....	10
7.2.1 Median flow estimates	10
7.2.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features.....	10
7.2.3 Baseflow estimates	11
7.3 Avon River catchment.....	11
7.3.1 Median flow estimates	11
7.3.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features.....	11
7.3.3 Baseflow estimates	11
7.4 Estuary catchment.....	12
7.4.1 Median flow estimates	12
7.4.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features.....	12
7.4.3 Baseflow model.....	12
7.5 Heathcote River catchment	12
7.5.1 Median flow estimates	12
7.5.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features.....	12
7.5.3 Baseflow model.....	12
7.6 Halswell River catchment	13
7.6.1 Median flow estimates	13
7.6.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features.....	13
7.6.3 Baseflow estimates	13

Confidential 2007

8.0	SUMMARY	14
9.0	ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	15
10.0	REFERENCES	15

FIGURES

Figure 1.	Christchurch area showing waterways, swamps and vegetation cover, compiled by Ken Sibly (Wilson, 1989). This image is not intended as a high-quality replication and is for indicative purposes only.	17
Figure 2.	Water, vegetation and geographical features of the Christchurch area in 1856.	18
Figure 3.	Water, vegetation and geographical features of the Christchurch area in 1856, (black and white version).	19
Figure 4.	The large pie chart shows the percentage cover of the major features present in the Christchurch area in 1856 and 'other'. The smaller pie chart places all features into either a wet or dry category. The wet category is further divided to show the percentage of surface water.	20
Figure 5.	Wet and dry features of Christchurch in 1856.	21
Figure 6.	Water features and wet areas of Christchurch in 1856.	22
Figure 7.	Examples of raupo vegetation in Christchurch in 1856 (in the modern suburb of Oaklands).	23
Figure 8.	Water features and dry areas of Christchurch in 1856.	24
Figure 9.	Water features of Christchurch in 1856.	25
Figure 10.	Railway, wet features and 1856 footpath and streams.	26
Figure 11.	Railway, dry features and 1856 footpath and streams.	27
Figure 12.	The 1856 footpath follows the current railway line to the top of Papanui Road and then follows Main North Road.	28
Figure 13.	Modern streams and springs in the Christchurch area. Streams are mapped by Christchurch City Council and springs mapped by Environment Canterbury.	29
Figure 14.	Springs and streams mapped by Christchurch City Council.	30
Figure 15.	Springs mapped by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and the Sibly 1856 map (Wilson, 1989), with modern water courses.	31
Figure 16.	Springs mapped by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and the Sibly 1856 map (Wilson, 1989), black and white version.	32
Figure 17.	Springs with identification numbers, mapped by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and the Sibly 1856 map (Wilson, 1989).	33
Figure 18.	Sites of flow gauging records held by Environment Canterbury.	34
Figure 19.	Environment Canterbury stage flow recording sites.	35
Figure 20.	Sites of flow gauging records held by Christchurch City Council.	36
Figure 21.	Flow gauging sites with records held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council. The red circles denote sites in common to both Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council.	37
Figure 22.	Flow gauging sites with records held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council (black and white version).	38
Figure 23.	Flow gauging sites with records held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council (black and white version), with identification numbers.	39
Figure 24.	Water courses in Christchurch in 1856 and 2006.	40
Figure 25.	Water courses in central Christchurch in 1856 and in 2006.	41
Figure 26.	Historic Marshland swamp and modern water courses.	42
Figure 27.	Water courses in central Christchurch in 1856.	43
Figure 28.	Water courses in central Christchurch in 1856 and 2006.	44
Figure 29.	Estimated water catchment boundaries in Christchurch in 1856.	45
Figure 30.	The river systems in 2006 (Christchurch City Council pers. comm.)	46
Figure 31.	The catchment boundaries in 2006.	47
Figure 32.	The 1856 catchment boundaries, the 2006 catchment boundaries and areas where the two catchments are significantly different.	48
Figure 33.	Estimates of medium flow from gauging measurements and estimated Christchurch City catchment boundaries of 1856.	49
Figure 34.	All median flow estimates in the Old South Branch catchment.	50
Figure 35.	All median flow estimates and the 1856 map of waterways.	51
Figure 36.	Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Old South Branch catchment.	52
Figure 37.	Selected median flow estimates in the Old South Branch catchment.	53
Figure 38.	Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Old South Branch catchment.	54
Figure 39.	All median flow estimates in the Styx River catchment.	55
Figure 40.	The 1856 Styx River catchment and streams with median flow estimates.	56
Figure 41.	Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Styx River catchment.	57

Confidential 2007

Figure 42.	Selected median flow estimates in the Styx River catchment.	58
Figure 43.	Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Styx River catchment.	59
Figure 44.	All median flow estimates in the Avon River catchment.	60
Figure 45.	The 1856 Avon River catchment and streams with the median flow estimates.....	61
Figure 46.	Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Avon River catchment.	62
Figure 47.	Selected median flow estimates in the Avon River catchment.	63
Figure 48.	Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Avon River catchment.	64
Figure 49.	All median flow estimates in the Estuary catchment.	65
Figure 50.	Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Estuary catchment.	66
Figure 51.	Selected median flow estimates in the Estuary catchment.	67
Figure 52.	Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Estuary catchment.	68
Figure 53.	All median flow estimates in the Heathcote River catchment.	69
Figure 54.	The 1856 Heathcote River catchment and streams with median flow estimates.	70
Figure 55.	Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Heathcote River catchment.	71
Figure 56.	Selected median flow estimates in the Heathcote River catchment.	72
Figure 57.	Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Heathcote River catchment.	73
Figure 58.	All median flow estimates in the Halswell River catchment.	74
Figure 59.	The 1856 Halswell catchment and streams with the median flow estimates.....	75
Figure 60.	Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Halswell River catchment.	76
Figure 61.	Selected median flow estimates in the Halswell River catchment.	77
Figure 62.	Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Halswell River catchment.	78

TABLES

Table 1.	Wet and dry features in the Sibly map by area (km ²) and by percentage cover of each feature. The percentages shown are of the total map area.	2
----------	---	---

APPENDICES

Appendix 1	Median Flow Estimates from Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council Gauging Data.....	79
------------	---	----

Confidential 2007

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Environment Canterbury commissioned GNS Science to develop a map of the surface water features and vegetation of Christchurch City before urbanisation to assist the understanding of Christchurch City groundwater resources.

A GIS map of vegetation and waterways is generated from maps of waterways, swamps and vegetation cover in the Christchurch City area made in 1856 before urbanisation. The GIS map shows features of Christchurch City before urban development including:

- relatively wet areas – much of Christchurch was quite wet when Europeans arrived including north Christchurch; south Christchurch and east Christchurch;
- relatively dry areas including west Christchurch and much of the inner city within the four avenues;
- water courses are identified including the 1856 channel of the Waimakariri River and channels of the Styx, Avon, Heathcote and Halswell Rivers.

Examples of the importance of early surface features in determining present infrastructure are presented, including:

- an 1856 footpath in north Christchurch now followed by the railway from Bryndwr to the north of Papanui road and by Main North Road through Redwood;
- Hills Road, between Shirley and Marshland Road, follows the western side of an old swamp in the Marshland area.

Water courses observed in 1856 have been highly modified in some areas as part of drainage measures for Christchurch City. For example many drains now cross historic wet areas. Some 1856 streams have disappeared. For example Jackson's Creek near Stanmore Road does not now exist. However most of the major streams in 1856 occupy similar locations today.

GNS Science also estimated groundwater discharge to surface water with an analysis of historic gauging measurements held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council. Gauging measurements at 265 locations in Christchurch City catchments are assessed to produce estimates of surface water baseflow at 159 locations in Christchurch City streams and drains. Surface water baseflow discharge from Christchurch City catchments is estimated as follows:

- Old South Branch catchment approximately 3500 L/s at Waimakariri River above SH 1 bridge;
- Styx River catchment approximately 3000 L/s at Waimakariri River estuary;
- Avon River catchment approximately 2200 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote estuary;
- Estuary catchment approximately 140 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote estuary;
- Heathcote River catchment approximately 800 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote estuary;
- Halswell River catchment approximately 500 L/s at Leadleys Rd.

The largest gains in surface water flow occur at the following locations:

- Old South Branch catchment downstream of the north tributary;
- Styx River catchment downstream of SH1 Bridge;

Confidential 2007

- Avon River catchment upstream of Hagley Park, particularly Wairarapa Stream below Idris Rd and Waimairi Stream below Okeover Stream;
- Estuary catchment from the city outfall;
- Heathcote River catchment near the Cashmere Stream confluence;
- Halswell River catchment downstream of Windy Corner.

Identification of the sources of water in the city outfall is recommended (page 12) as the outfall may discharge water from the Avon River catchment.

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Christchurch City groundwater is a key water resource. The Christchurch City population, of approximately 350,000, is totally dependent on groundwater for water supply. GNS Science and Environment Canterbury are developing a three dimensional computer model of the geological layers under Christchurch City to better understand groundwater flow pathways.

Characterisation of surface sediments and groundwater discharge to the surface is relevant to an assessment of sub-surface geology and groundwater flow. However, much of the Christchurch City area is now covered by urban development, and drainage features, that mask the original landscape.

Environment Canterbury commissioned GNS Science to develop a map of the surface features of Christchurch City before urbanisation and estimate groundwater discharge to surface water in the Christchurch City area.

A GIS map of vegetation and waterways is developed in this report. The GIS map is based on survey maps of Christchurch made in 1856 before significant urbanisation. Waterways and catchments in 1856 are compared with waterways and catchments in 2006 to show how urbanisation has altered them. Groundwater discharge to surface water is estimated using available surface gauging data held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council. Surface flows are summarised on the 2006 drainage pattern and on the 1856 drainage pattern.

Research linking the 1856 map of vegetation and waterways with a sub-surface geological model of the Christchurch Formation and Springston Formation is in progress (White in prep.).

2.0 1856 MAP OF VEGETATION AND WATERWAYS

Ken Sibly compiled a map for the Christchurch Drainage Board (Figure 1), titled 'Christchurch area showing waterways, swamps & vegetation cover in 1856' (Wilson, 1989). An interpretation of this map is created in digital form using Arc Map Software, Didger Version 2.01, (Figure 2). A black and white version is also created (Figure 3). Light areas indicate dry conditions and dark areas indicate wet conditions. Place names (for example 'River Courtenay', Figure 2, is the Waimakariri River) and spelling used in this report are taken from Sibly's map where appropriate.

Interpretation of the Sibly map is difficult in some areas of Christchurch for the following reasons:

- features are represented on the Sibly map by words rather than symbols (with the exception of rivers and creeks). Therefore a potentially large number of vegetation categories exist because of the possible combinations of species. The problem is resolved here by creating a 'mixed vegetation' category, which included any vegetation composed of more than one species, e.g. flax, fern and grass;

Confidential 2007

- many features occurred together with no boundary to separate them. Additionally, some features were not bounded by a closed line. The problem is resolved here by creating 'best guess' boundaries. This is done by creating the boundary equidistance between the two features. The surrounding features are also taken into account. For example, if there are several areas of swamp in one area then they are probably linked.

Sibly's map contains more information than is conveyed in Figure 2. For example, the sand hills, open plain and many of the swamps have associated vegetation that is not transcribed to the GIS map because of poor boundary definition. Additional written information to accurately describe the environment in 1856 is required to improve the GIS map; collection of this information is beyond the scope of this project.

The largest areas of the Sibly map are swamp and mixed vegetation (Figure 4 and Table 1), which each cover 21% of the map area. Sand and open plain are also large areas with 19% and 17% cover respectively. Grass has 12% cover, however this is probably underestimated. Mixed vegetation often includes grass and the open plain area also has grass and fern. The total cover of raupo is also probably underestimated; a number of the swamps were named 'raupo swamp' and these areas were not included in the calculation.

Table 1. Wet and dry features in the Sibly map by area (km²) and by percentage cover of each feature. The percentages shown are of the total map area.

WET	Area (km ²)	Area (%)	DRY	Area (km ²)	Area (%)
Broken ground	8.50	3.29	dry land	0.16	0.06
Broken & swampy ground	0.88	0.34	fern	0.42	0.16
Broken ground & surface water	1.96	0.76	grass	31.10	12.05
Bush	0.60	0.23	hummock	0.33	0.13
Dry pond	0.15	0.06	open plain	44.87	17.39
Flax	1.73	0.67	sand	49.17	19.05
Lagoon	0.12	0.05	shingle	1.00	0.39
Marsh	0.54	0.21	tussock	0.75	0.29
Mixed vegetation	55.12	21.36			
Pond	0.08	0.03			
Raupo	2.44	0.95			
Rushes	1.34	0.52			
Surface water	1.65	0.64			
Swamp	54.05	20.94			
Tupaki	0.49	0.19			
Wetland	0.64	0.25			
Total	130.29	50.48		127.80	49.52

3.0 1856 VEGETATION

Vegetation noted on the Sibly map is broadly classified in 'wet' and 'dry' categories (Figure 5) with the area and percentage cover of each feature calculated (Table 1). Vegetation is determined to occur in wet or dry conditions by considering water requirements and water tolerances. Vegetation can be a good indication of soil moistness.

Vegetation indicative of wet conditions occurs in central and southern Christchurch (Figure 6). Rushes are indicative of wet conditions as they grow in areas that are permanently or temporarily flooded and are located adjacent to the larger rivers. Raupo and flax are also indicative of wet conditions. These species are initial colonisers of poorly drained depressions on river terraces or in basins (Clarkson, 2002). Raupo is also noted to invade open water (Christchurch City Council undated (a)). An example of raupo colonising old stream channels is demonstrated in Figure 7. The shape of the raupo patch in present-day Oaklands indicates raupo has colonised an old stream channel. The occurrence of raupo south of Oaklands (Figure 7) indicates raupo colonisation of a (presumably) low-lying area beside a creek.

Vegetation indicative of relatively dry conditions occurs in northern, eastern and western Christchurch (Figure 8). The term 'dry' is not used here to indicate dry conditions in an overall sense, but to indicate that ground conditions are relatively dry. For example, the sand hills on the coast are indicated as having some swampy areas, but are largely covered by manuka and fern. Manuka and tangle fern are both species that have lower nutrient demands than initial colonisers like raupo and flax (Clarkson, 2002). Manuka is an important pioneer species and can be found in many habitats (from wet to dry) and it is often the dominant plant species (Johnson and Brooke, 1989). The type of vegetation and conditions that were present on the coastal sand dunes in 1856 are most likely the fixed dune systems described by Moore and Adams (1963). These dune systems have scrub in which manuka is abundant and forms the biggest trees. Tangle fern occurs in lowland bogs and also with manuka scrub.

The western part of the map is dominated by open plain with grass and fern vegetation (Figure 8). Large tracts of grassland occur at the northern and southern ends of the open plain. At the southern end the grassland occurs amongst the primary tributaries of the Heathcote River. At the northern end it occurs along the banks of the 'River Courtenay' (Waimakariri River) and amongst the upstream reaches of 'Purarekanui Creek' (Styx River).

4.0 SURFACE WATER FEATURES

4.1 1856 surface water features

Surface water features (Figure 9) make up 23% of the total area of the map and include (Table 1) : swampy ground, surface water, lagoon, pond and wetland. The area covered by rivers and creeks has not been included in this calculation (Figure 4 and Table 1). The swamps lie approximately north to south through the centre of the Christchurch area. Surface water is mostly absent in the east and west, in the areas covered by open plain and sand. There are three major rivers in the area. The largest is the 'River Courtenay' (Waimakariri River) in the north. The smaller Avon and Heathcote rivers occur further south and enter the ocean via the estuary in the southeast. Another important river system is 'Purarekanui Creek' (Styx River) which runs to the southeast of the 'River Courtenay'. Extensive networks of creeks originate from the open plains area in the west to flow into the Avon and Heathcote rivers, 'Purarekanui Creek' and the River Halswell in the southwest. Other surface water features (swamps, marshes, ponds etc) lie within close proximity to the rivers and creeks.

4.2 1856 springs

In 1856 three springs were mapped (Figure 9). Two springs are located within a swamp close to the centre of the map (now the suburb of Redwood). The other spring is located approximately 2km to the northeast and lies at the edge of a swamp. All three springs are in close proximity to creeks.

4.3 Historic infrastructure and surface water features

The footpath constructed in 1856 largely avoids the wet areas and follows the areas that were drier during that time (Figure 10 and Figure 11). Main North Road is constructed along much of the same route as the 1856 footpath (Figure 12).

4.4 Modern surface water features

4.4.1 Water courses

Modern water courses are mapped by Christchurch City Council in 2006 (Van Nieuwpoort, pers. comm.) (Figure 13). Water courses cover much of the Christchurch area. The exceptions are western suburbs like Yaldhurst and the eastern suburbs of Spencerville and Parkland.

The major river system in the area is the Waimakariri River, which was known as the 'River Courtenay' in the 1850s. The other major rivers in the area are the Avon and Heathcote. The channels of these rivers are much younger than the channel of the Waimakariri River, probably being around 1000 years old (Basher et al. 1988). Both rivers are sourced by springs that are sustained by groundwater (Brown, 2001). The Avon River is fed by springs in the western suburbs, many from the suitably named suburb of Avonhead (Wilson, undated). The springs feeding the Heathcote River are located south-west of Christchurch. The Styx River (Purarekanui Creek) is another large system in the area. It is also spring fed and originates in the suburb of Harewood (<http://www.thestyx.co.nz>).

Some water courses have been highly modified since 1856, such as those in Marshland (Section 5.1.1). These water courses now form straight channels alongside roads. There are also examples of water courses that appear to have been left in a natural state because they follow the natural contours of the land. For example, water courses at the base of the Port Hills in the south and water courses just below the Waimakariri River in the north.

4.4.2 Springs

4.4.2.1 Environment Canterbury data

Springs are mapped by Environment Canterbury (Figure 13). The coast is virtually devoid of springs as most springs are located at least 5km from the shoreline. A dense cluster of springs occur in the southwest in the Halswell River catchment. Two springs are associated with the Heathcote River. The remainder of the springs are located northwest of central Christchurch, in the Waimakariri, Styx and Avon River catchments. The Avon, Heathcote and Styx Rivers are all spring fed and most springs are closely associated with modern streams.

4.4.2.2 Christchurch City Council data

In addition to ECAN, springs are mapped by Christchurch City Council (Figure 14) (Van Nieuwpoort, pers. comm.). Similar to those mapped by Environment Canterbury, a cluster of springs occur in the southwest, in the Halswell River catchment. The remainder of the springs are located north and northwest of central Christchurch, associated with the Waimakariri, Styx and Avon River catchments.

4.4.2.3 All springs

A total of 425 springs have been identified by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and Sibly (Wilson, 1989), in the 1856 map, in the greater Christchurch area (Figure 15 and Figure 16). The springs mapped by Christchurch City Council are more closely associated with Christchurch City itself than the springs mapped by Environment Canterbury. The springs mapped by Environment Canterbury include those associated with the Halswell River catchment and many north of the Waimakariri River. Identification numbers are assigned to each spring site (Figure 17).

The locations of some springs are also coincident with the locations of Maori Pa sites. For example:

- Otautahi Pa on the Avon River between Madras and Barbadoes Street was associated with springs that 'used to bubble forth through large cones of sand' (Taylor, 1950).
- Environment Canterbury map the Omokihi Pa between Wigram Road, Halswell Road and Curletts Road and Weeber (pers.comm.) mentions that a spring was associated with the pa.

Springs associated with these pa sites are not included in the spring location data sets assembled in this report due to some unreliability of spring location information.

4.4.3 Gaugings

4.4.3.1 Environment Canterbury data

Stream gauging locations are recorded by Environment Canterbury (Figure 18, from the data provided by Ettema pers. comm). Some areas have quite good coverage of stream gauging data, for example, the extensive network of streams just south of the Waimakariri River. Other areas with a good coverage of stream gauging data include streams in the suburbs of Thornington, Oaklands, Halswell, Avonhead, Fendalton and the area just west of the city centre. Environment Canterbury maintains two stage recording sites (Figure 19) at Gloucester Street Bridge (Avon River) and Eastern Terrace (Heathcote River).

4.4.3.2 Christchurch City Council data

Christchurch City Council (Tibble pers.comm.) records stream gaugings in the Christchurch City area (Figure 20). Gauging records are common in the Avon, Heathcote and North City catchments.

4.4.3.3 All gaugings

The combined set of Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City gauging data (Figure 21 and Figure 22) includes 5917 individual gaugings and has a good coverage of gauging measurements over Christchurch City, the Styx catchment and the old South Branch of the Waimakariri River. Identification numbers are assigned to the 434 gauging sites (Figure 23) in the area.

5.0 1856 SURFACE WATER FEATURES & MODERN SURFACE WATER FEATURES

5.1 Streams and water courses

Water courses of 1856 are compared with water courses of 2006 in Figure 24. Hawkins (2001) notes that the lower reaches of the Waimakariri River have changed radically since 1850. At this time the river divided into two equal branches, one heading north east (north branch - now part of Kaiapoi River) and the other to the east (south branch). The branches rejoined further downstream to form an island (Kaiapoi Island) of about 7000 acres.

William Bray, a local civil engineer (Christchurch City Libraries, undated (a)), was well known in Christchurch in the 1860s for prophesying that the Waimakariri River would one day flood Christchurch. Crosbie Ward, a local politician and businessman, wrote this poem about him:

*At Avonhead lives Mr Bray,
Who every morning used to say,
"I should not be much surprised today
If Christchurch City were swept away
By the rushing, crushing, flushing, gushing Waimakariri River"*

*He told his tale and he showed his plan,
How the levels lay and the river ran;
The neighbours thought him a learned man,
But wished him further than Ispahan,*
With his wearing, tearing, flaring, scaring Waimakariri River*

*Ispahan is the historic name for Isfahan, a city in central Iran.

In 1868, as predicted by Bray, the Waimakariri River flooded and sent a stream down the Avon River which flooded the centre of Christchurch (Christchurch City Libraries, undated (a)). At this time the south branch cut a new main channel, bypassing the end of the old south branch. The north branch also cut a new channel, passing through the bottom of Kaiapoi Island. Between 1868 and 1931 the river was confined to these channels with stopbanking. Since then, using further control measures, the river has been straightened and narrowed to its current form (Basher et al., 1988).

The mouth of the Waimakariri River has changed position over the last 150 years (Figure 24). In 1856 the mouth was approximately 2km south of its current location, an observation

Confidential 2007

which has also been noted by Basher et al. (1988). A survey conducted in 1934 detected a northward shift of the mouth. The shift was thought to be a result of the flood control measures carried out further upstream. As the mouth moved north, Brooklands Sandspit also enlarged and lengthened as the sand dunes accreted. The mouth and spit have been relatively stable since about 1960 (Basher et al., 1988).

Discrepancies between water courses in 1856 and water courses in 2006 in central-south Christchurch City (Figure 25) include:

- The downstream reaches of the Heathcote River are offset some distance. The offset may be caused by registration differences of the two maps to a common coordinate system. The 1856 channels and the modern channels are in similar locations;
- Avon River and Heathcote River tributaries in central Christchurch appear to have been modified, presumably to accommodate the growing town of Christchurch, and some tributaries have disappeared. For example: the 1856 water course (Jackson's Creek) through Phillipstown is absent from the 2006 map of water courses; an Avon River stream channel in central Christchurch between Durham St and Madras St that coincided with the base of a three foot high terrace (Dobson, 1864) through central Christchurch has been filled;
- Water courses in 2006 include the Christchurch drainage network;
- Water courses in 2006 identify channels not mapped in 1856 (e.g. channels draining the Port Hills that are commonly dry).

Wigram (1916) reports on the Avon River channel between Durham St (crossing the Christchurch Square) and Madras St:

"Behind the White Hart, in Lichfield Street, was a raupo swamp, another to the east extended nearly to the present Lancaster park. These areas were the haunts of swarms of ducks and pukaki. Running diagonally across the site of the city was a deep gully, carrying water in winter time too deep to be forded. This gully left the river near St. Michael's Church – it can still be seen in the vicarage gardens – crossed Cashel Street, passed near the Bank of New Zealand Corner, through Dr. Prins' garden, where the Canterbury Hall now stands, and flowed back into the river near the Manchester Street bridge."

Market Place, now Victoria Square, between this channel and the current channel of the Avon River contained a gravel pit in the 1850s (Hart, 1888?).

The water courses observed in 1856 have been highly modified in some areas as part of drainage measures for Christchurch City. An example of this is the suburb of Marshland (Figure 26). The area was originally covered by a large swamp, where development began shortly after the map was surveyed in 1856. Early settlers began work draining the area in the 1860s, diverting the water to Horseshoe Lagoon (Christchurch City Libraries undated (b)). The northern end of Hills Rd follows the edge of the old swamp (Figure 26); this road followed the only safe route through the area at the time. The construction of roads required

extensive and continuous work due to sand and metal fill being swallowed by the bog. By the early 1900s the roads of Marshland were stable enough to become popular travelling routes (Christchurch City Libraries undated.(b)).

Hagley Park has retained much of its water features in comparison to the rest of central Christchurch (Figure 25, Figure 27 and Figure 28). Most creeks located in the park area are currently as they were in 1856, though a couple of 1856 creeks are currently absent. The following information on the origins and development of the Hagley Park area is sourced from Christchurch City Libraries (undated (c)). In 1850 approximately 500 acres was mapped as Hagley Park, located west of the central town. At the time it was a mixture of scrub, swamp and creeks that flowed into the Avon River. The Deans brothers were among the first settlers in the area, setting up a farm at Riccarton following land clearance by two small groups of Scots led by Herriott and McGillivray (Christchurch City Council, undated (b)). It is thought that they made an agreement with William Fox, an agent for the New Zealand Company, that Hagley Park would remain a barrier between their property and the township.

Hagley Park and the Government Domain (now the Botanic Gardens) were a planned part of the settlement and in 1855 a law was passed which stated that “the land commonly known as Hagley Park, shall be reserved forever as a public park, and shall be open for the recreation and enjoyment of the public”. The park was divided into Little Hagley, North Hagley, South Hagley and the Government Domain. In 1862 Little Hagley was set aside for Maori to use when visiting Christchurch. The park area began to be modified with the establishment of the Botanic Garden in the Government Domain in 1864, when native plants were removed and replaced with exotics such as beech, elm, chestnuts, pines and oaks. The Hagley Park swamp was retained but largely modified. In 1897, the swamp was expanded to form the Victoria Lake area to celebrate the Diamond Jubilee of Queen Victoria’s reign. Formation of the Victoria Lake area (4 acres in area) destroyed many native plants in the swamp (about 1 acre in area).

Wilson’s Creek (Figure 27) water course in 2006 (Figure 28) is much the same as it was in 1856, except:

- Wilson’s Creek is now split;
- The upper section of Wilson’s Creek is now drained direct to the Heathcote River in the vicinity of Wilson’s Road (Figure 28).

Jackson’s Creek, mapped in 1856 (Figure 27) in the vicinity of Stanmore Road, has now disappeared (Figure 28). Bell’s Creek, mapped in 1856 (Figure 27) in the vicinity of Aldwins Road, appears to have been replaced by two drains – one draining directly to the estuary and another draining to the Heathcote River.

6.0 SURFACE CATCHMENTS

6.1 Catchment boundaries in 1856

The 1856 water catchment boundaries (Figure 29) are estimated using Figure 1 and Figure 6 for the catchments of the Avon, Heathcote, Styx and Halswell rivers. The catchment

boundaries are estimated using the paper version of the Figure 1 which shows the 1856 waterways, swamps and others water features in Christchurch. The delineation of catchment boundaries is especially difficult in some areas (e.g. A', Figure 29) because of the occurrence of swamps and a flat topography.

6.2 Catchment boundaries in 2006

The catchment boundaries are estimated using a digital model of Christchurch topography and Christchurch City's river catchment classification (Figure 30). There are six river systems named, Avon, Halswell, Heathcote, Estuary, Styx and Waimakariri (Figure 30). The Christchurch City river catchment classification assists with location of catchment boundaries. From the north to the south, the catchment are Old South Branch (OSB), Styx (Styx River), Avon (Avon River), Estuary (Figure 31), Heathcote (Heathcote River), and Halswell (Halswell River).

6.3 Catchment boundary changes 1856-2006

The extents of the 1856 and 2006 catchments are represented on Figure 32. The mapped catchment area in 2006 is larger than in 1856. Firstly, the OSB catchment connected to the Waimakariri River (A', Figure 32) appeared after 1856. Secondly, the C' areas corresponds not to an extension of the catchments but to a difference between the data in 1856 and 2006. The area labelled B', in the vicinity of north Christchurch, indicates where natural drainage to the Avon River catchment has been shifted to the Styx River catchment after 1856. However, this interpretation of the maps may be in error because a large swamp separated the two catchments in 1856 and so the catchment boundary is difficult to identify.

7.0 BASE FLOW ESTIMATES

Baseflow in streams represents discharge from the groundwater system to surface water.

Median flow is estimated at each of the 434 gauging sites (Figure 21) from the Christchurch City and Environment Canterbury gauging measurements collected since 1950. A gauging of the Barbadoes Street drain, where the drain enters the Avon River, measured on 19 July 2007 is included in the data. Median flow values at each site are calculated with Microsoft Excel. Median flow estimates are represented in 1856 catchments in Figure 33. A total of 266 gauging sites are in the modern catchments of Christchurch City (i.e. Old South Branch, Styx River, Avon River, Estuary Catchment, Heathcote River and Halswell River).

The following analysis considers:

- all median flow measurements and the 2006 catchment;
- all median flow measurements and the 1856 catchment;
- selection of flow measurements that may represent base flow.

Available surface gauging data are reviewed at sites to assess the quality of the median flow estimate including:

- the number of measurements at each site;
- the season of measurement;
- the relation between upstream and downstream flow;
- likely errors in location of the gauging site from site name and the 2006 map of streams and drains;
- discounting of gauging sites with obvious tidal influence in the Avon River and Heathcote River catchments.

Median flow measurements from 161 gauging sites, listed by catchment in Appendix 1, are selected as representative of baseflow.

7.1 Old South Branch catchment

7.1.1 Median flow estimates

The Old South Branch (OSB) catchment is along the Waimakariri River, in the north of Christchurch. All available estimated median flows of this area are represented on Figure 34. The flow of the main stream from the upstream to the downstream, increases from about 4 L/s to approximately 4000 L/s.

7.1.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features

This catchment didn't exist in 1856. The greatest gains in flows in this catchment are in the 1856 channel of the Waimakariri River (Figure 35).

7.1.3 Baseflow estimates

Selected median flow estimates at gauging sites in the OSB catchment (Figure 36) are plotted on the 2006 catchment in Figure 37 and Figure 38. OSB catchment surface water discharge is estimated at approximately 3500 L/s where the catchment discharges to the Waimakariri River. The largest gains in surface water flow occur downstream of the north tributary (downstream of site 37 in Figure 36).

7.2 Styx River catchment

7.2.1 Median flow estimates

The Styx River catchment is between the Old South Branch catchment and the Avon catchment. The outlet of this catchment is situated in the Waimakariri River estuary. All estimated median flows of this area are represented on the Figure 39. The median flow of the main stream increases from about 4 L/s in the head waters to 3300 L/s at the estuary of the Waimakariri River.

7.2.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features

The catchment area was smaller in 1856 than today. However the main stream remained the same between 1856 and 2006. The differences existing between the catchment sizes are localised in a swamp area A' on Figure 40. Most baseflow appears to enter the Styx River near, and downstream of, A' in Figure 40.

7.2.3 Baseflow estimates

Selected median flow estimates for sites in the Styx River catchment (Figure 41) are plotted on the 2006 catchment in Figure 42 and Figure 43.

Gauged flow at site 172 (Figure 41, Styx River at flood gates) is potentially impacted by tidal variations in the Waimakariri Estuary (Tibble pers. comm.). Therefore the median flow of 3300 L/s at this site may not be representative of total baseflow from this catchment.

7.3 Avon River catchment

7.3.1 Median flow estimates

The Avon River catchment is situated in Christchurch City. The outlet of this catchment is the estuary. Median flows from all gauging measurements of this area are represented on Figure 44. The flow system of the Avon catchment is more developed than Old South Branch and Styx River flow systems and the main stream is supplied by many small streams and drains. At the outlet, the median flow is about 13 000 L/s and this flow is probably tidally influenced.

7.3.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features

The Avon River catchment boundaries in 1856 were probably not the same as in 2006. The area of difference located in the swamp area A' on Figure 45. The swamps are in the middle of the boundary between the Styx River catchment and Avon River catchment.

7.3.3 Baseflow estimates

Selected median flow estimates for sites in the Avon River catchment (Figure 46) are plotted on the 2006 catchment in Figure 47 and Figure 48.

Avon River baseflow discharge is estimated as approximately 2200 L/s, made up of:

- 1669 L/s discharge past Gloucester Bridge;
- 232 L/s Dudley Creek;
- 210 L/s Old No 2 Drain draining the Horseshoe Lake area.
- 62 L/s Barbadoes Street drain - flowing from the Old St Albans swamp.

The Avon River at Dudley Creek is tidally influenced (Tibble pers. comm.) so the median flow at Dudley Creek (site 306) may not be representative of baseflow. However, St Albans Creek, in the catchment of Dudley Creek, is not influenced by tides (Tibble pers. comm.) and median flow there is 236 L/s at site 406. This is consistent with the baseflow discharge estimate of 232 from Dudley Creek. The largest gains of flow in the Avon River occur upstream of Hagley Park, particularly Wairapa Stream below Idris Road (below gauging site 427) and Waimairi Stream below Okeover Stream (site 357).

7.4 Estuary catchment

7.4.1 Median flow estimates

The Estuary catchment is situated between the Avon catchment and the estuary. The area consists mainly of drains and flow data is sparse. The estimated median flows in this area are represented in the Figure 49.

7.4.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features

The estuary catchment in 1856 contained no flowing streams and was covered by swamp.

7.4.3 Baseflow model

Selected median flow estimates for sites in the Estuary catchment (Figure 50) are plotted on the 2006 catchment in Figure 51 and Figure 52. The city outfall (site 291, Figure 50) has the largest discharge with an estimated median flow of 100 L/s. This drain may take water from areas of old swamps in the vicinity of Linwood Avenue (Figure 28) and old Bells Creek (Figure 27). Therefore discharge through the city outfall may originate in the Avon River catchment. It is recommended that the sources of water in the city outfall are identified with the aim of measuring discharge from the Avon River catchment through the city outfall.

7.5 Heathcote River catchment

7.5.1 Median flow estimates

The Heathcote River catchment is the largest catchment of the Christchurch area. The flow system is well developed with many side streams. The outlet of this catchment is the estuary. The estimated median flows of this area are represented on the Figure 53. At the outlet, the median flow is about 4700 L/s; this figure may be tidally influenced.

7.5.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features

Median flow estimates (Figure 54) indicate the importance of the original drainage pattern to discharge of water from the groundwater system.

7.5.3 Baseflow model

Selected median flow estimates for sites in the Heathcote River catchment (Figure 55) are plotted on the 2006 catchment in Figure 56 and Figure 57.

Baseflow discharge of the Heathcote River is estimated as approximately 800 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote Estuary consisting of:

- 776 L/s median flow at Buxton Terrace.

Median flow is estimated at 776 L/s at the Heathcote River flow recorder (site 230, Figure 55) from 352 gauging measurements.

Confidential 2007

Medium flows in some side creeks are not gauged. For example Wilson's Creek (Figure 28) has no measurements.

The median flow at Buxton Terrace is assumed as representative of median flow as far up the river as Ferniehurst Street (site 128, Figure 55) because:

- median gauged flow at Barrington Street is similar to median gauged flow at Buxton Terrace;
- median gauged flow in 12 measurements at Ferniehurst Street is 1061 L/s which may not be statistically significantly different, given the small number of measurements at Ferniehurst Street, from the median flow at Buxton Terrace.

The largest gain in Heathcote River flow is below the Cashmere Stream confluence.

7.6 Halswell River catchment

7.6.1 Median flow estimates

The Halswell River catchment is situated to the southwest of Christchurch City. The estimated median flows of this area are represented on Figure 58. The median flow is at most 600 L/s.

7.6.2 Median flow estimates and 1856 features

Most flow (Figure 59) is in the Halswell River. A cluster of flow measurements in the north west of the catchment (e.g. flow in the range 15 L/s to 106 L/s) are flows from a quarry located, presumably in an ancient channel of a tributary of the Halswell River (Figure 59).

7.6.3 Baseflow estimates

Selected median flow estimates for sites in the Halswell River catchment (Figure 60) are plotted on the 2006 catchment in Figure 61 and Figure 62.

Estimated baseflow discharge is approximately 500 L/s at Leadleys Road (site 246, Figure 60). The largest gains in surface water flow in the Halswell River occur downstream of Windy Corner.

Confidential 2007

8.0 SUMMARY

A GIS map of vegetation and waterways has been generated from 1856 maps of waterways, swamps and vegetation cover before urbanisation. This map shows features of Christchurch City before urban development including:

- relatively wet areas – much of Christchurch was quite wet when Europeans arrived including north Christchurch; south Christchurch and east Christchurch;
- relatively dry areas including west Christchurch and much of the inner city within the four avenues;
- water courses are identified some of which had different names including the 1856 channel of the Waimakariri River and channels of the Styx, Avon, Heathcote and Halswell Rivers.

Examples of the importance of early surface features in determining present infrastructure are presented, including:

- an 1856 footpath in north Christchurch now followed by the railway from Bryndwr to the north of Papanui road and by Main North Road through Redwood;
- Hills Road, between Shirley and Marshland Road, follows the western side of an old swamp in the Marshland area.

Water courses observed in 1856 have been highly modified in some areas as part of drainage measures for Christchurch City. For example many drains now cross historic wet areas. Some 1856 streams have disappeared. For example Jackson's Creek near Stanmore Road does not now exist. However most of the major streams in 1856 occupy similar locations today.

Surface catchments for the Styx, Avon, Heathcote and Halswell rivers are much the same today as they were in 1856 with one exception:

- The current Styx River Catchment includes an area in north Christchurch (Figure 29) that was possibly in the Avon River catchment in 1856.

The Old South Branch catchment now exists in the area of the Waimakariri River channel in 1856. Spring locations identified by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council, and the 1856 map are collated (Figure 15) to identify springs in all catchments. A description of median flow in Christchurch City is developed from surface gauging data held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council. Median gauged flow estimates are assumed to represent base flow, i.e. groundwater discharge to surface water, in Christchurch.

Groundwater discharge to surface water is estimated from an analysis of historic gauging measurements held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council. Surface water baseflow discharges from Christchurch City catchments are estimated as follows:

- Old South Branch catchment approximately 3500 L/s at Waimakariri River above SH 1 bridge;

Confidential 2007

- Styx River catchment approximately 3000 L/s at Waimakariri River estuary;
- Avon River catchment approximately 2200 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote estuary;
- Estuary catchment approximately 140 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote estuary;
- Heathcote River catchment approximately 800 L/s at the Avon-Heathcote estuary;
- Halswell River catchment approximately 500 L/s at Leadleys Rd.

The largest gains in surface water flow occur at the following locations:

- Old South Branch catchment downstream of the north tributary;
- Styx River catchment downstream of SH1 Bridge;
- Avon River catchment upstream of Hagley Park, particularly Wairarapa Stream below Idris Rd and Waimairi Stream below Okeover Stream;
- Estuary catchment from the city outfall;
- Heathcote River catchment near the Cashmere Stream confluence;
- Halswell River catchment downstream of Windy Corner.

9.0 ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Our thanks to the following for assisting with this project:

- Michael Wall, GNS Science for assistance with digitising the map;
- John Weeber, Environment Canterbury, for locating the 1856 drainage board map compilation;
- Michael Dicker, Environment Canterbury, for providing some funding;
- Marc Ettema, Environment Canterbury, for providing ECan spring locations and ECan gauging data;
- Ilya Van Nieuwpoort for providing Christchurch City Council data sets including spring locations and river environment (CREAS data);
- Gary Tibble for providing historic gauging data held by Christchurch City Council.
- Thanks also to John Weeber and Gil Zemansky for reviewing a draft of this report.

10.0 REFERENCES

- Basher L. R., Murray Hicks D., McSaveney M. J. and Whitehouse I. E., 1988. *The Lower Waimakariri River Floodplain – a geomorphological perspective*. Soil Conservation Group Ministry of Works and Development, Christchurch.
- Brown L. J., 2001. 'Canterbury' in M. R. Rosen and P.A. White (eds.), *Groundwaters of New Zealand*, New Zealand Hydrological Society Inc., Wellington, pp. 441-459.
- Christchurch City Council undated (a). Christchurch city and Lowland Canterbury Streamside Planting. Retrieved 18/12/06, from:
<http://www.ccc.govt.nz/parks/theenvironment/StreamsidePlantingGuide.pdf>.
- Christchurch City Council, undated (b). Christchurch before 1850. Inner city and coastal heritage trails, 2p.
- Christchurch City Libraries undated. (a). Avonhead. Retrieved 3/01/07, from
<http://library.christchurch.org.nz/Heritage/LocalHistory/Fendalton/Avonhead.asp>.

Confidential 2007

- Christchurch City Libraries undated. (b). Early Marshland. Retrived 21/12/06, from <http://library.christchurch.org.nz/Heritage/LocalHistory/Shirley/Marshland.asp>.
- Christchurch City Libraries undated (c). Hagley Park. Retrived 5/01/07, from <http://library.christchurch.org.nz/Heritage/EarlyChristchurch/HagleyPark.asp>.
- Clarkson B., 2002. 'Swamps, fens and bogs' in B Clarkson, M. Merret and T. Downs (compilers), Botany of the Waikato, Waikato Botanical Society Inc., Hamilton, pp. 49-56.
- Dobson, E. 1864 Plan of accompany Mr Dobson's report on the drainage of the City of Christchurch. Photocopy held by Canterbury Museum reference G/79.
- Hart, G. R. 1888? Canterbury Caledonian Society, Christchurch.
- Hawkins D. N., 2001. Beyond the Waimakariri, 3rd edn, Cadsonbury Publications, Christchurch.
- Johnson P. N. and Brooke P. A., 1989. Wetland Plants in New Zealand, Department of Scientific and Industrial Research Publishing, Wellington.
- Moore L. B. and Adams N. M., 1963. Plants of the New Zealand Coast, Paul's Book Arcade, Auckland and Hamilton.
- Taylor, W. A. 1950. Lore and History of the South Island Maori.
- White, P. A. in prep. Geological model of the Christchurch Formation and Springston Gravels under Christchurch City. GNS Science report to Environment Canterbury.
- Wigram, H. F. 1916. The Story of Christchurch, New Zealand. Lyttelton Times Co., Christchurch.
- Wilson, J. 1989. Christchurch swamp to City. A short history of the Christchurch Drainage Board 1875-1989. Published by Te Waihora Press, Lincoln, for Christchurch Drainage Board. 96p. + map.
- Wilson, J. undated. Canterbury Places, Te Ara – the Encyclopedia of New Zealand, updated 3-Nov-2006, from <http://www.teara.govt.nz/places/Canterbury/CanterburyPlaces/8/en>.
- <http://www.thestyx.co.nz> The Styx-Purakannui. Waterways, wetlands and surface water.

Confidential 2007

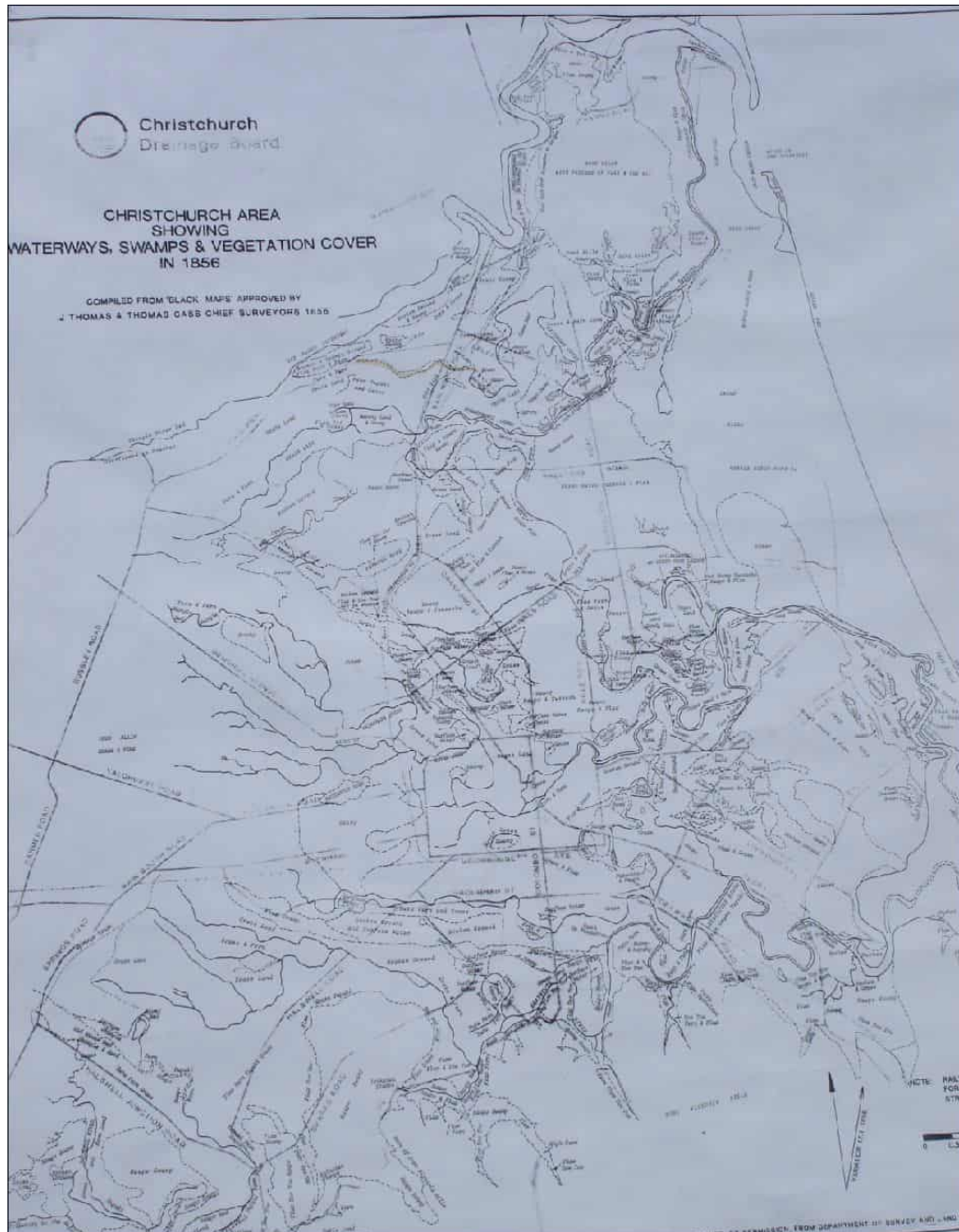


Figure 1. Christchurch area showing waterways, swamps and vegetation cover, compiled by Ken Sibly (Wilson, 1989). This image is not intended as a high-quality replication and is for indicative purposes only.

Confidential 2007

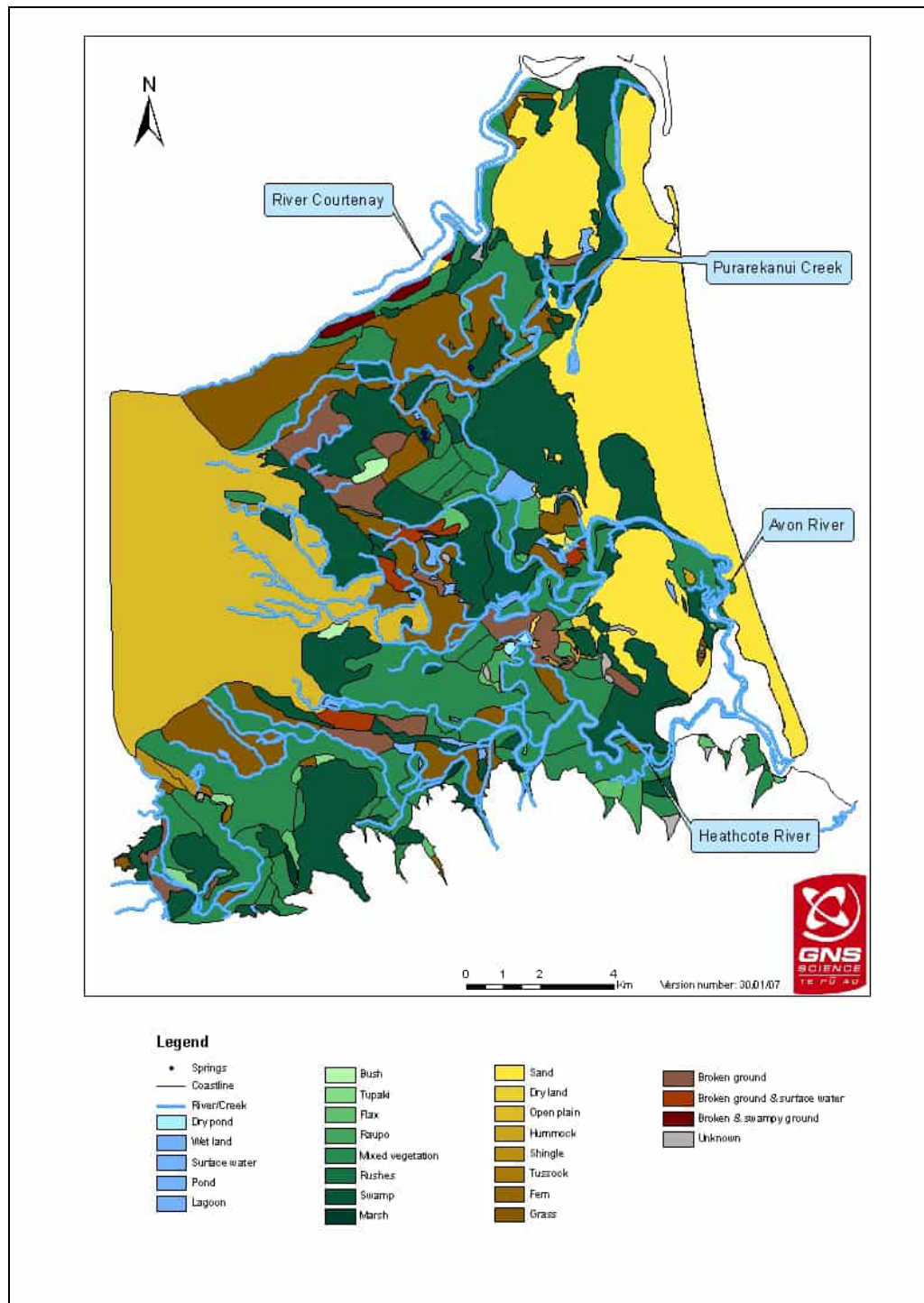


Figure 2. Water, vegetation and geographical features of the Christchurch area in 1856.

Confidential 2007

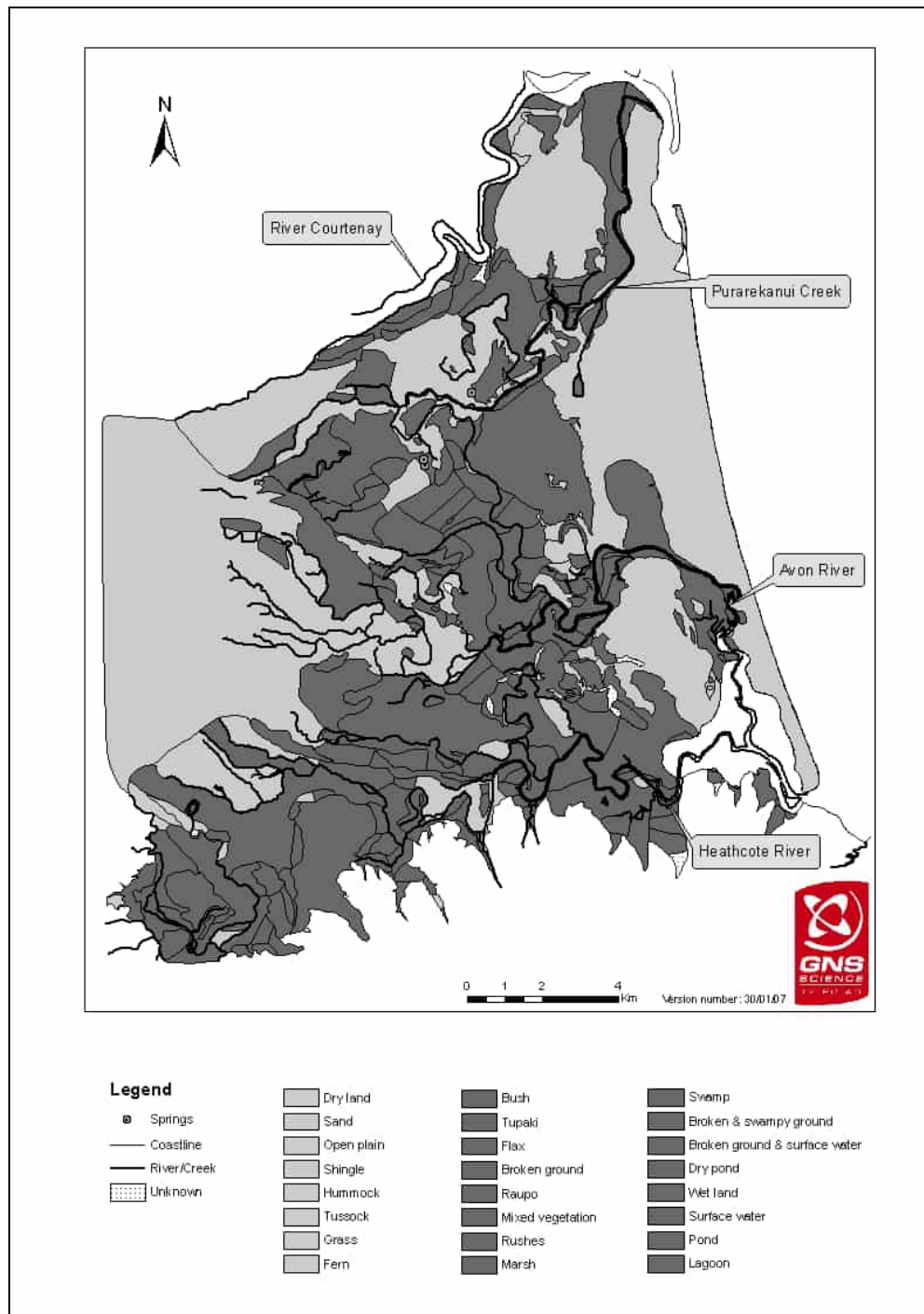


Figure 3. Water, vegetation and geographical features of the Christchurch area in 1856, (black and white version).

Confidential 2007

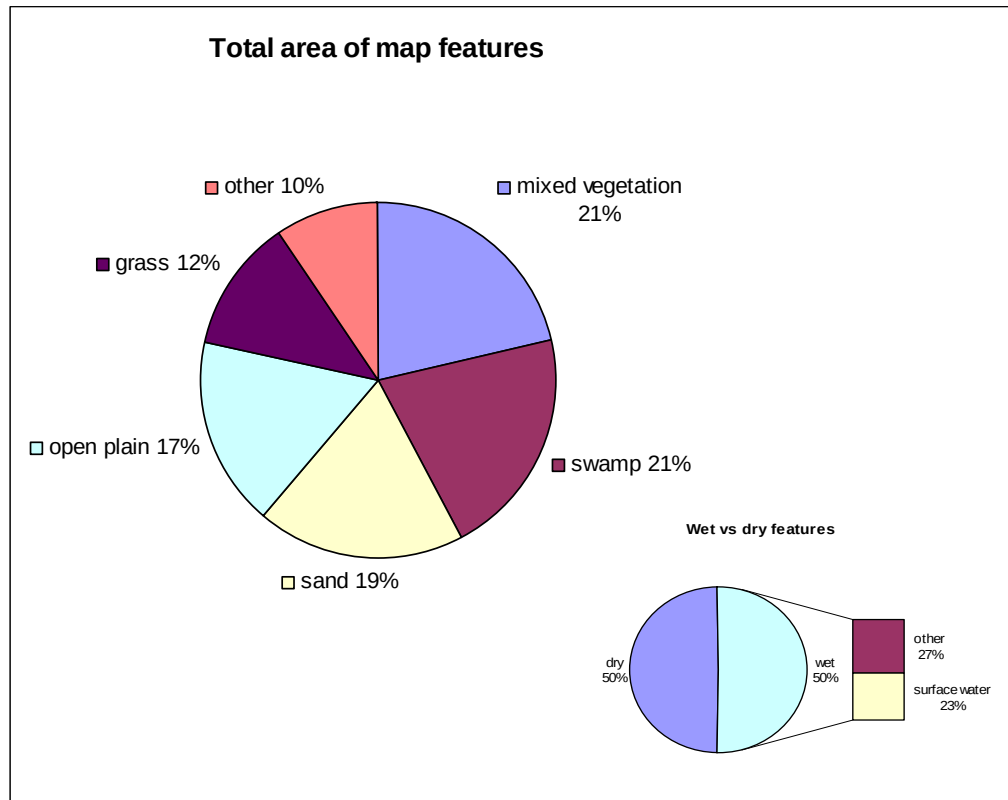


Figure 4. The large pie chart shows the percentage cover of the major features present in the Christchurch area in 1856 and 'other'. The smaller pie chart places all features into either a wet or dry category. The wet category is further divided to show the percentage of surface water.

Confidential 2007

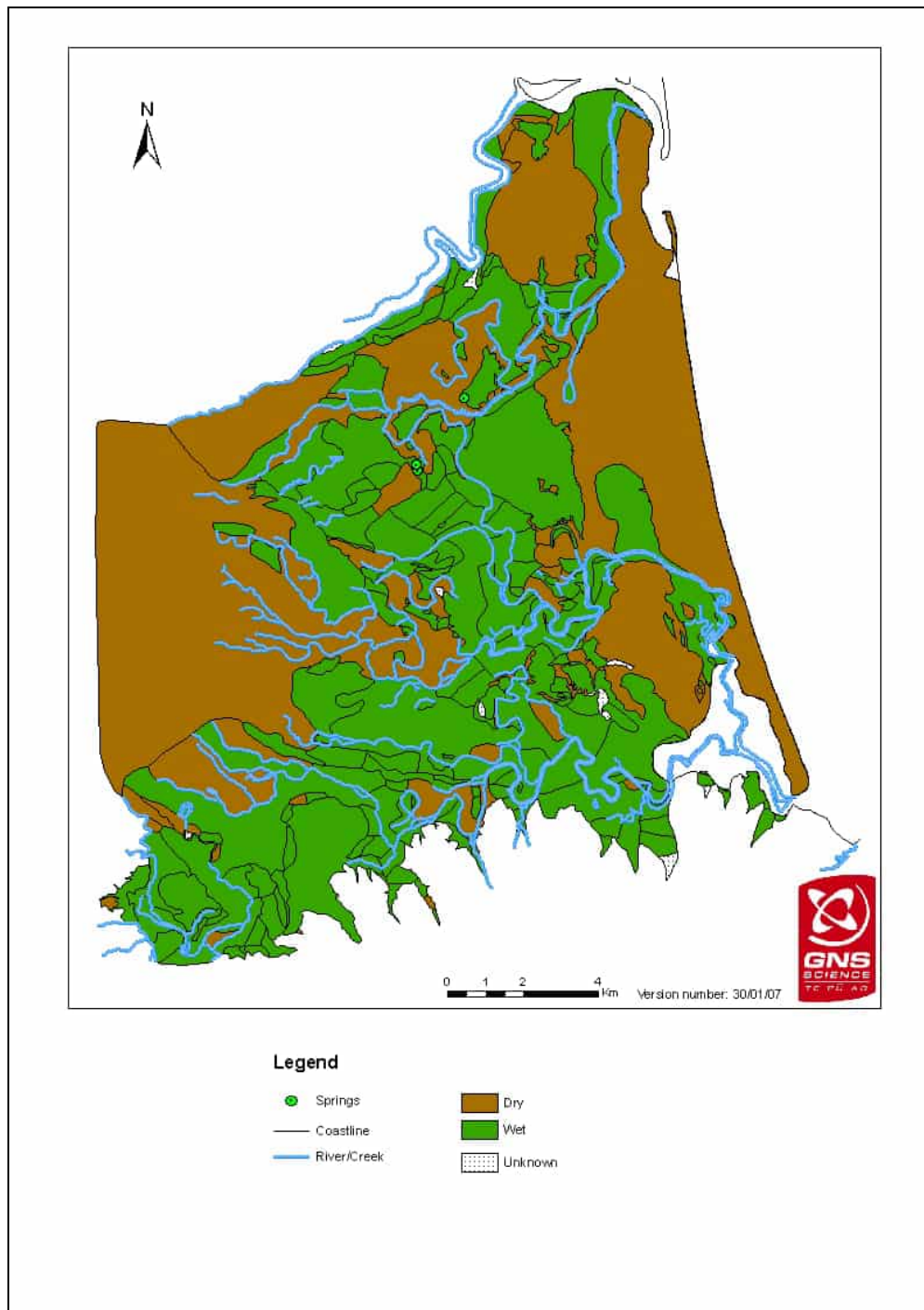


Figure 5. Wet and dry features of Christchurch in 1856.

Confidential 2007

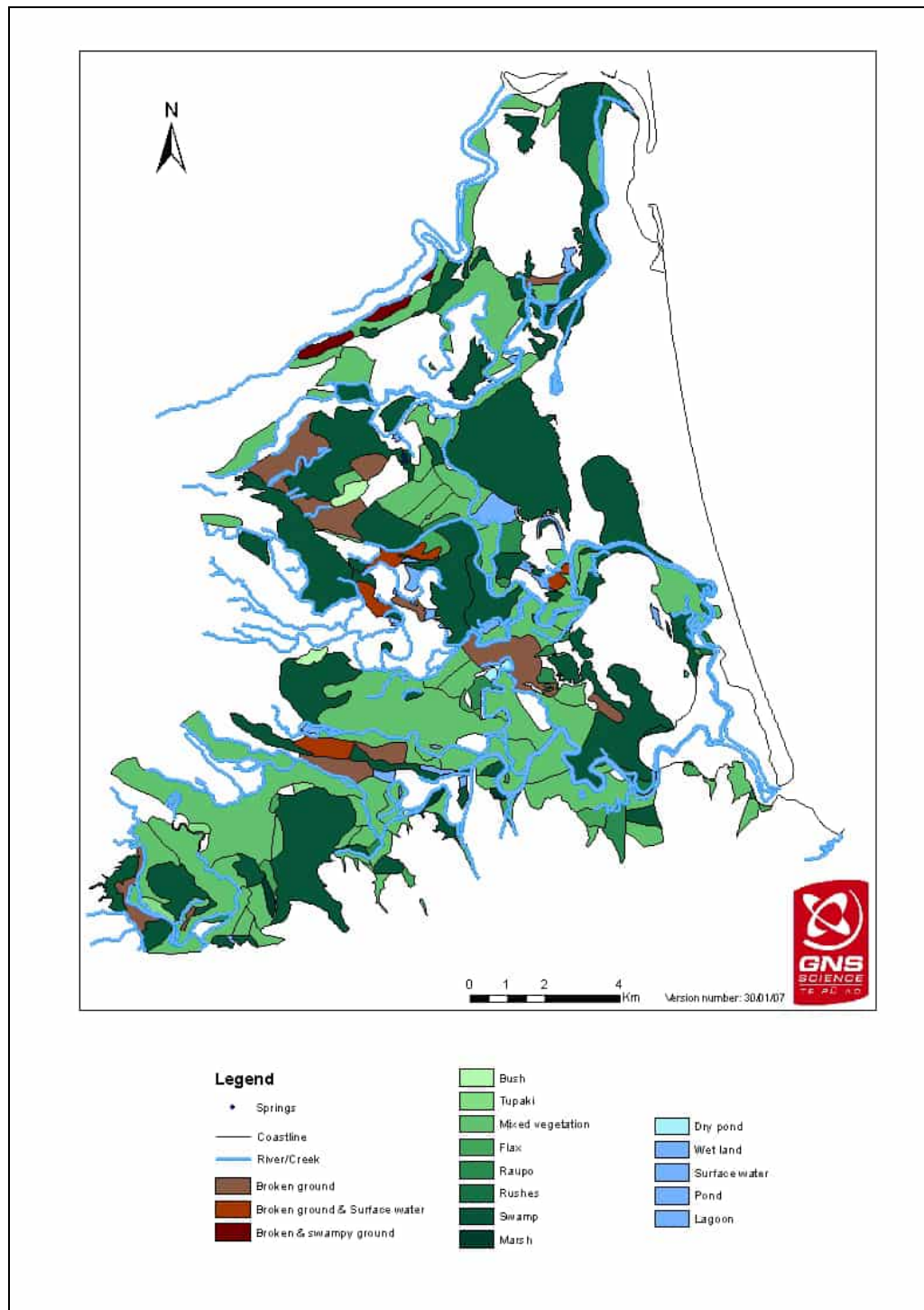


Figure 6. Water features and wet areas of Christchurch in 1856.

Confidential 2007

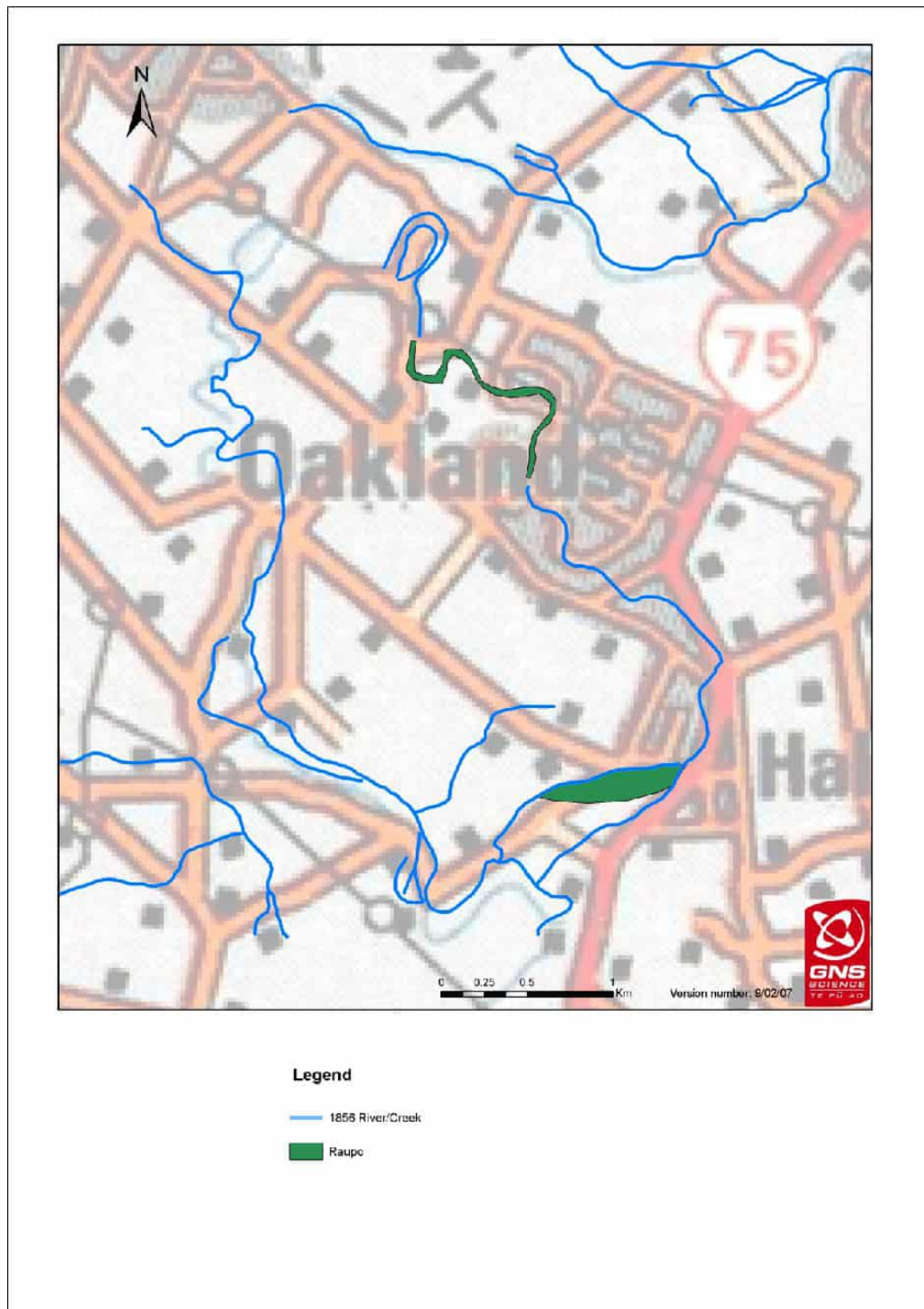


Figure 7. Examples of raupo vegetation in Christchurch in 1856 (in the modern suburb of Oaklands).

Confidential 2007

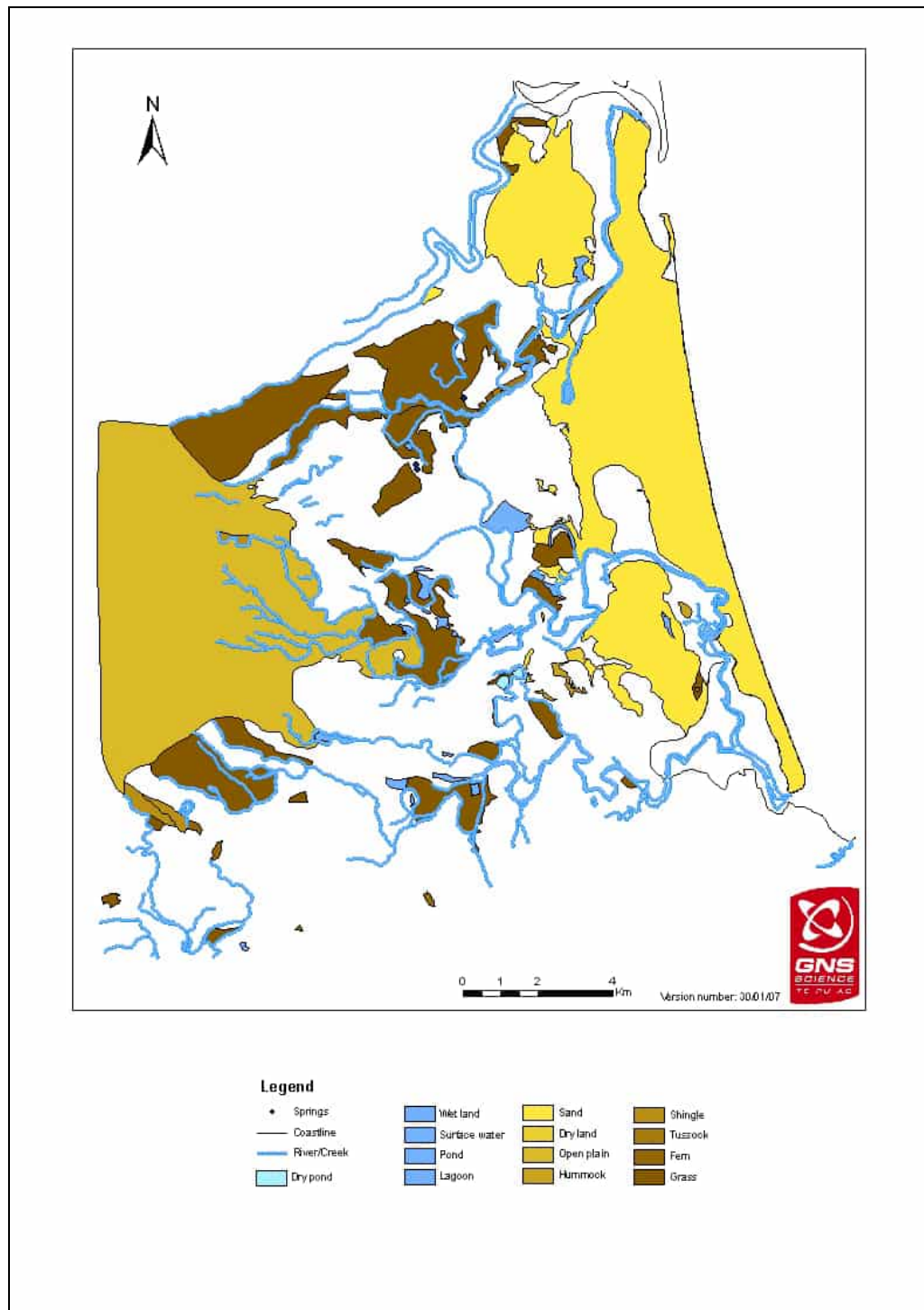


Figure 8. Water features and dry areas of Christchurch in 1856.

Confidential 2007

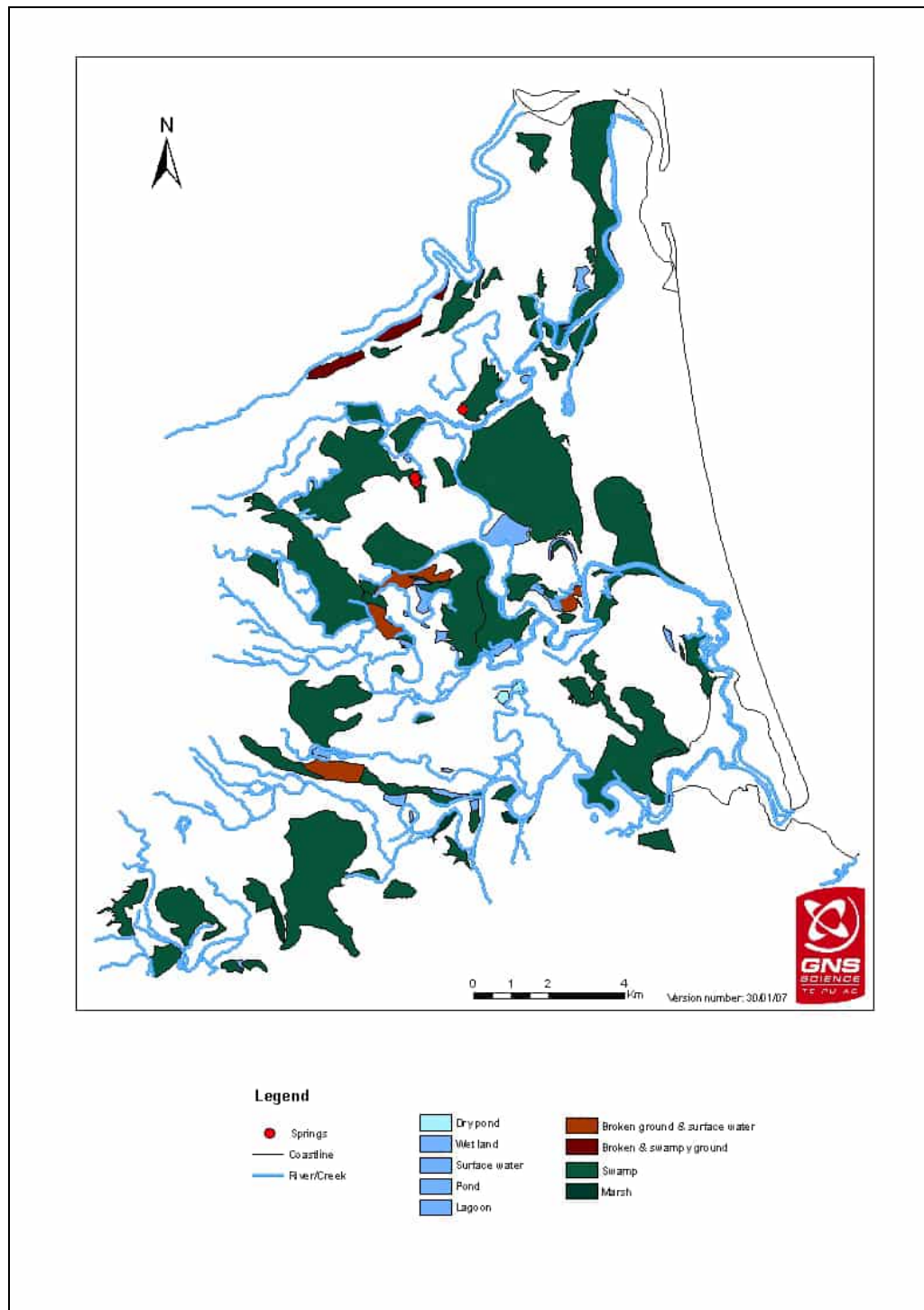


Figure 9. Water features of Christchurch in 1856.

Confidential 2007

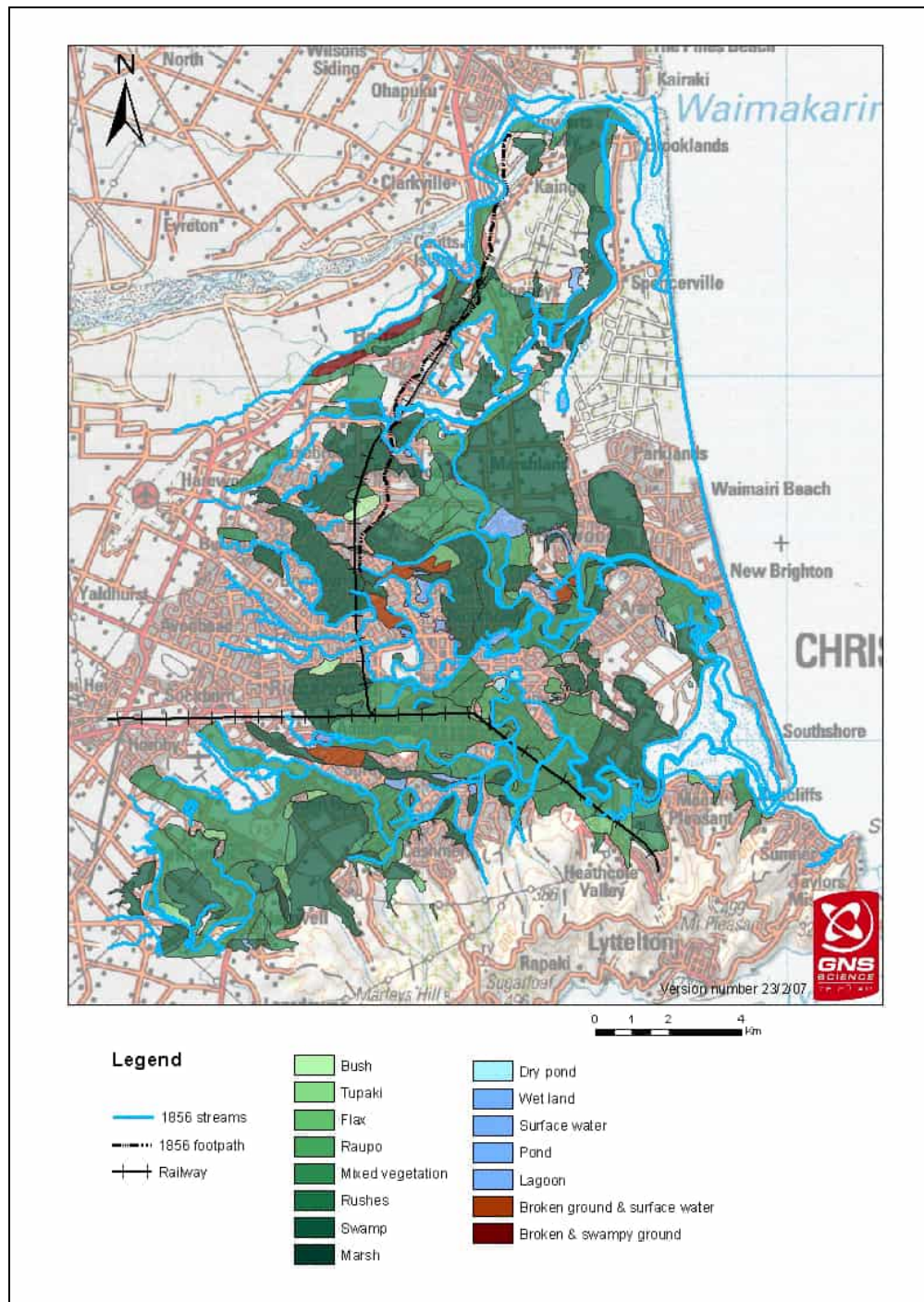


Figure 10. Railway, wet features and 1856 footpath and streams.

Confidential 2007

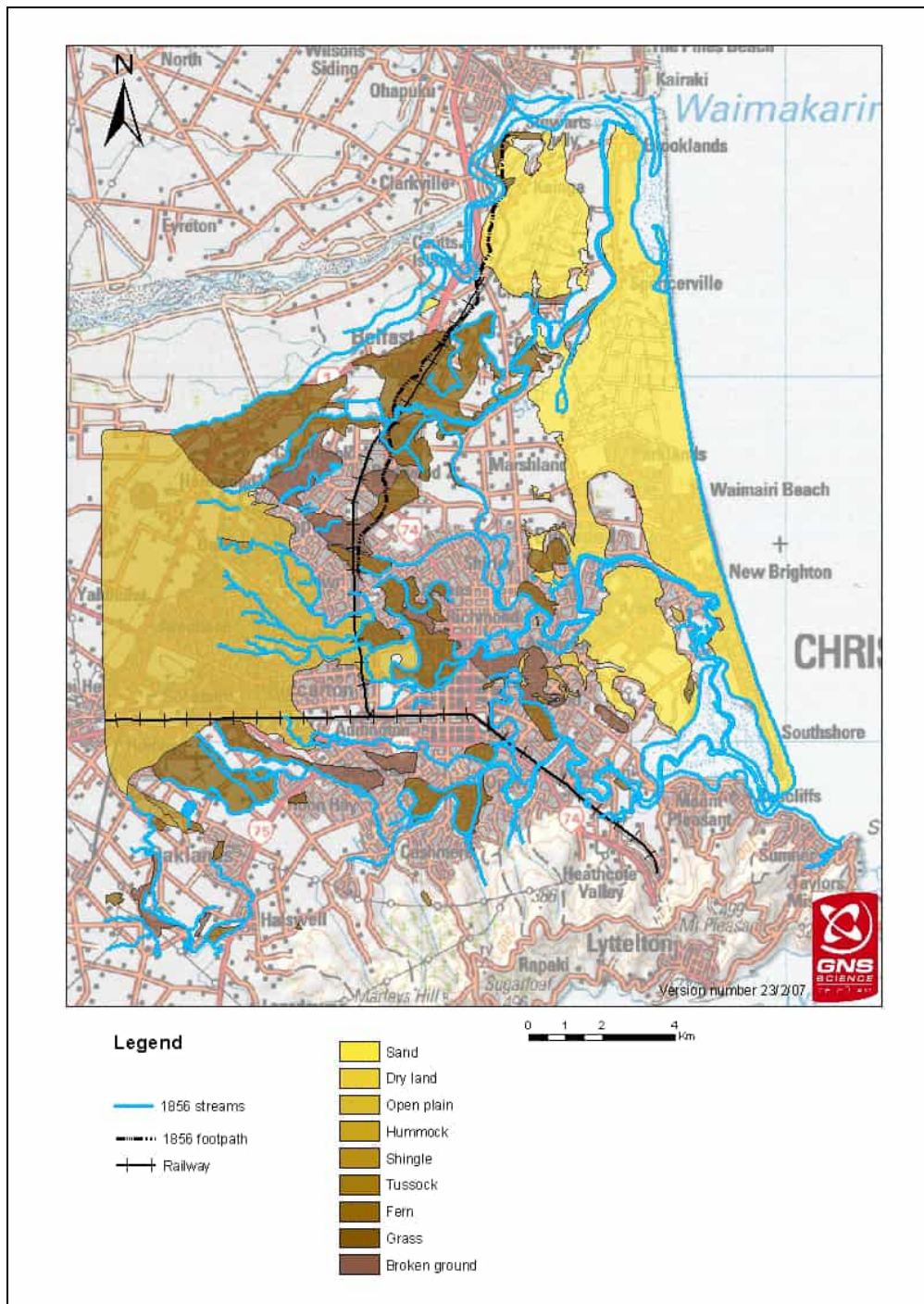


Figure 11. Railway, dry features and 1856 footpath and streams.

Confidential 2007

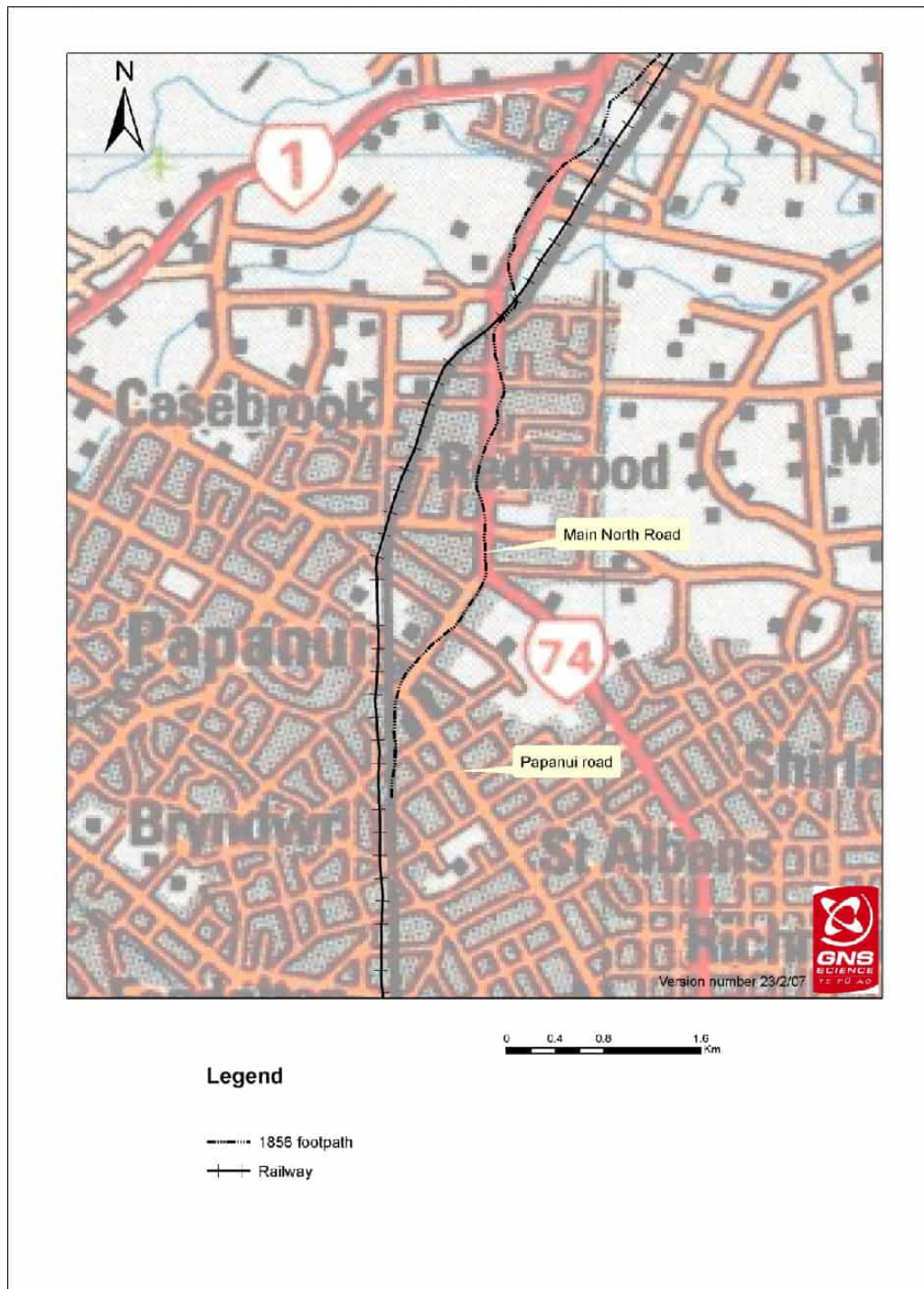


Figure 12. The 1856 footpath follows the current railway line to the top of Papanui Road and then follows Main North Road.

Confidential 2007

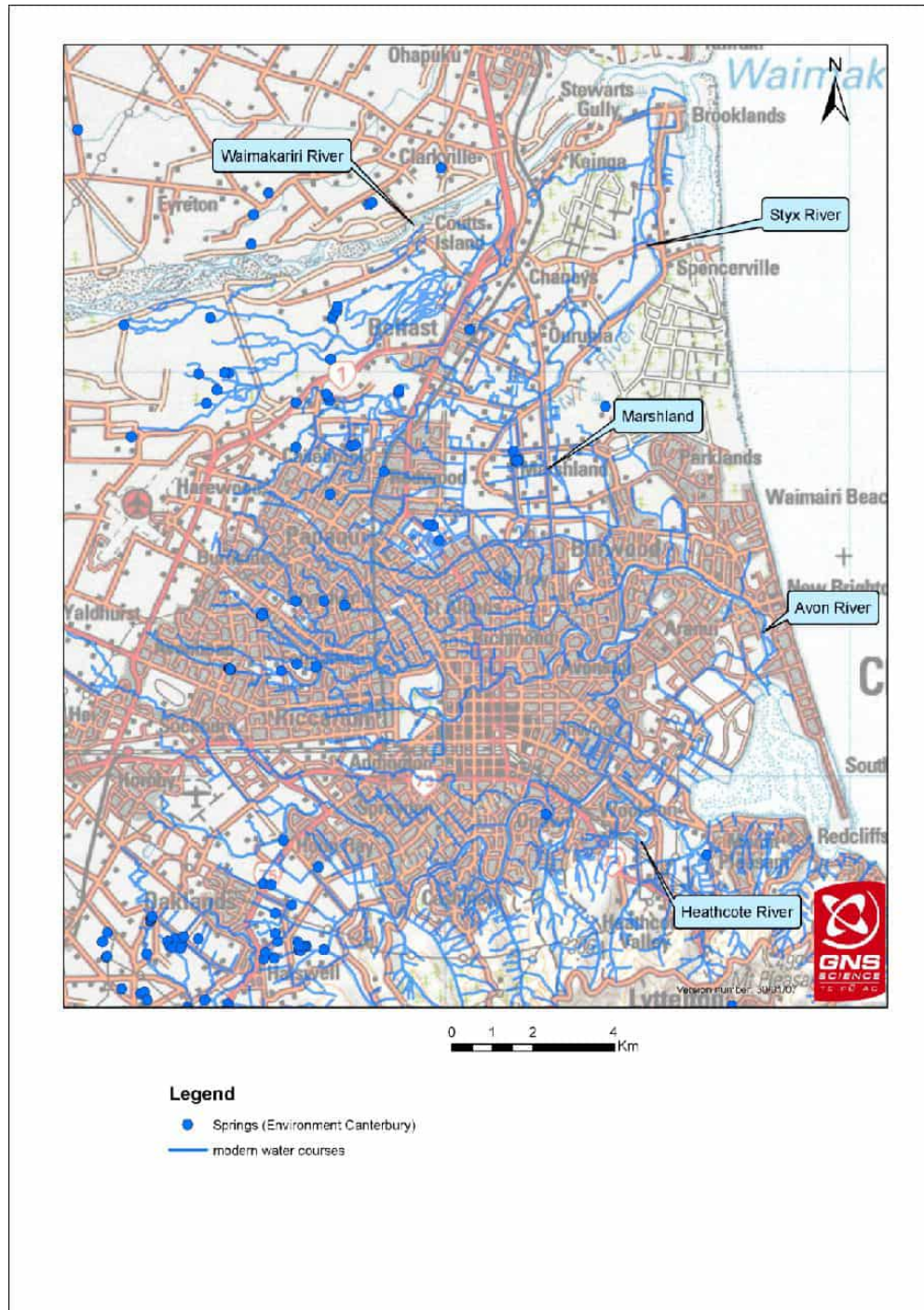


Figure 13. Modern streams and springs in the Christchurch area. Streams are mapped by Christchurch City Council and springs mapped by Environment Canterbury.

Confidential 2007

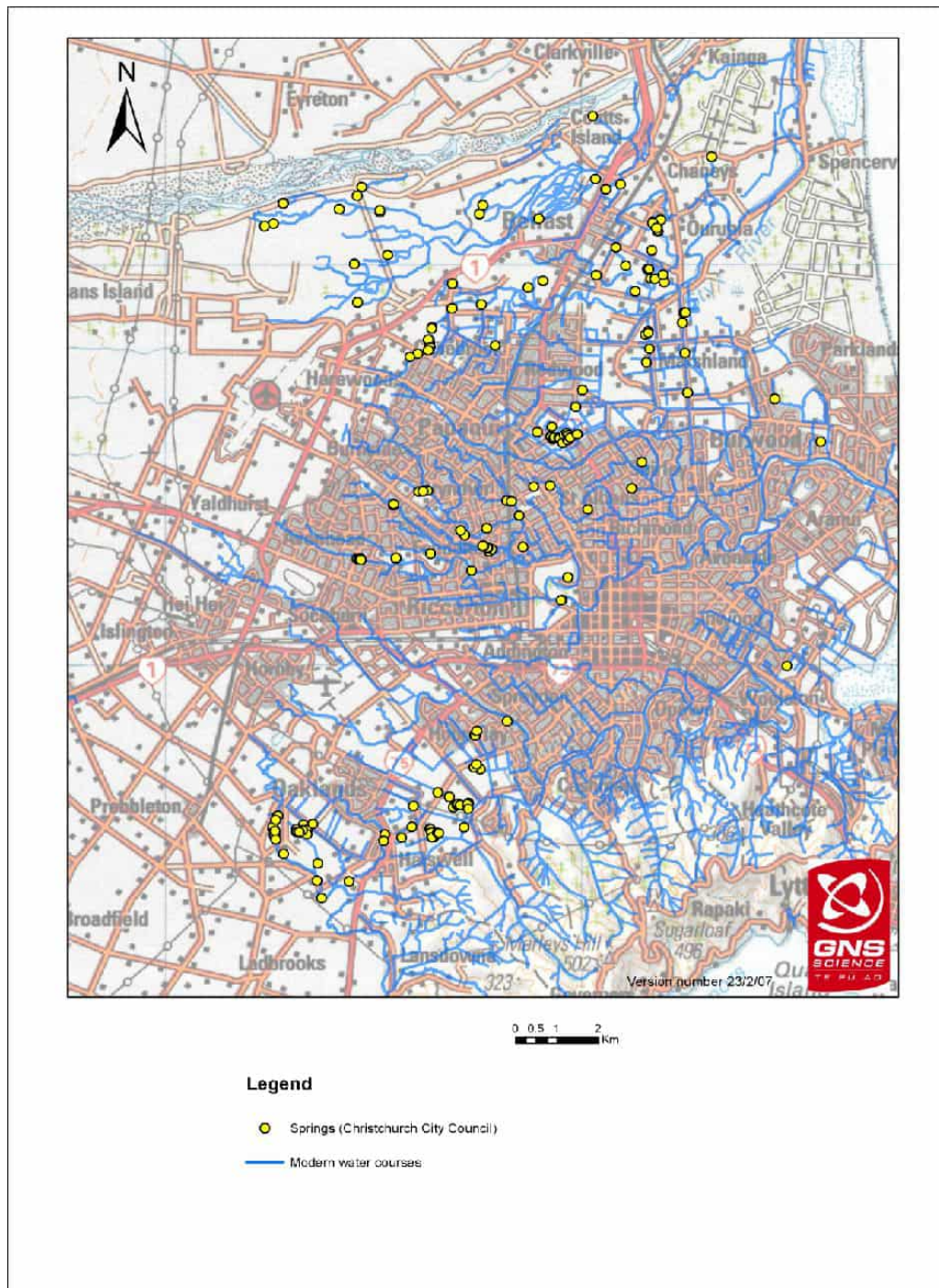


Figure 14. Springs and streams mapped by Christchurch City Council.

Confidential 2007

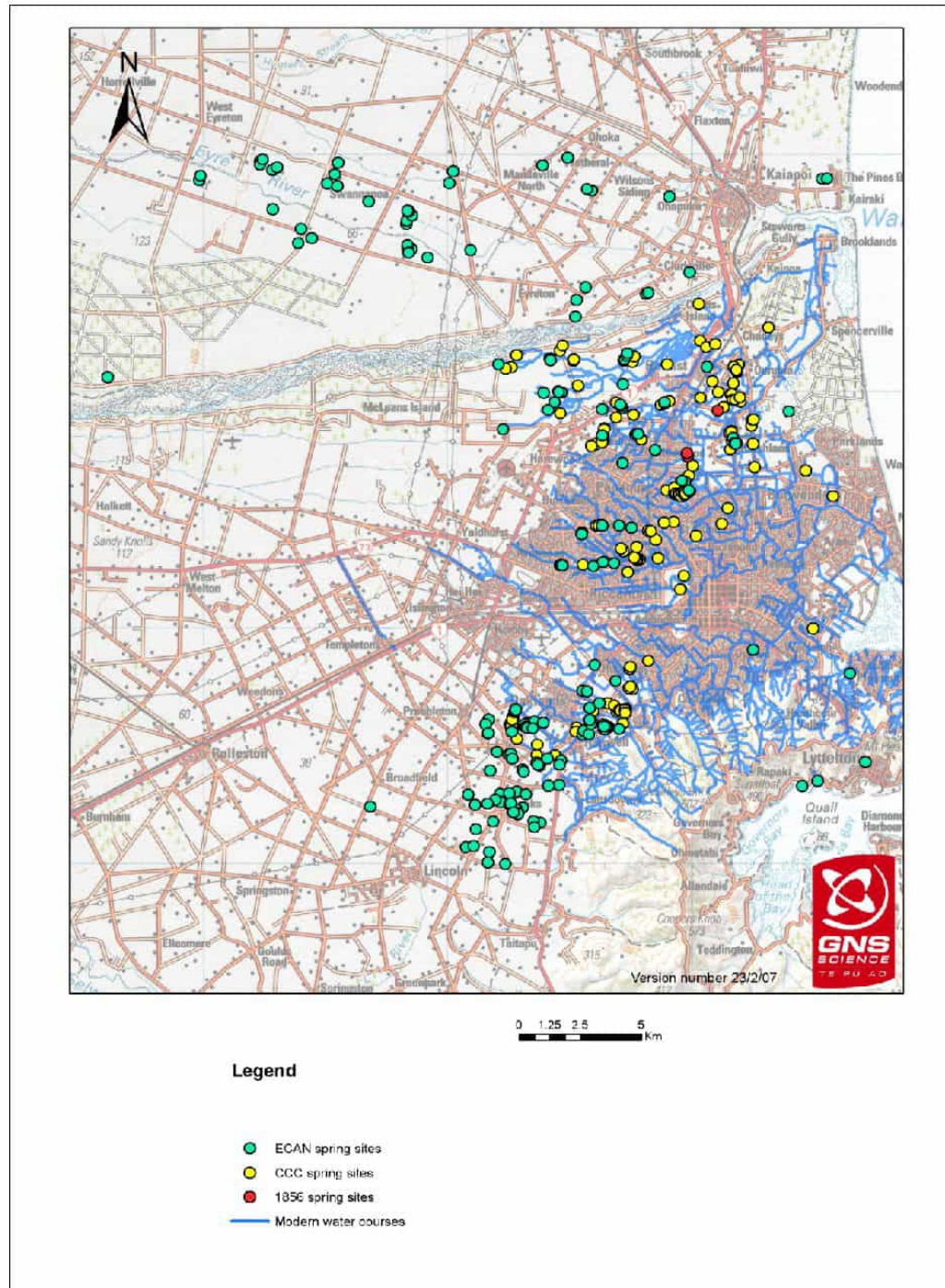


Figure 15. Springs mapped by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and the Sibly 1856 map (Wilson, 1989), with modern water courses.

Confidential 2007

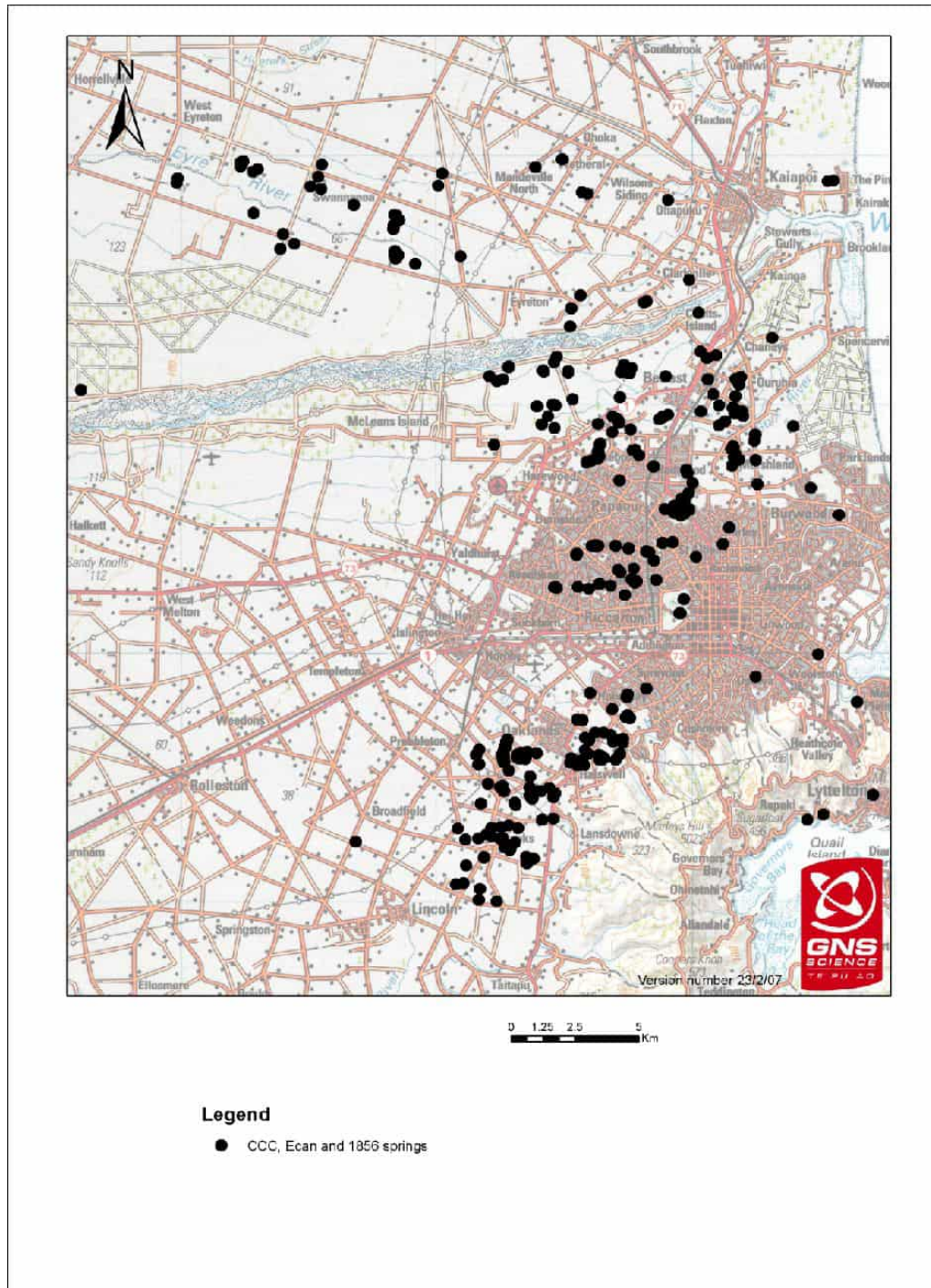


Figure 16. Springs mapped by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and the Sibly 1856 map (Wilson, 1989), black and white version.

Confidential 2007

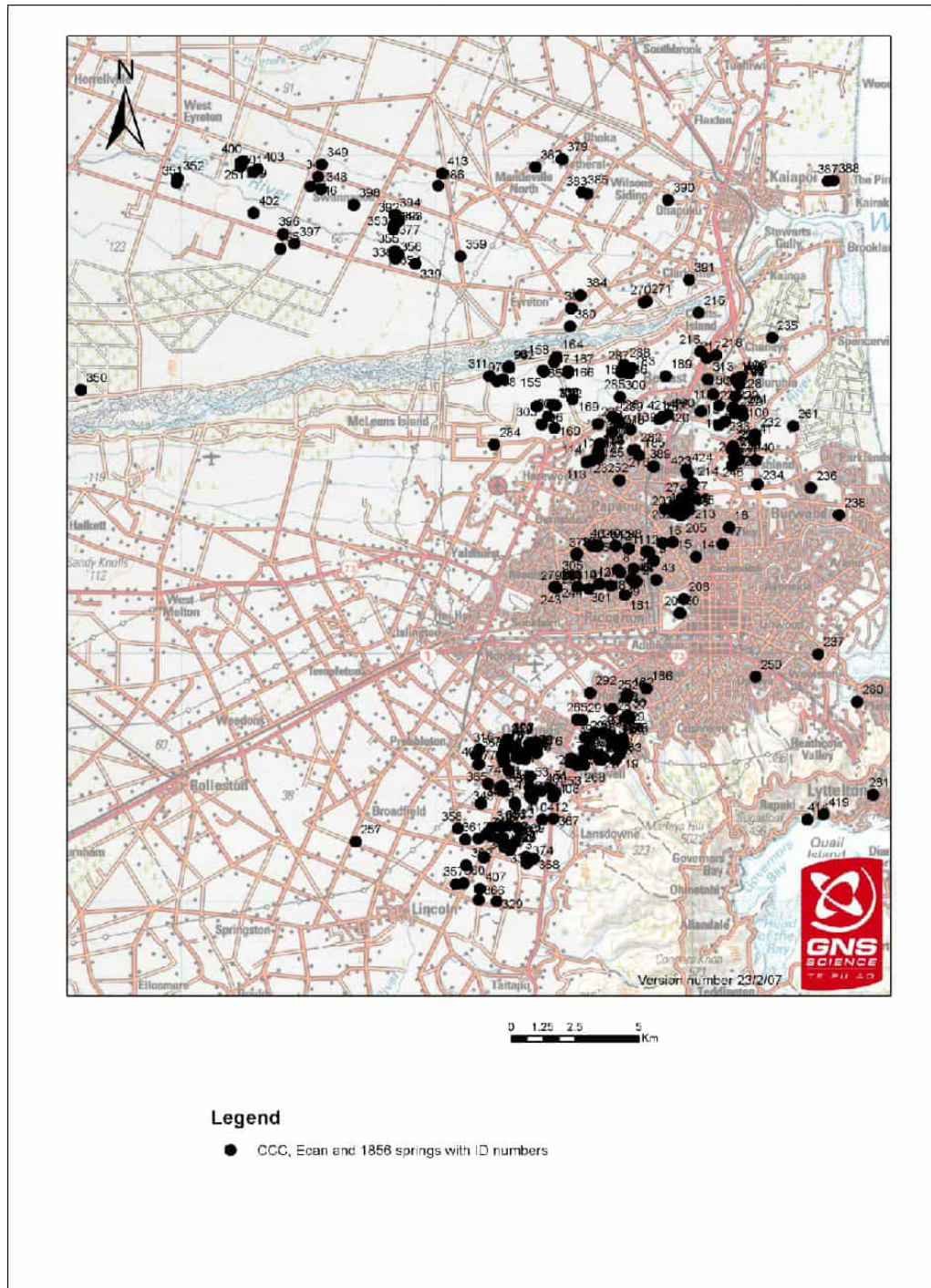


Figure 17. Springs with identification numbers, mapped by Environment Canterbury, Christchurch City Council and the Sibly 1856 map (Wilson, 1989).

Confidential 2007

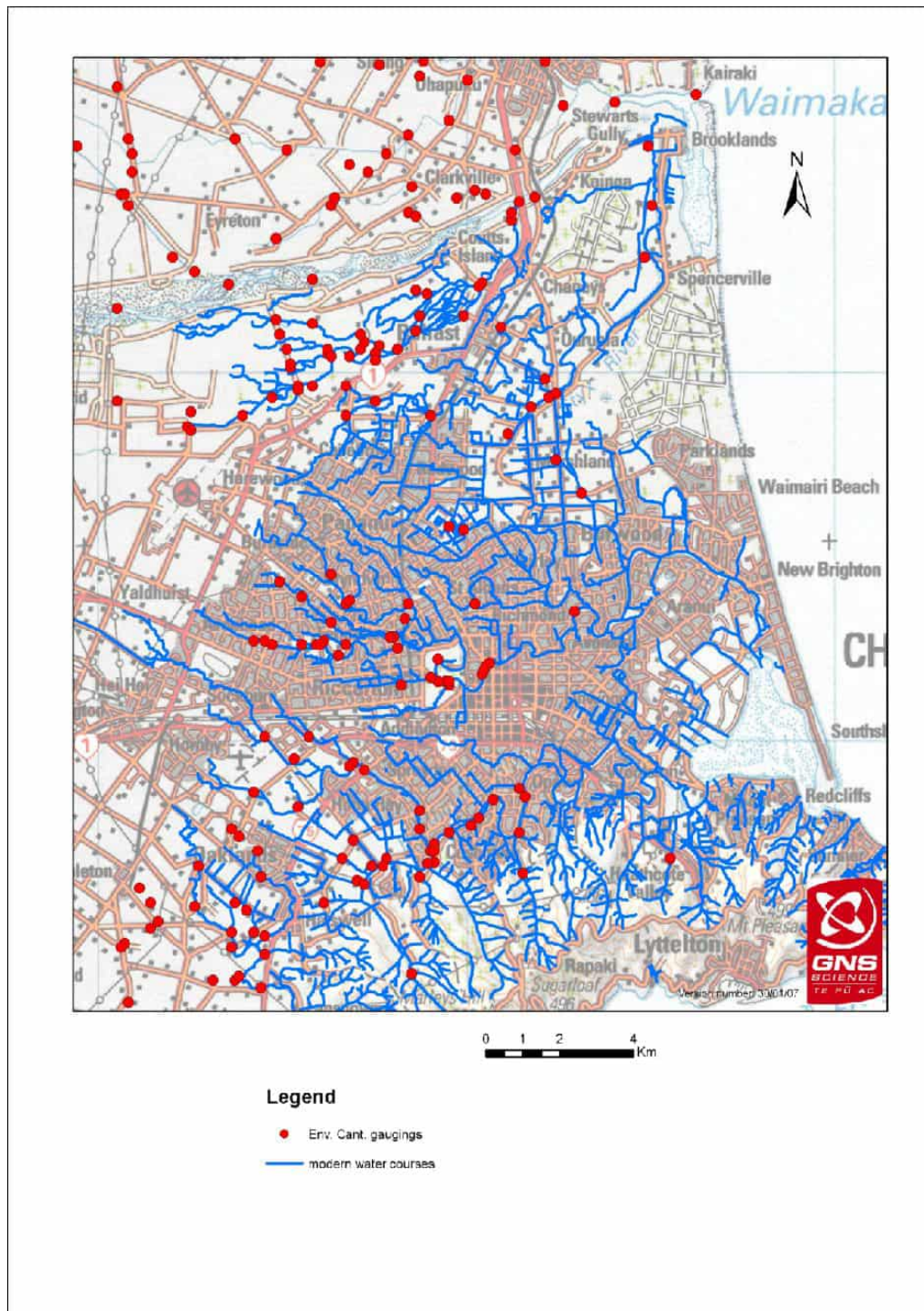


Figure 18. Sites of flow gauging records held by Environment Canterbury.

Confidential 2007

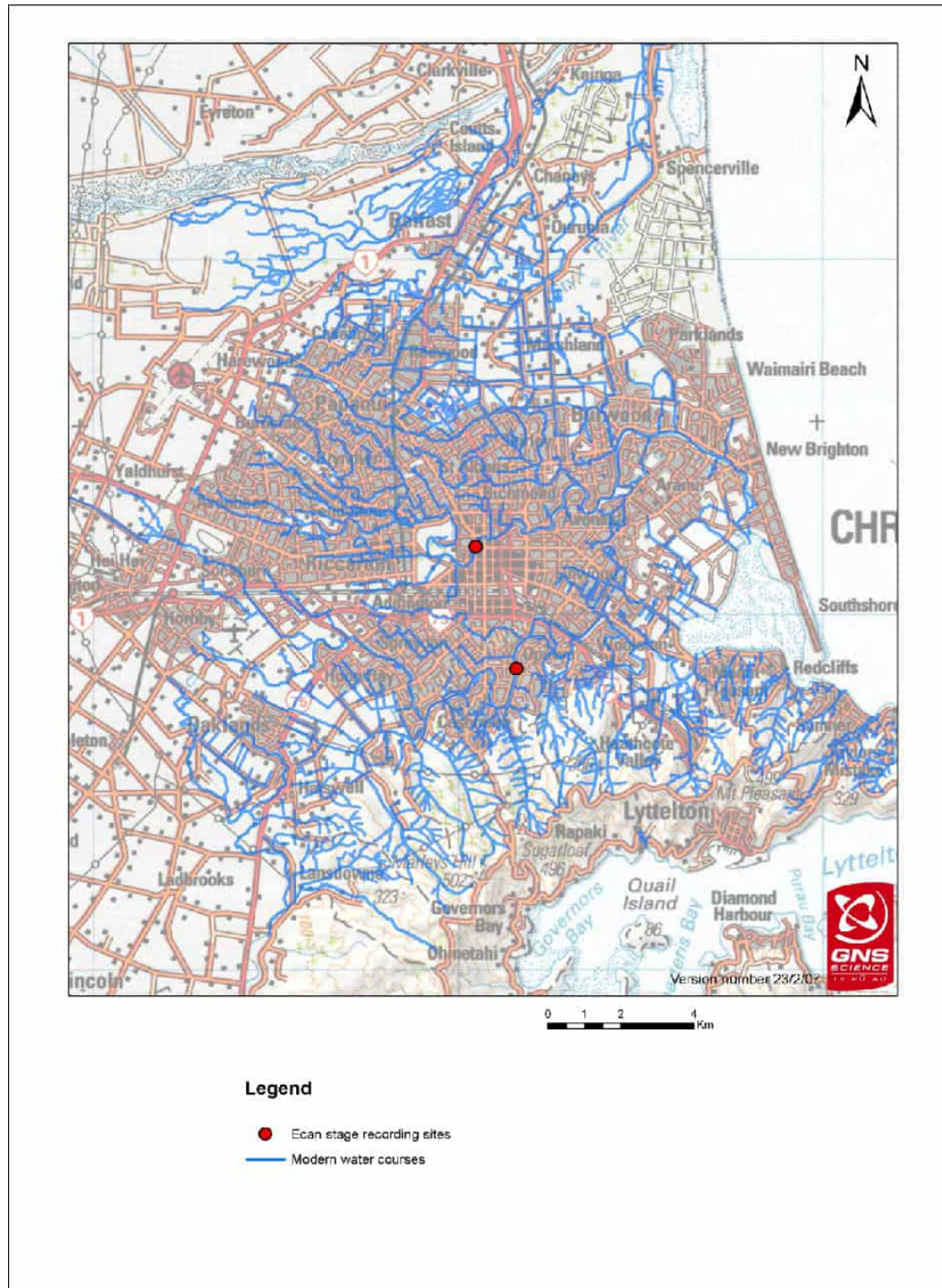


Figure 19. Environment Canterbury stage flow recording sites.

Confidential 2007

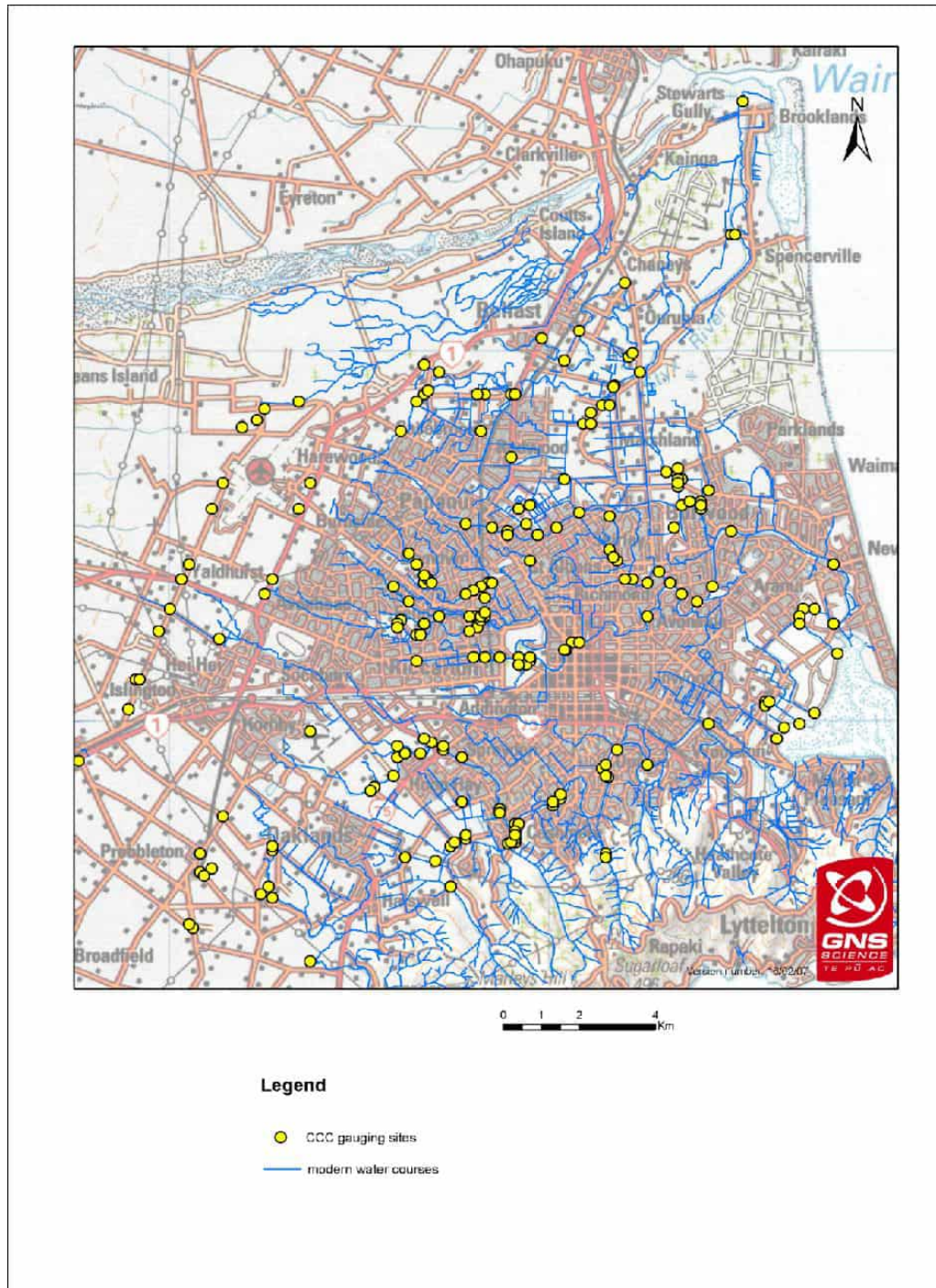


Figure 20. Sites of flow gauging records held by Christchurch City Council.

Confidential 2007

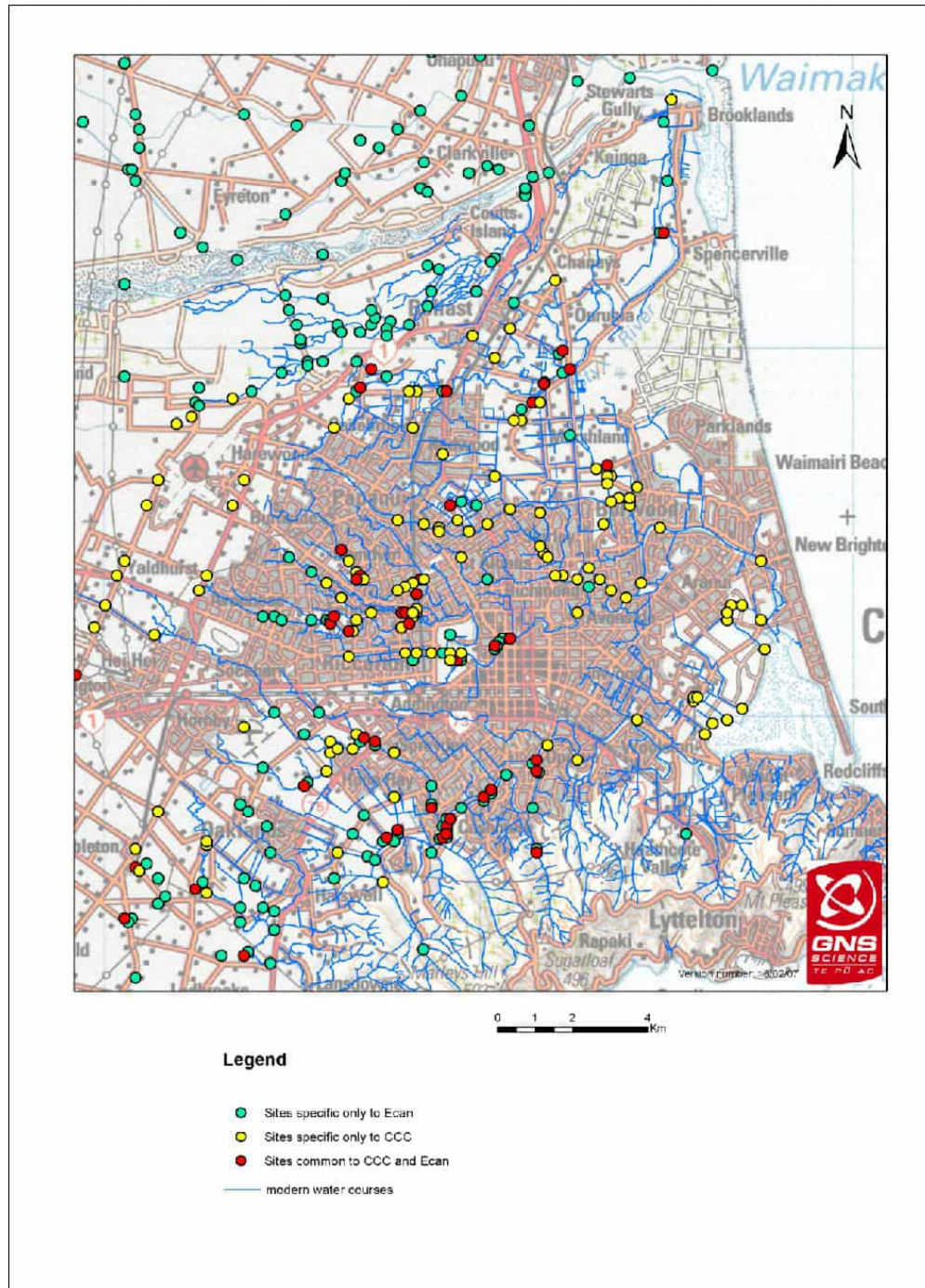


Figure 21. Flow gauging sites with records held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council. The red circles denote sites in common to both Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council.

Confidential 2007

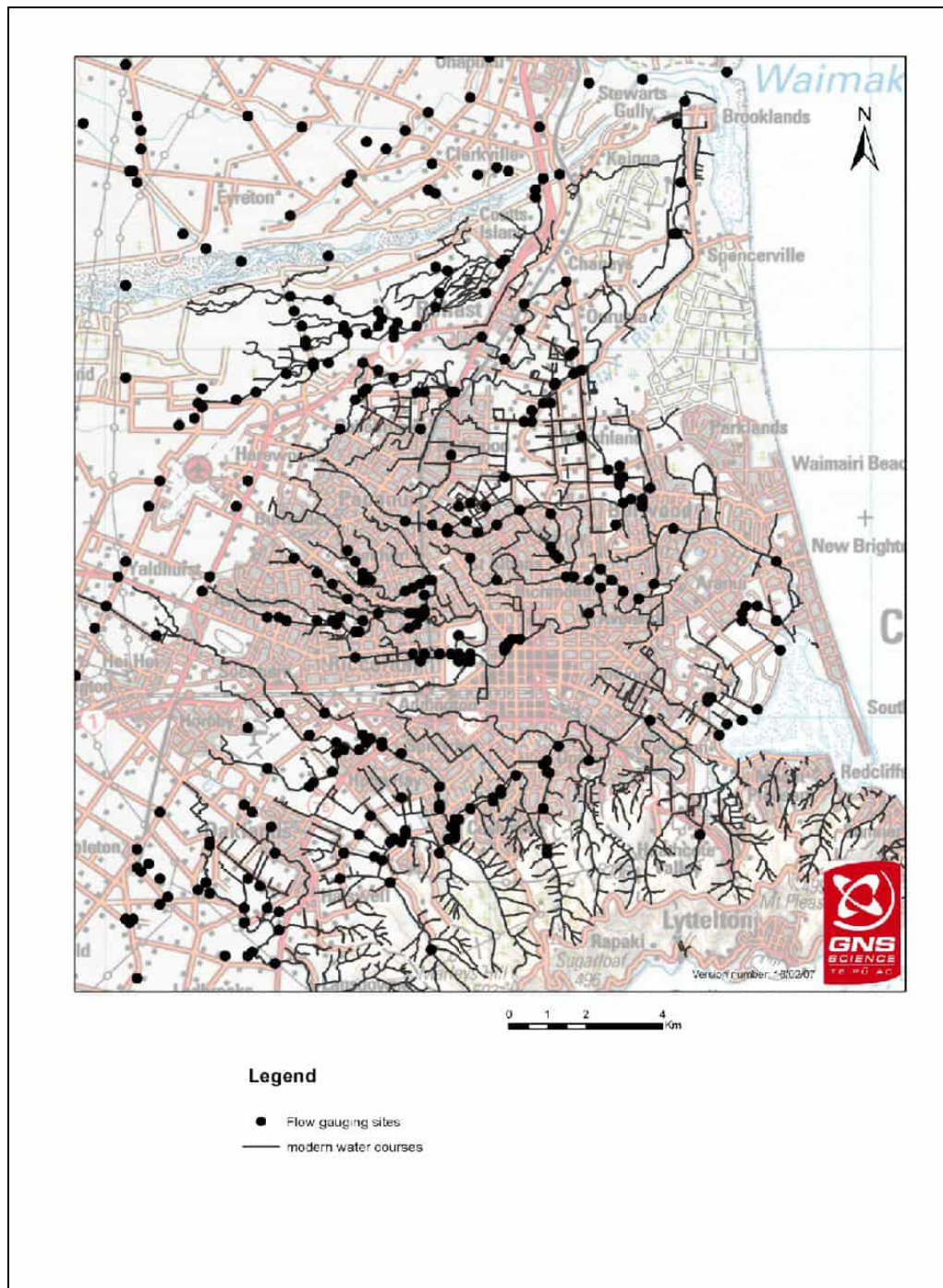


Figure 22. Flow gauging sites with records held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council (black and white version).

Confidential 2007

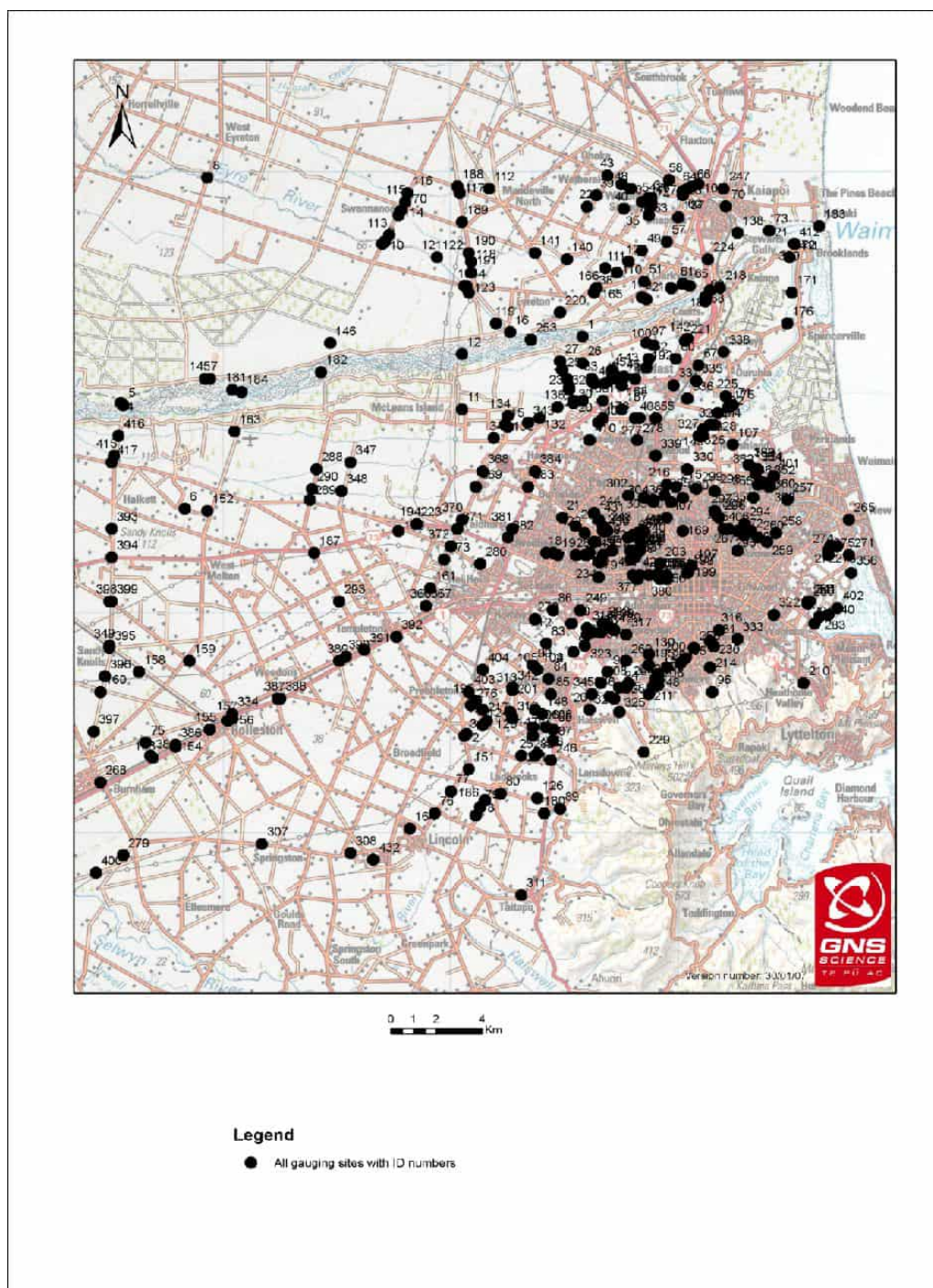


Figure 23. Flow gauging sites with records held by Environment Canterbury and Christchurch City Council (black and white version), with identification numbers.

Confidential 2007

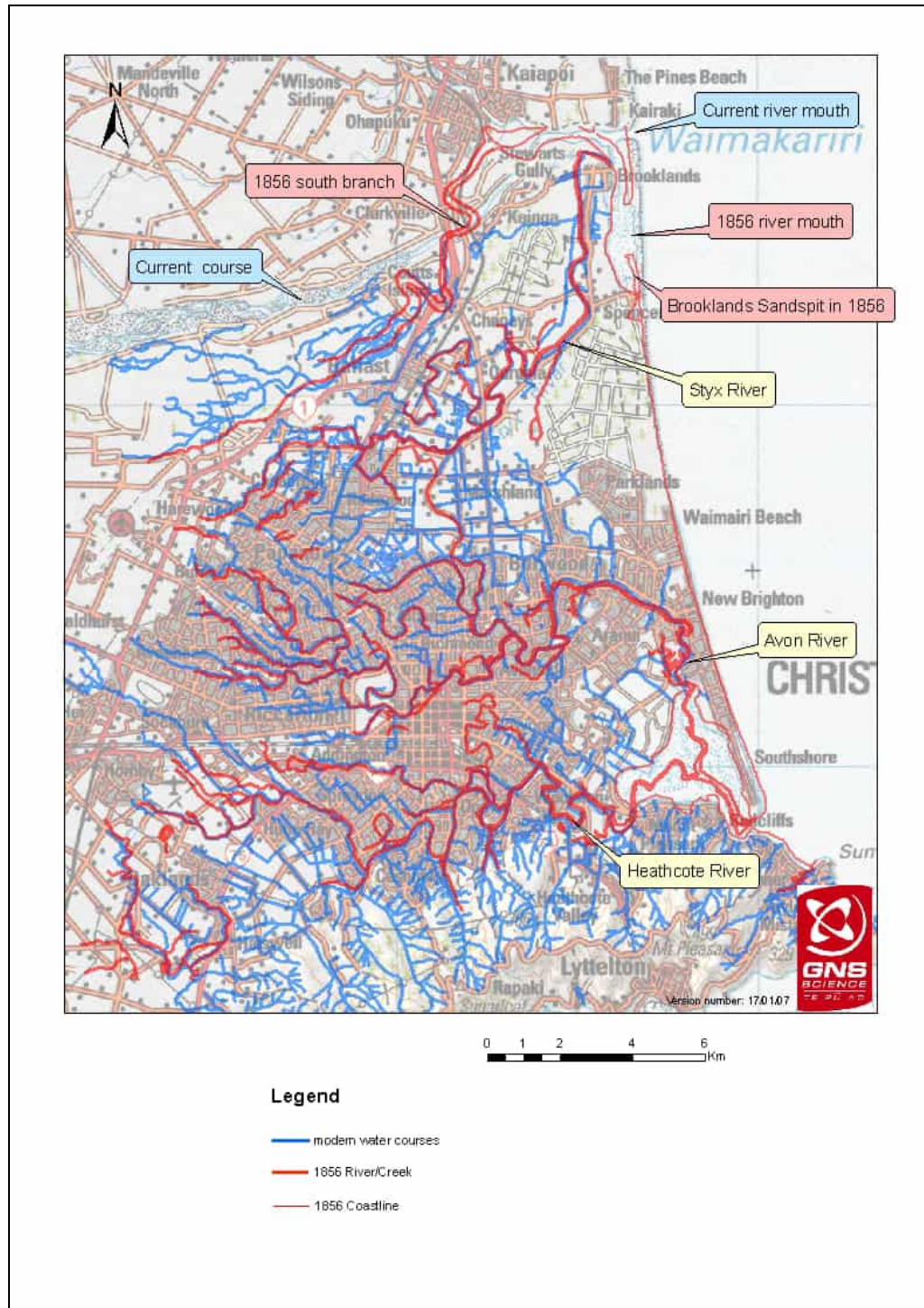


Figure 24. Water courses in Christchurch in 1856 and 2006.

Confidential 2007

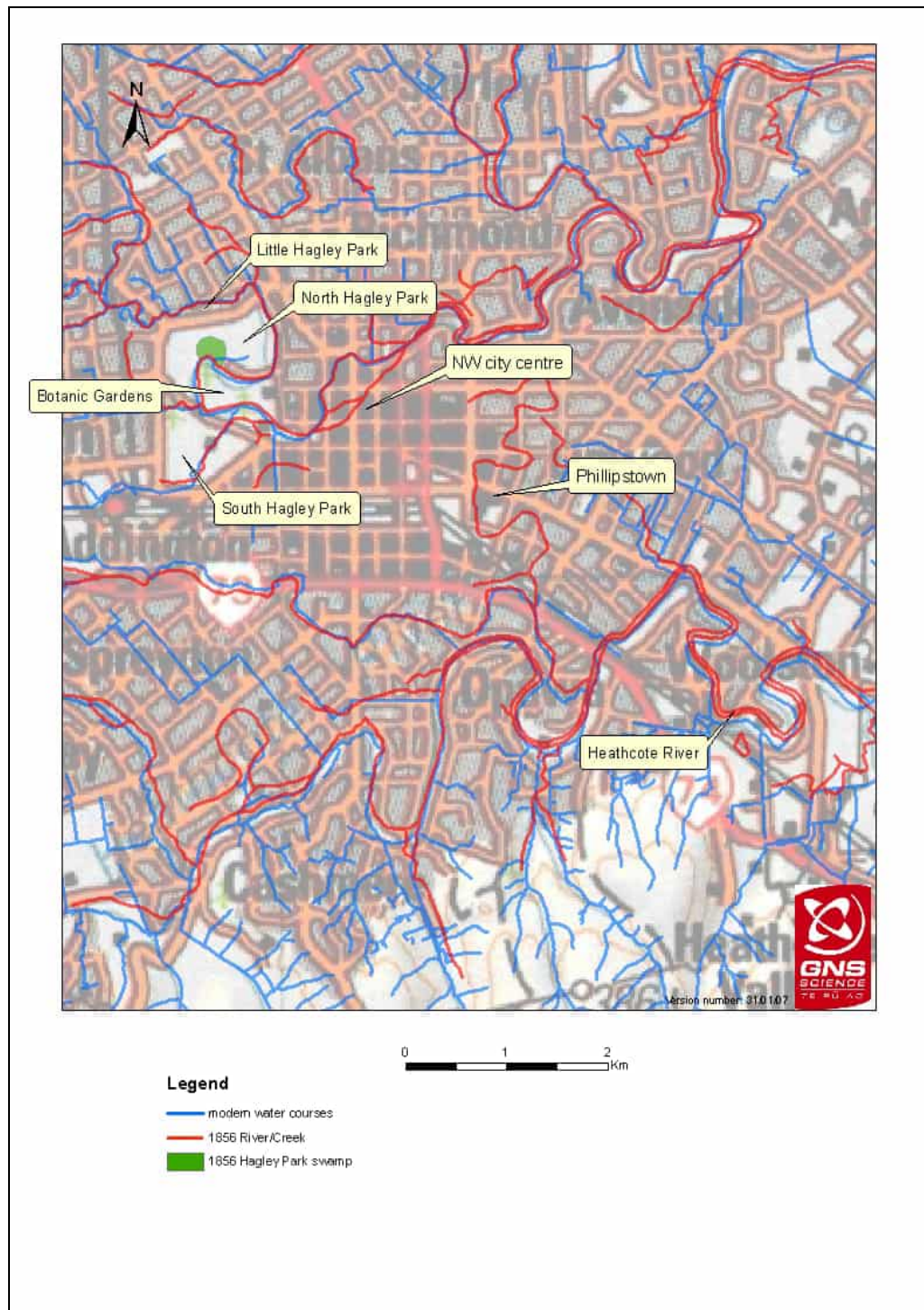


Figure 25. Water courses in central Christchurch in 1856 and in 2006.

Confidential 2007

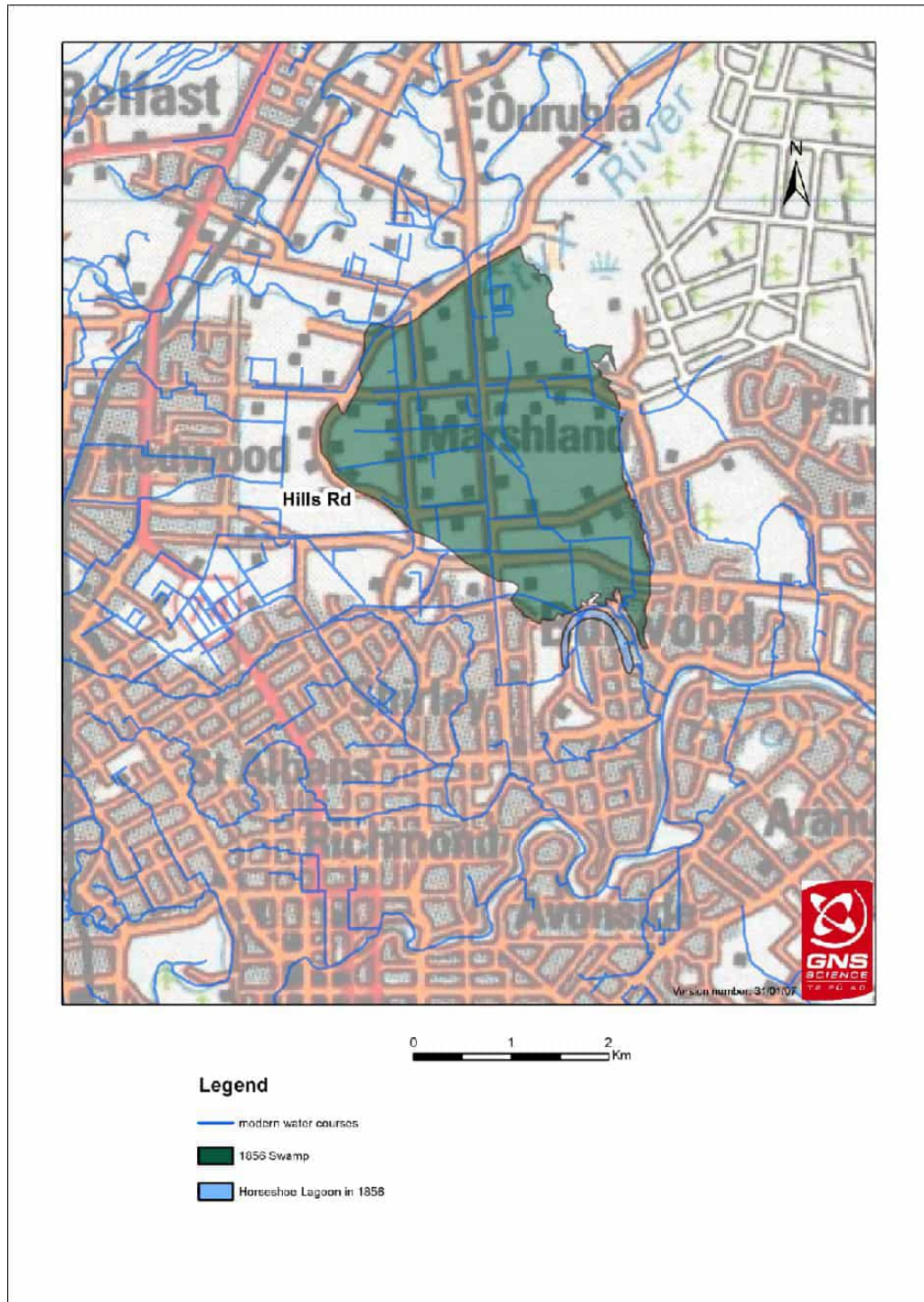


Figure 26. Historic Marshland swamp and modern water courses.

Confidential 2007

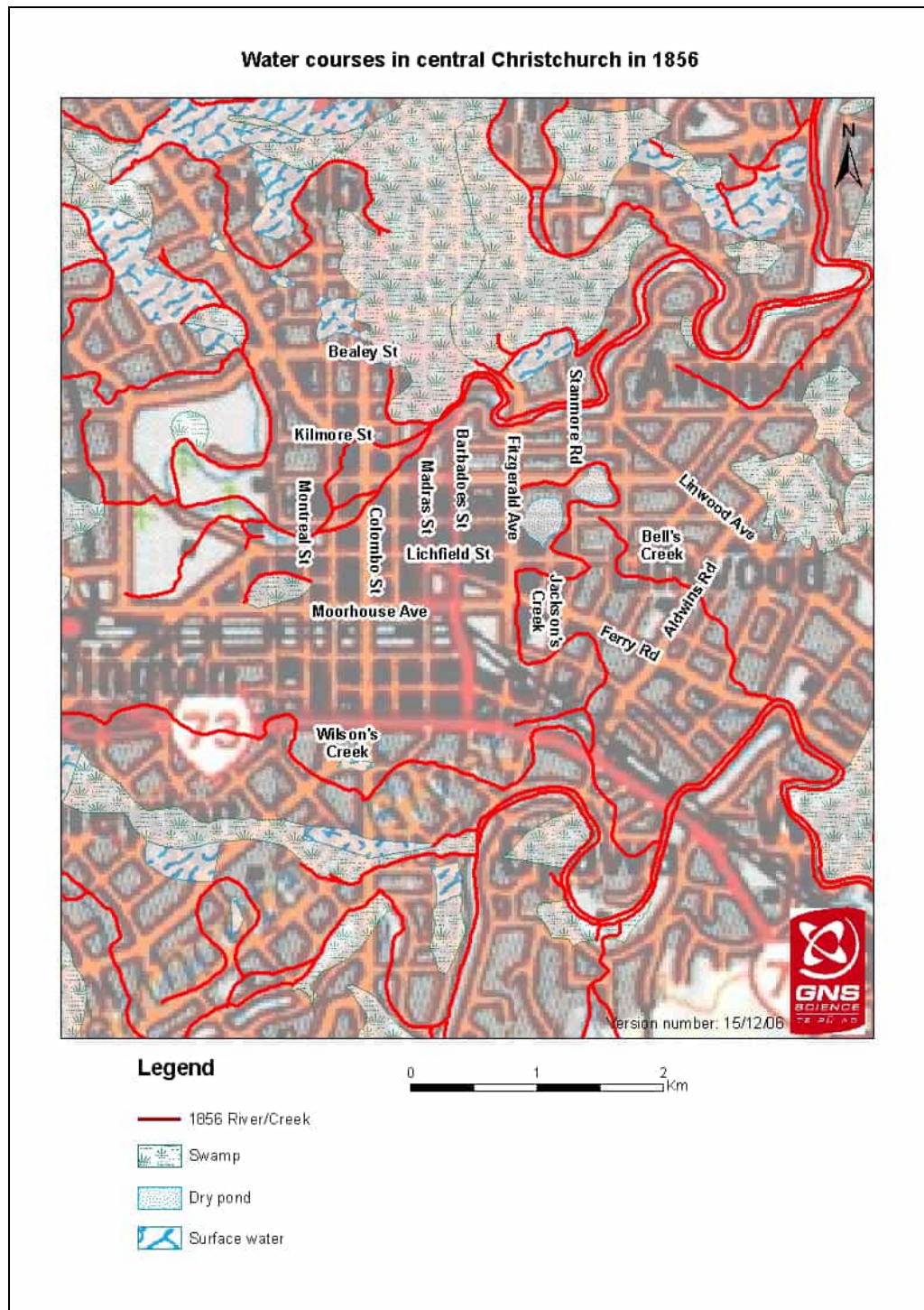


Figure 27. Water courses in central Christchurch in 1856.

Confidential 2007

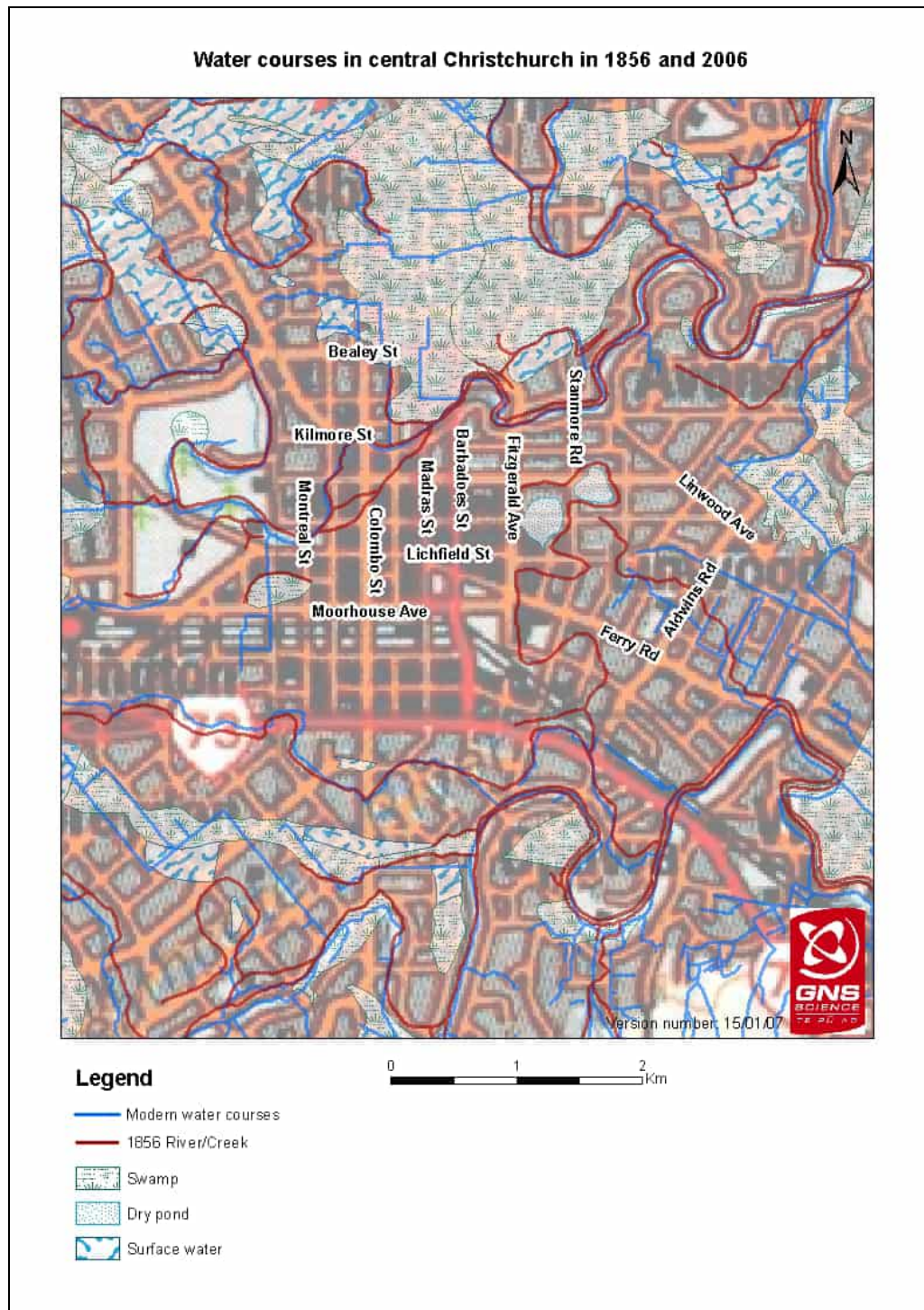


Figure 28. Water courses in central Christchurch in 1856 and 2006.

Confidential 2007

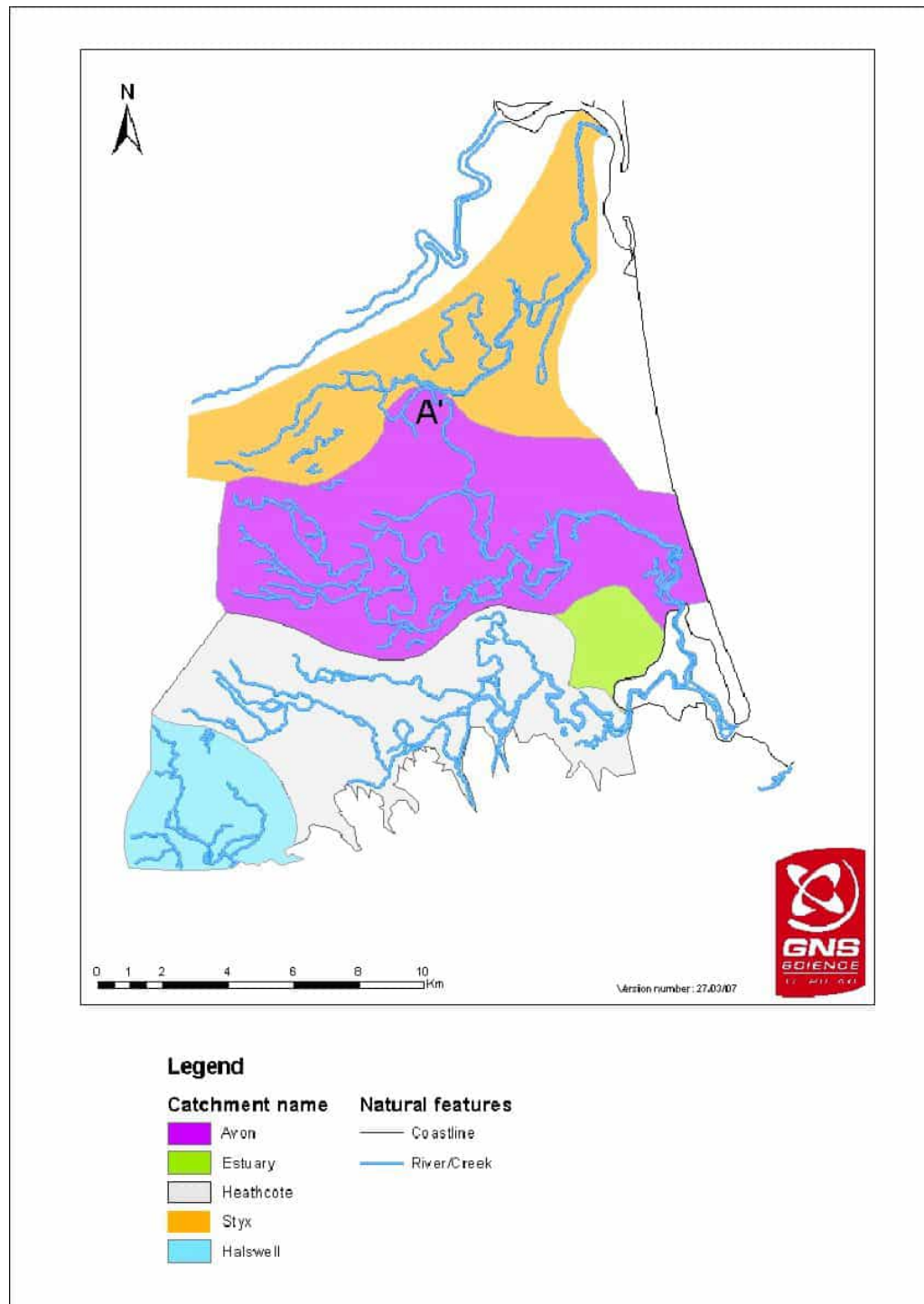


Figure 29. Estimated water catchment boundaries in Christchurch in 1856.

Confidential 2007

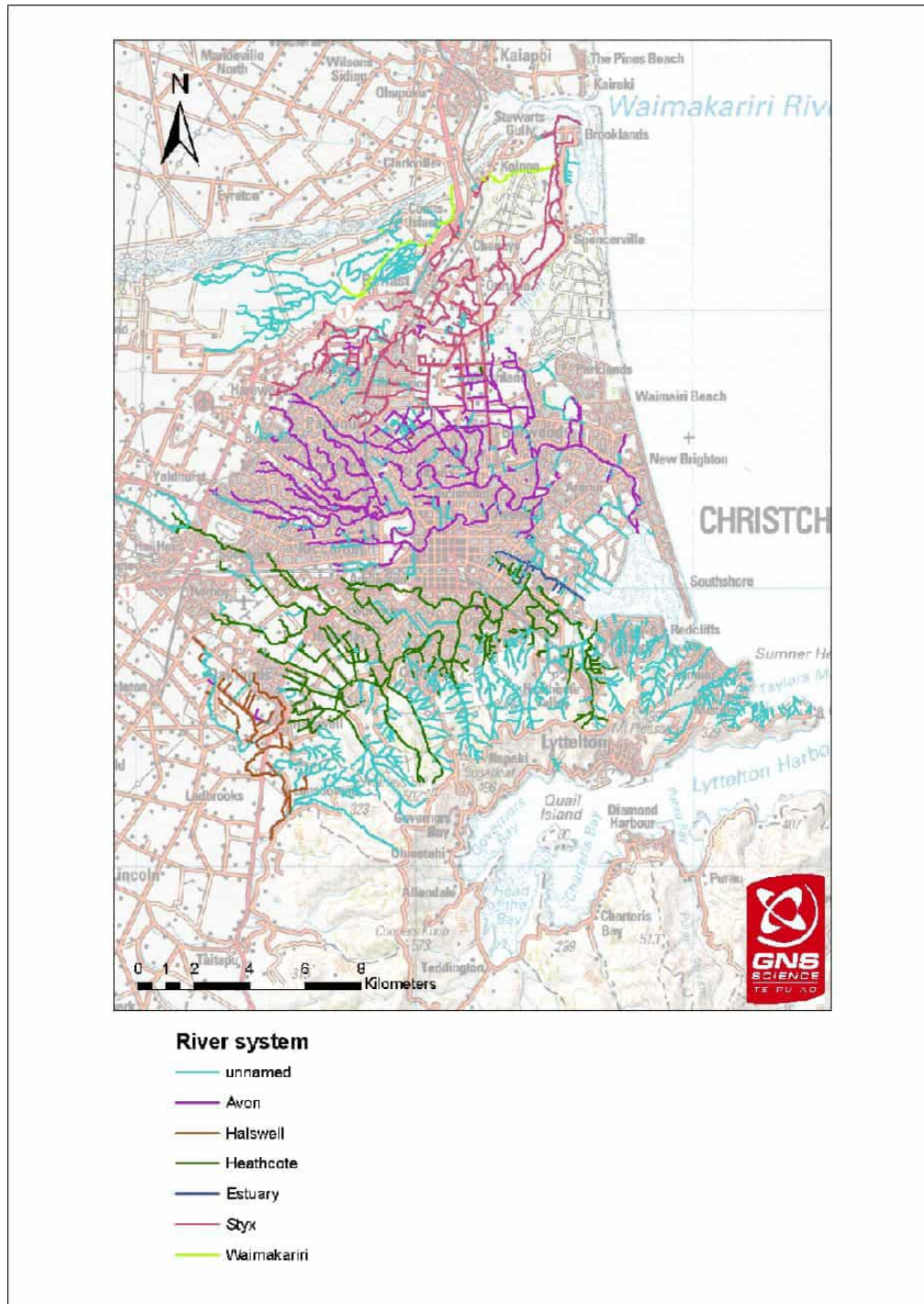


Figure 30. The river systems in 2006 (Christchurch City Council pers. comm.)

Confidential 2007

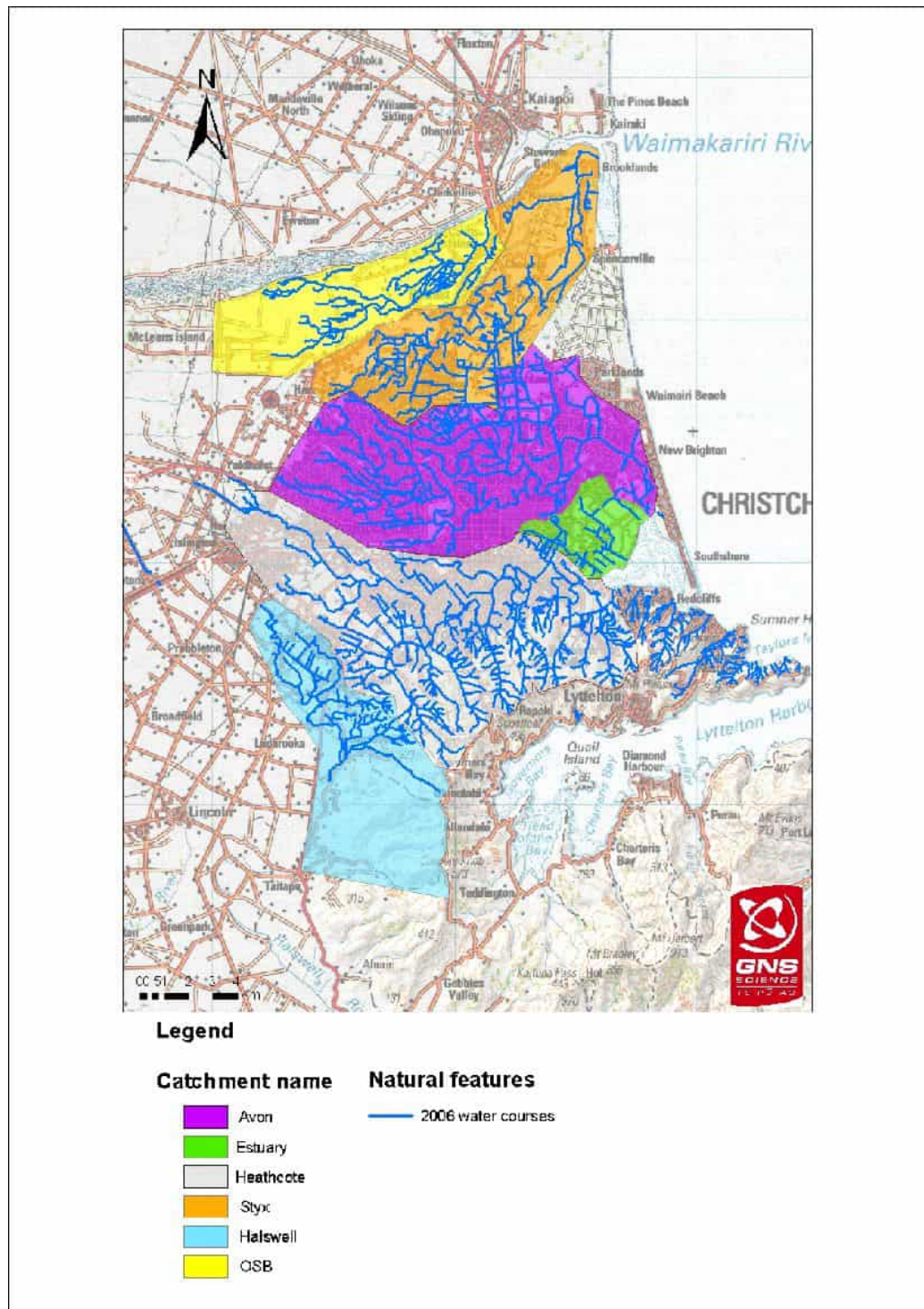


Figure 31. The catchment boundaries in 2006.

Confidential 2007

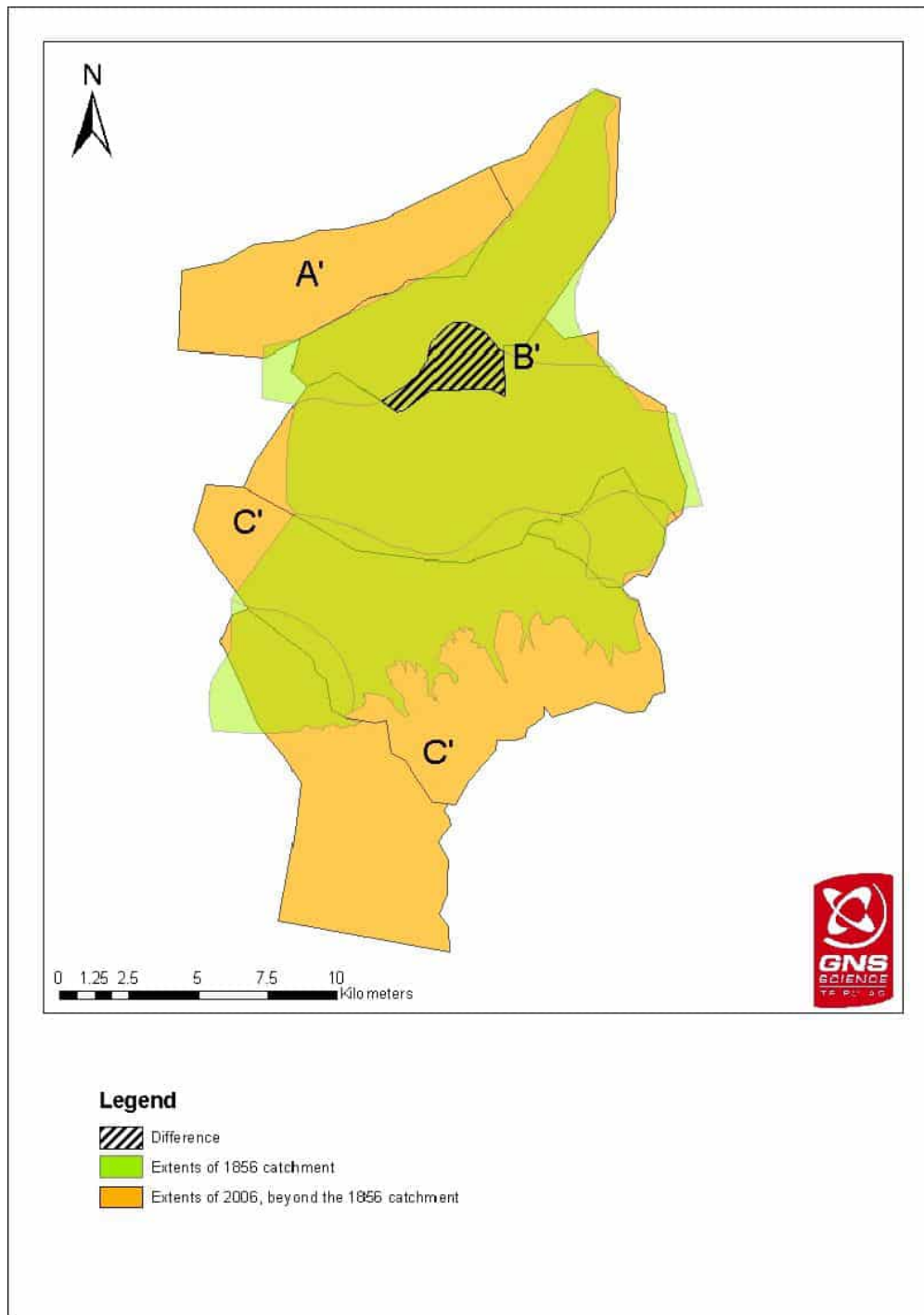


Figure 32. The 1856 catchment boundaries, the 2006 catchment boundaries and areas where the two catchments are significantly different.

Confidential 2007

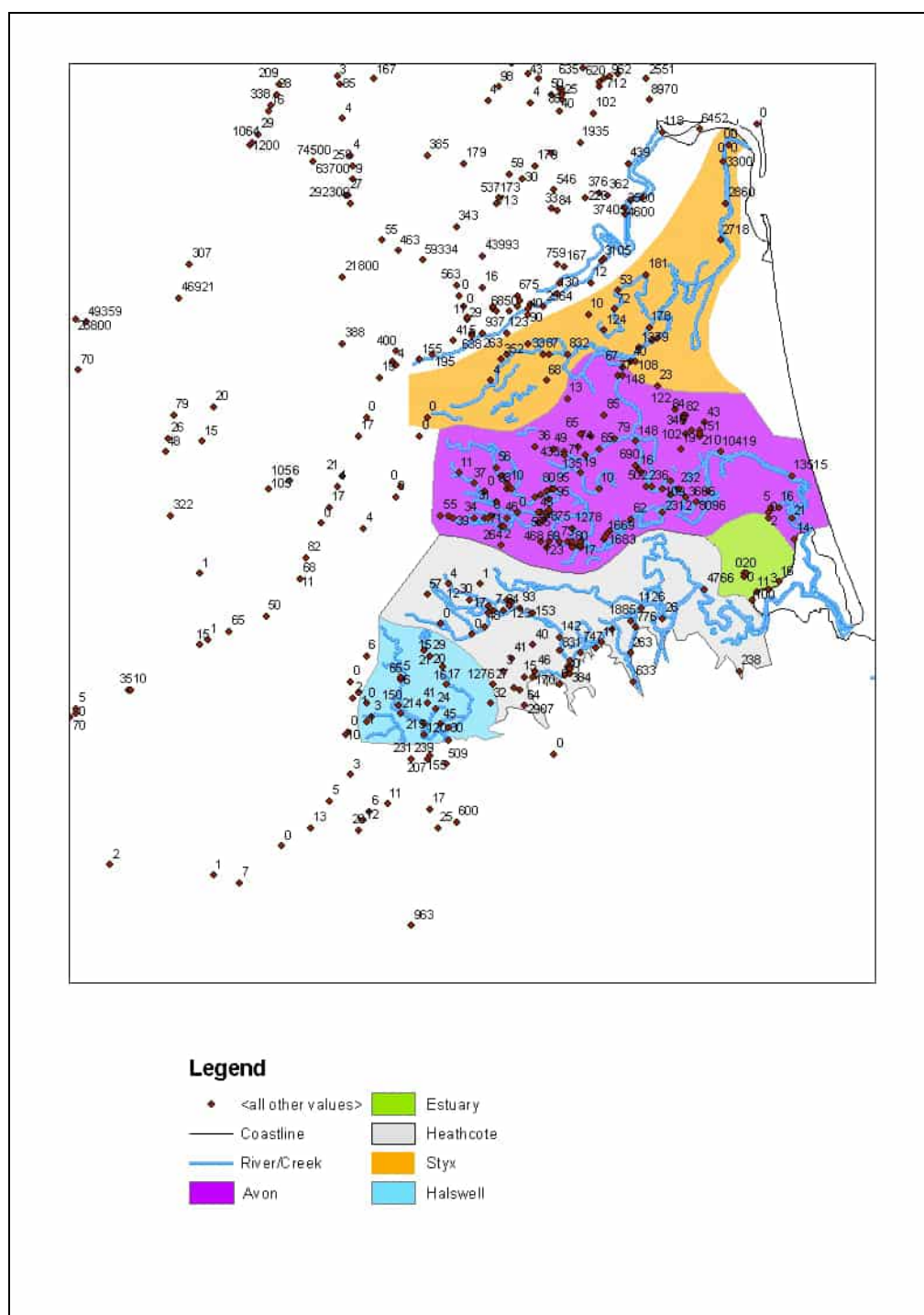


Figure 33. Estimates of medium flow from gauging measurements and estimated Christchurch City catchment boundaries of 1856.

Confidential 2007

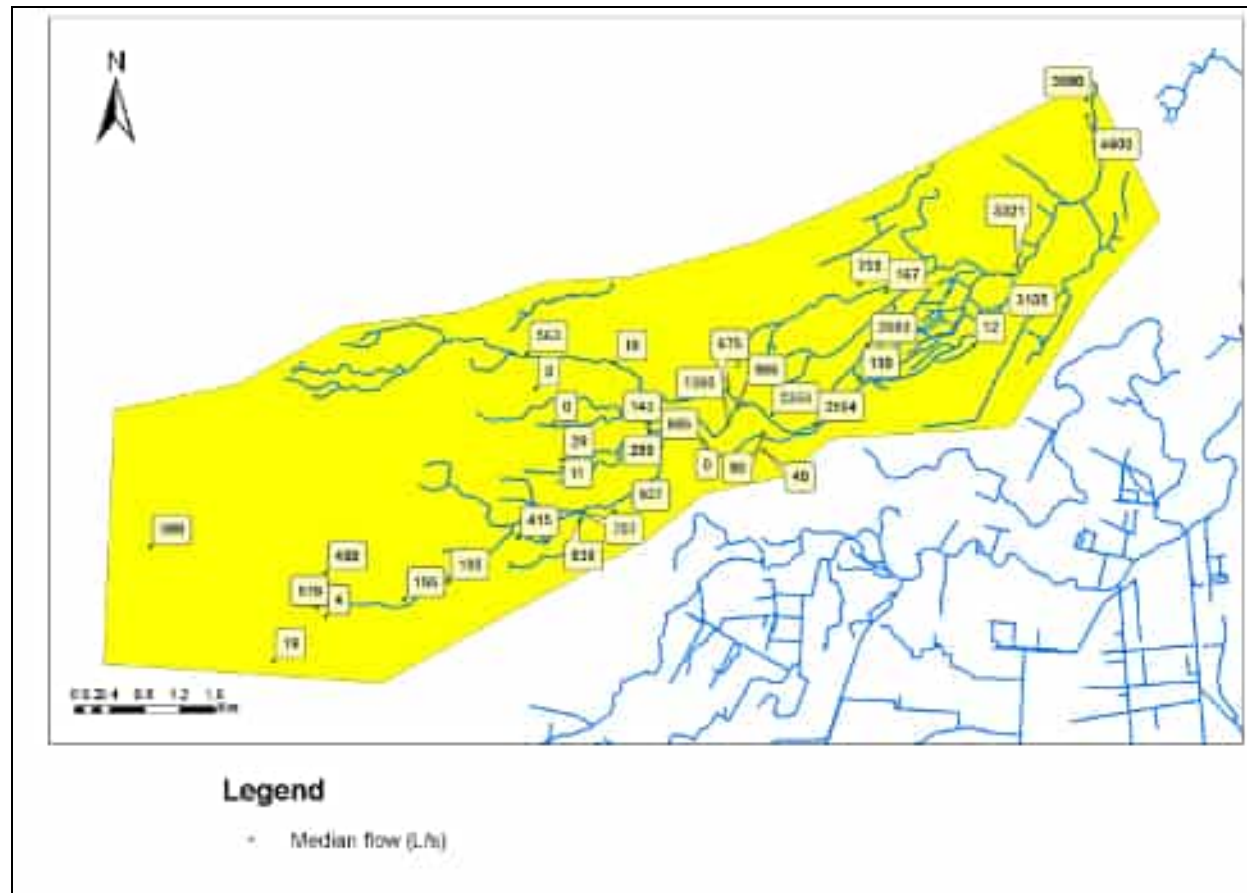


Figure 34. All median flow estimates in the Old South Branch catchment.

Confidential 2007

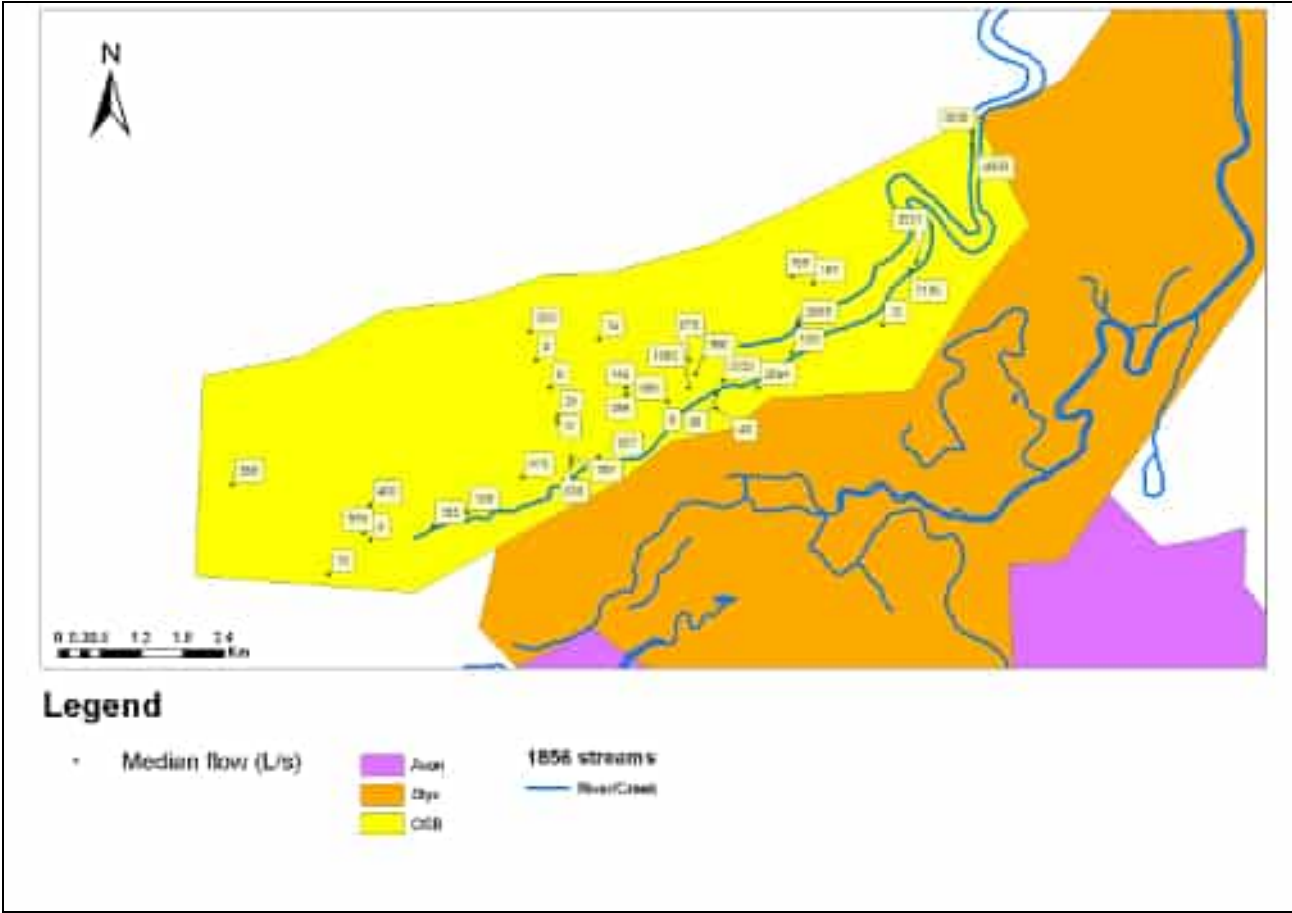


Figure 35. All median flow estimates and the 1856 map of waterways.

Confidential 2007

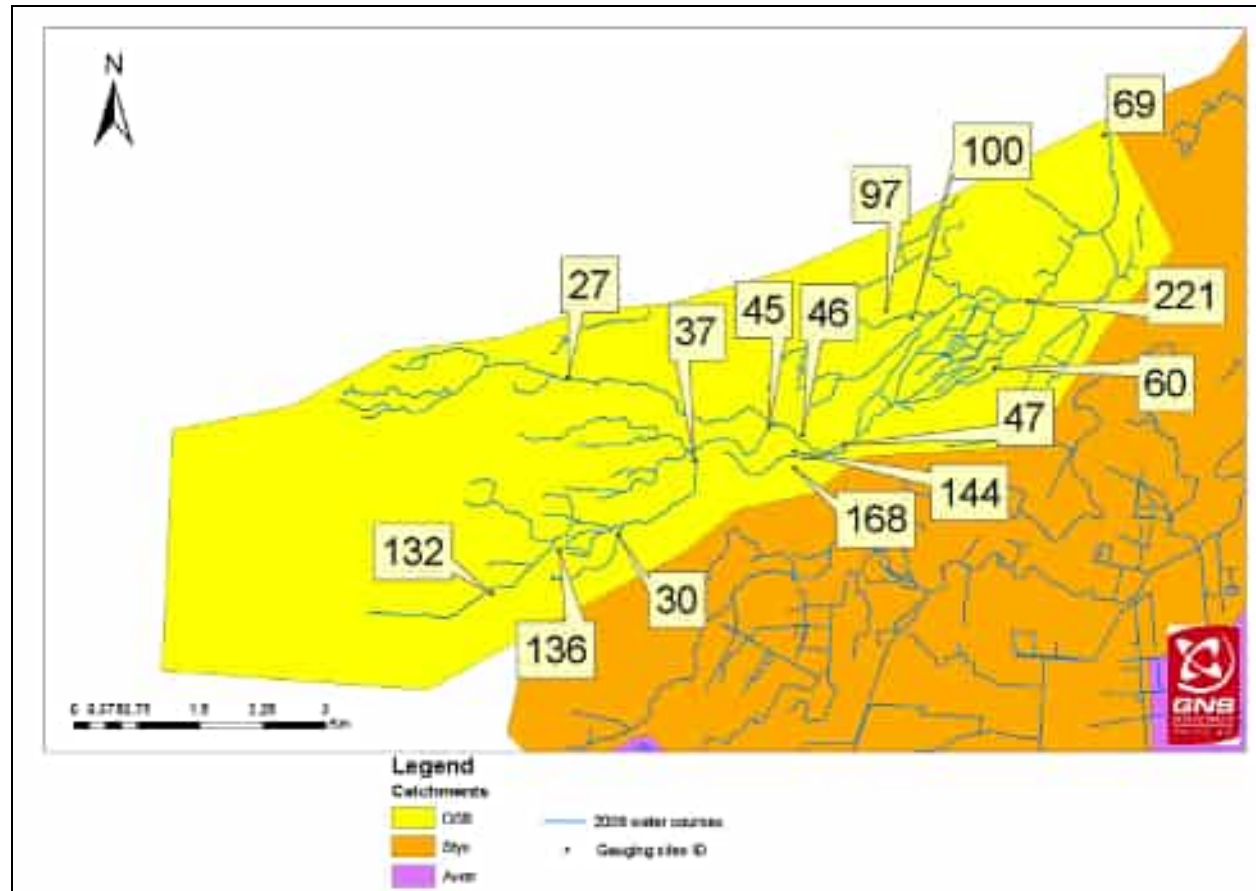


Figure 36. Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Old South Branch catchment.

Confidential 2007

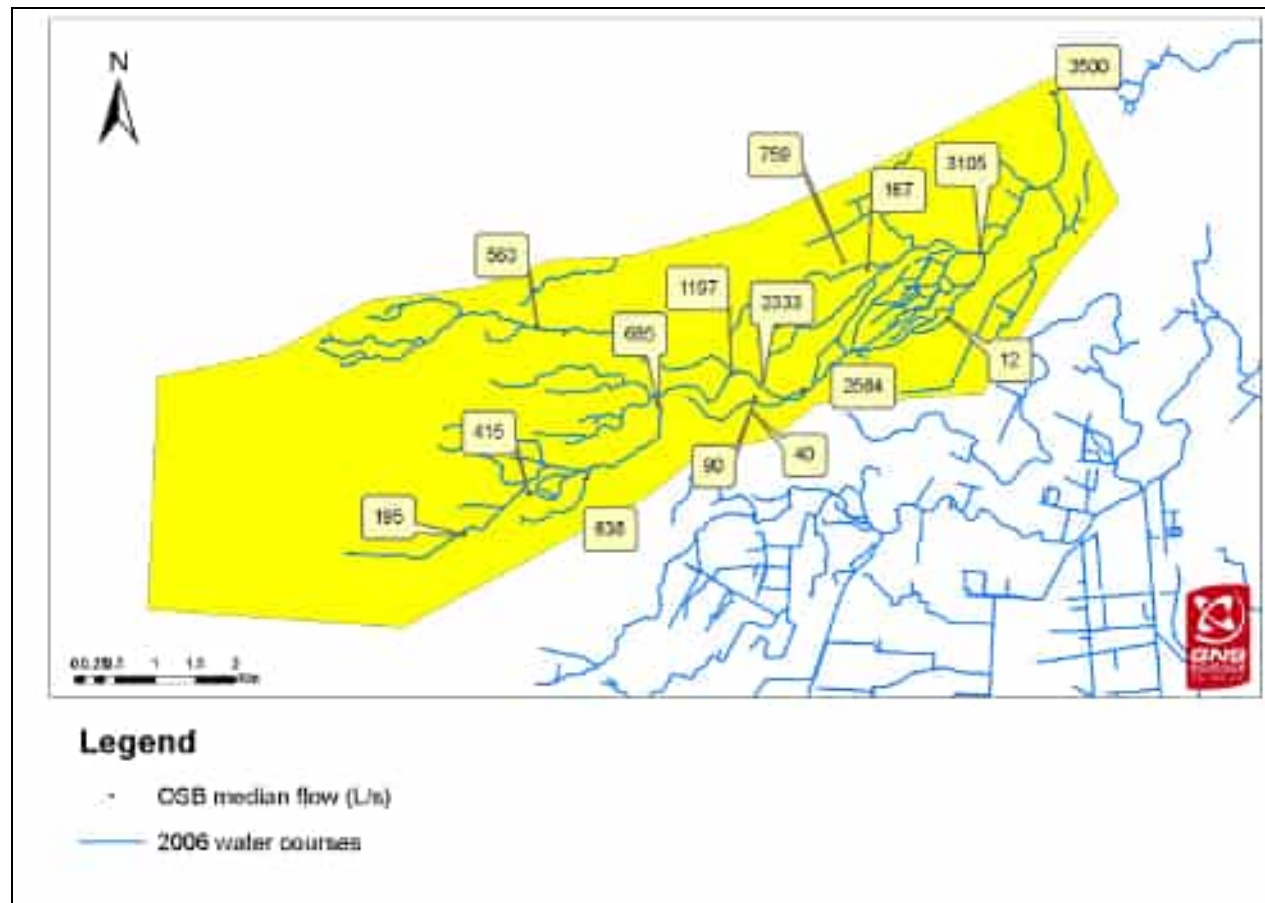


Figure 37. Selected median flow estimates in the Old South Branch catchment.

Confidential 2007

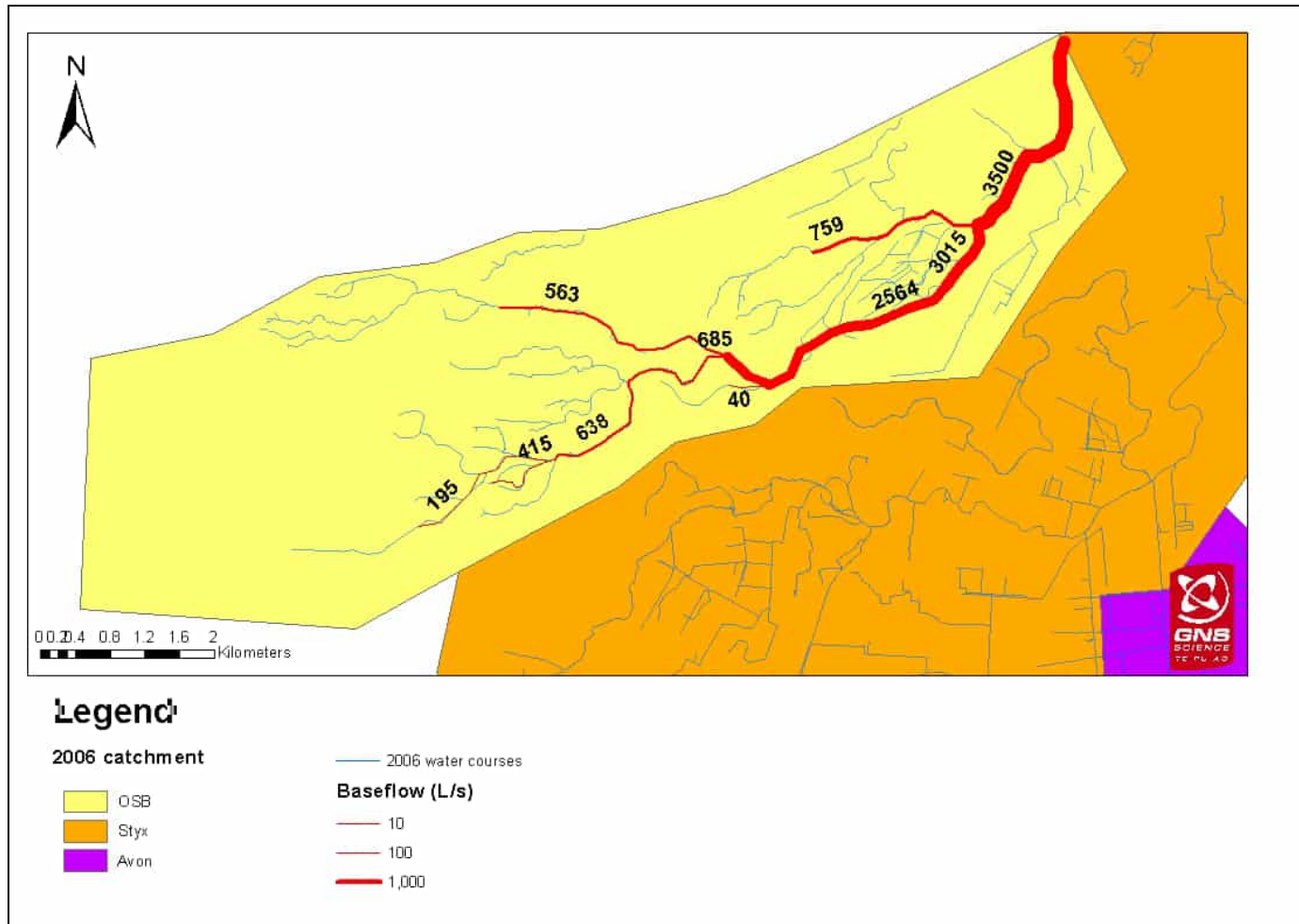


Figure 38. Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Old South Branch catchment.

Confidential 2007

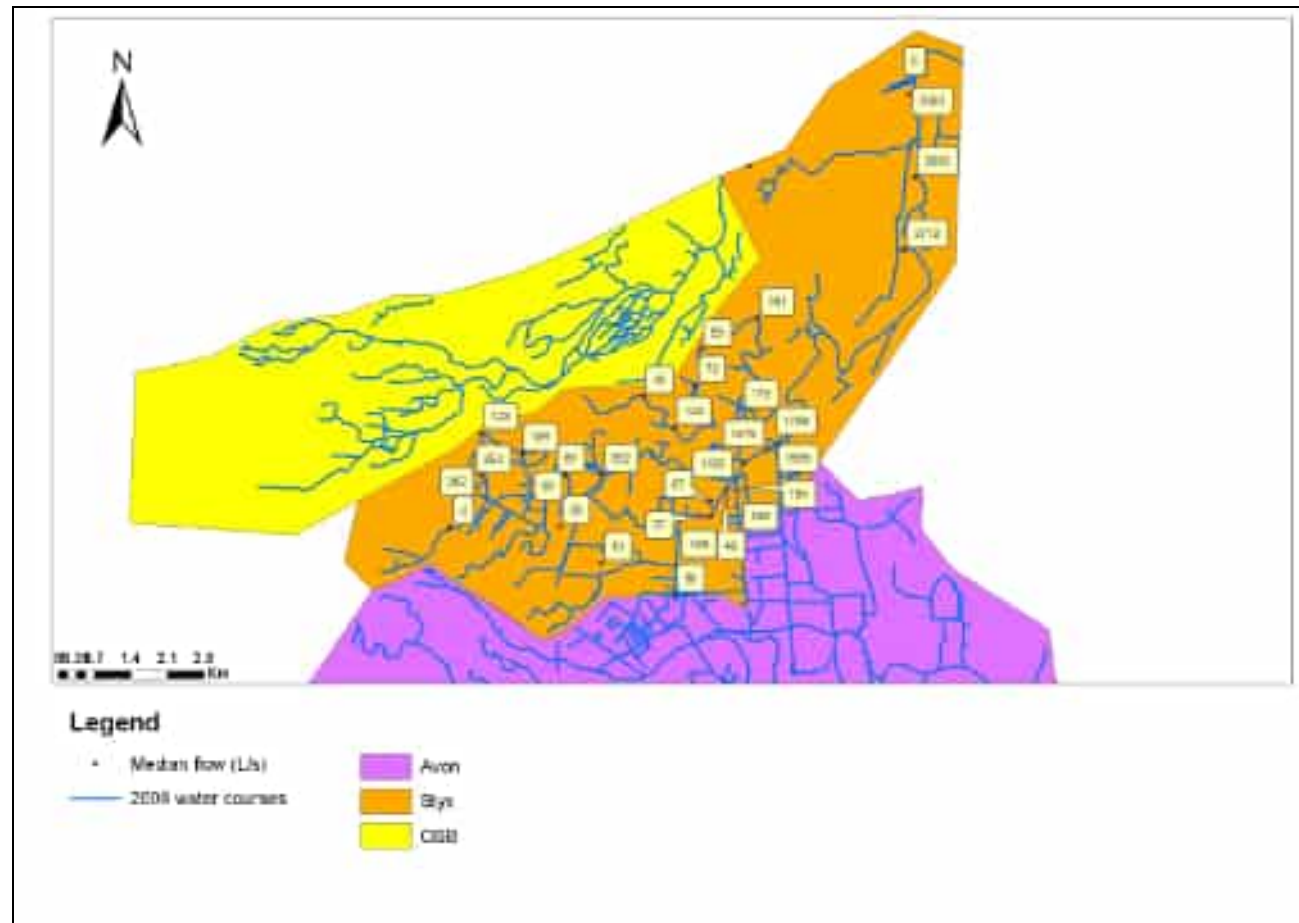


Figure 39. All median flow estimates in the Styx River catchment.

Confidential 2007

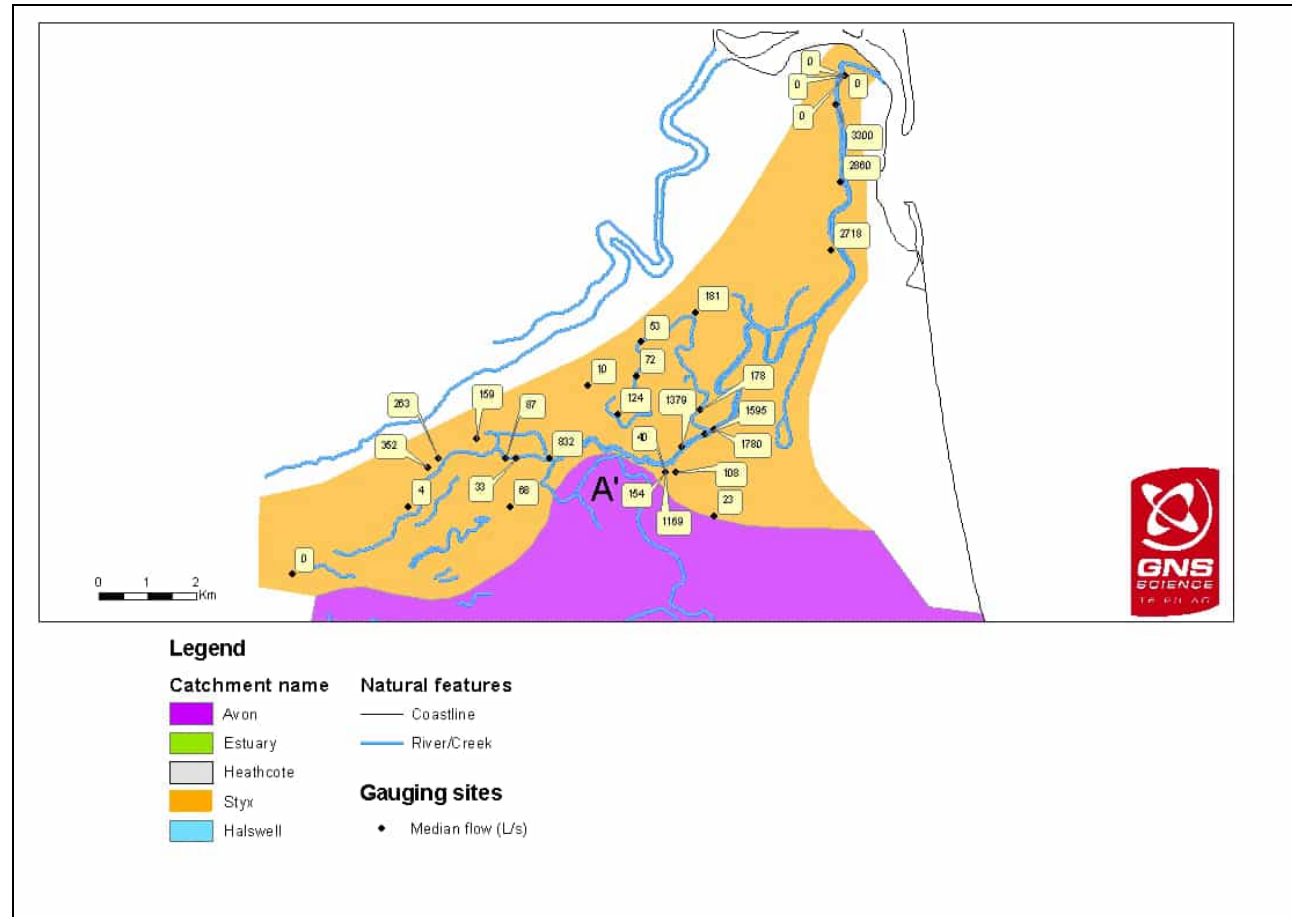


Figure 40. The 1856 Styx River catchment and streams with median flow estimates.

Confidential 2007

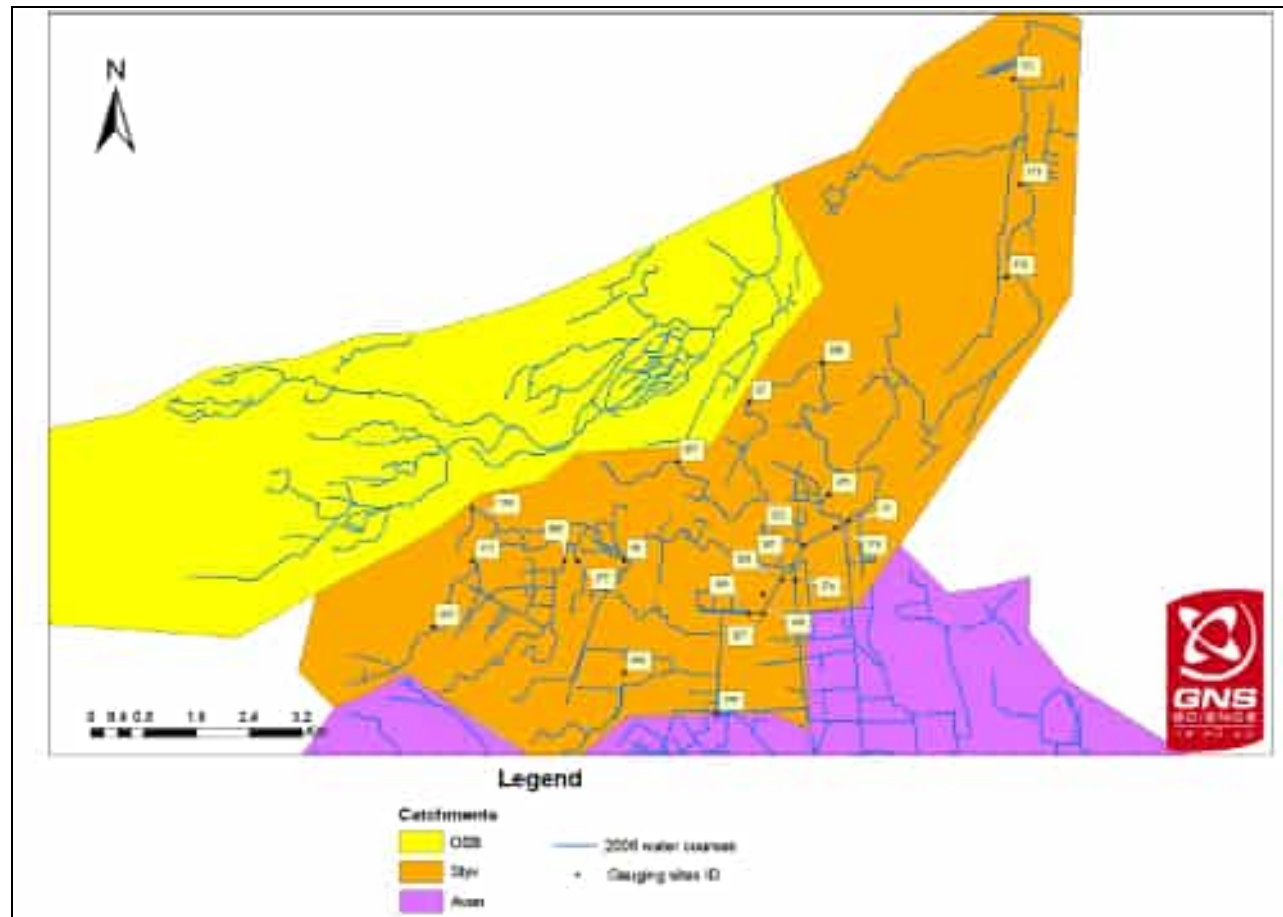


Figure 41. Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Styx River catchment.

Confidential 2007

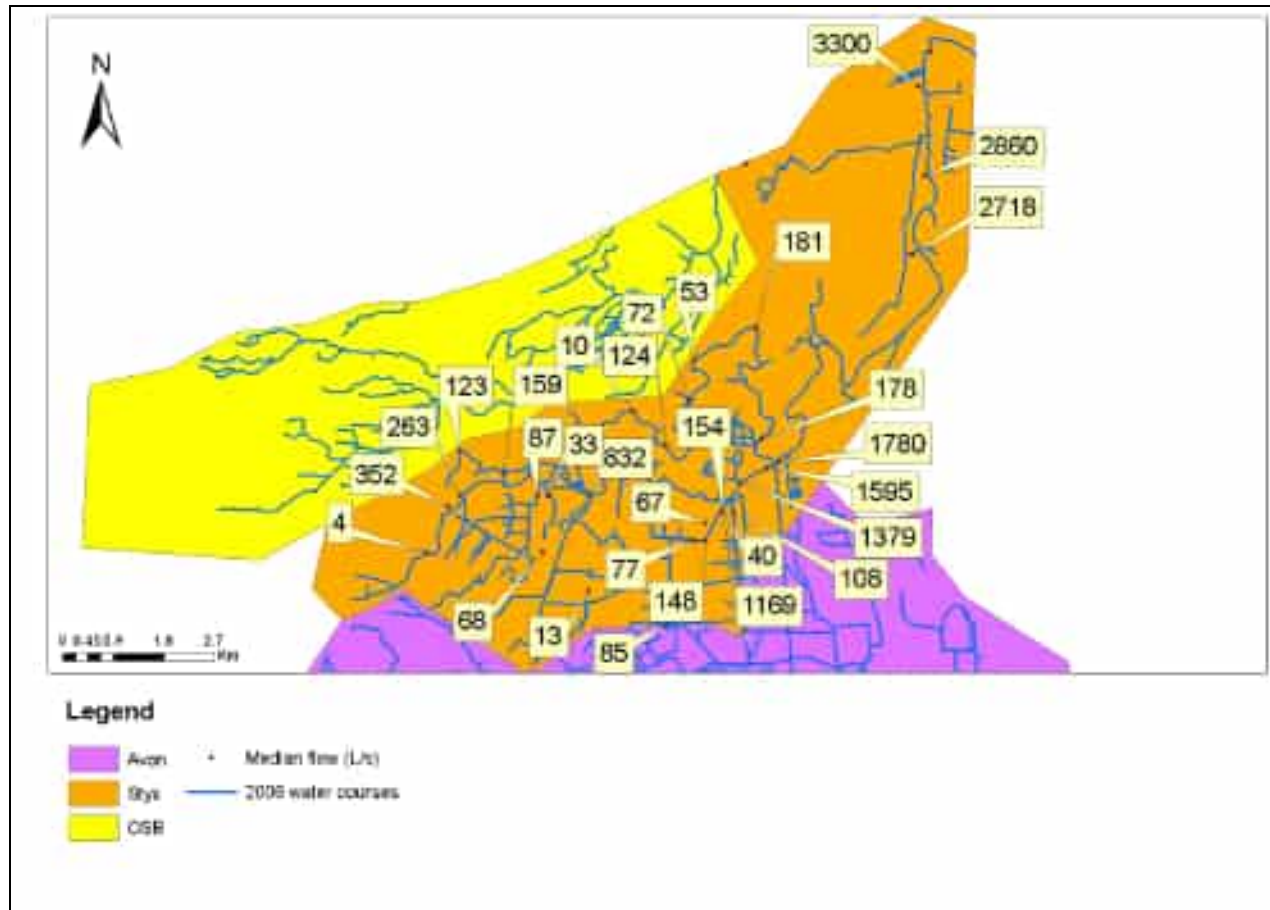


Figure 42. Selected median flow estimates in the Styx River catchment.

Confidential 2007

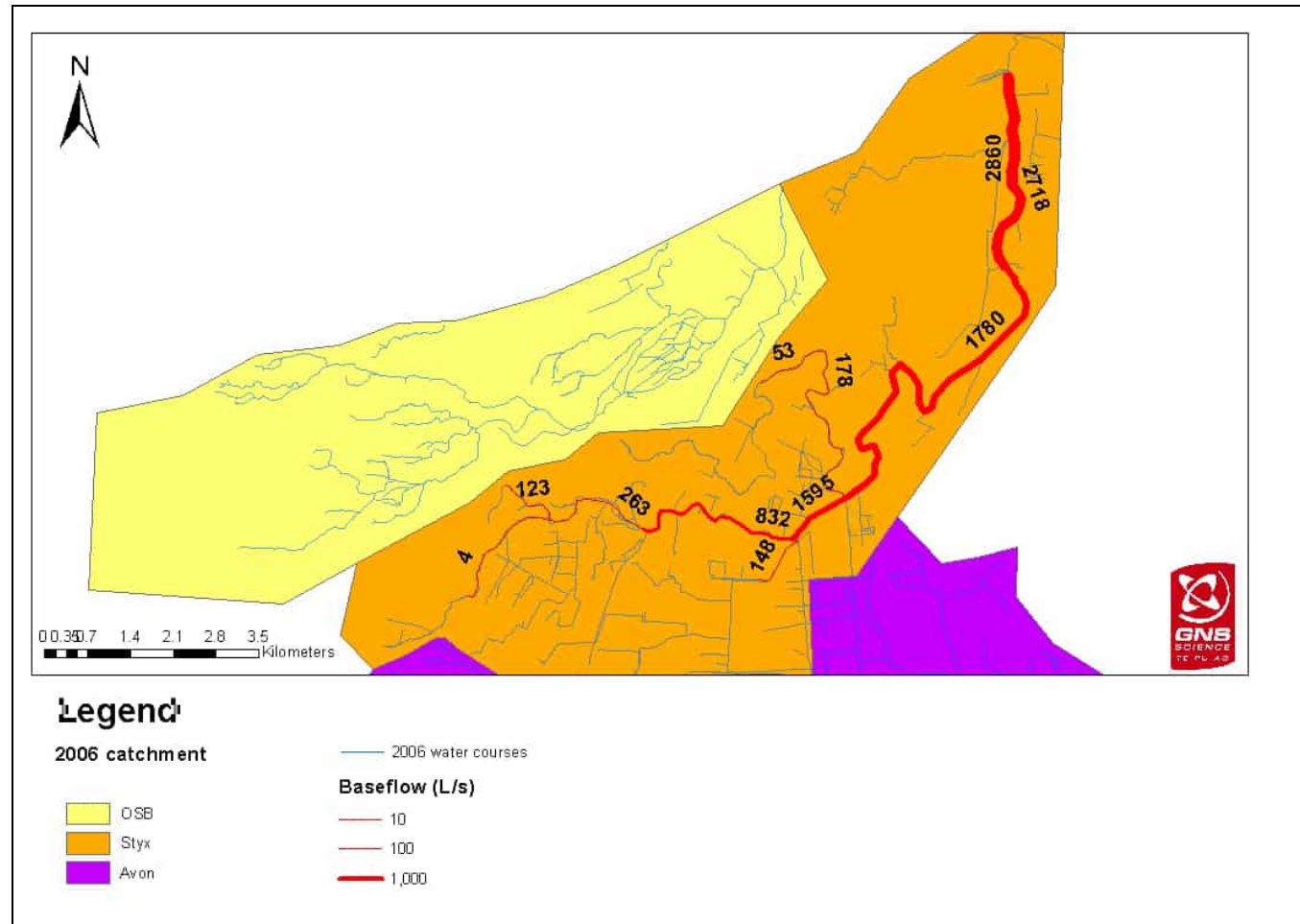


Figure 43. Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Styx River catchment.

Confidential 2007

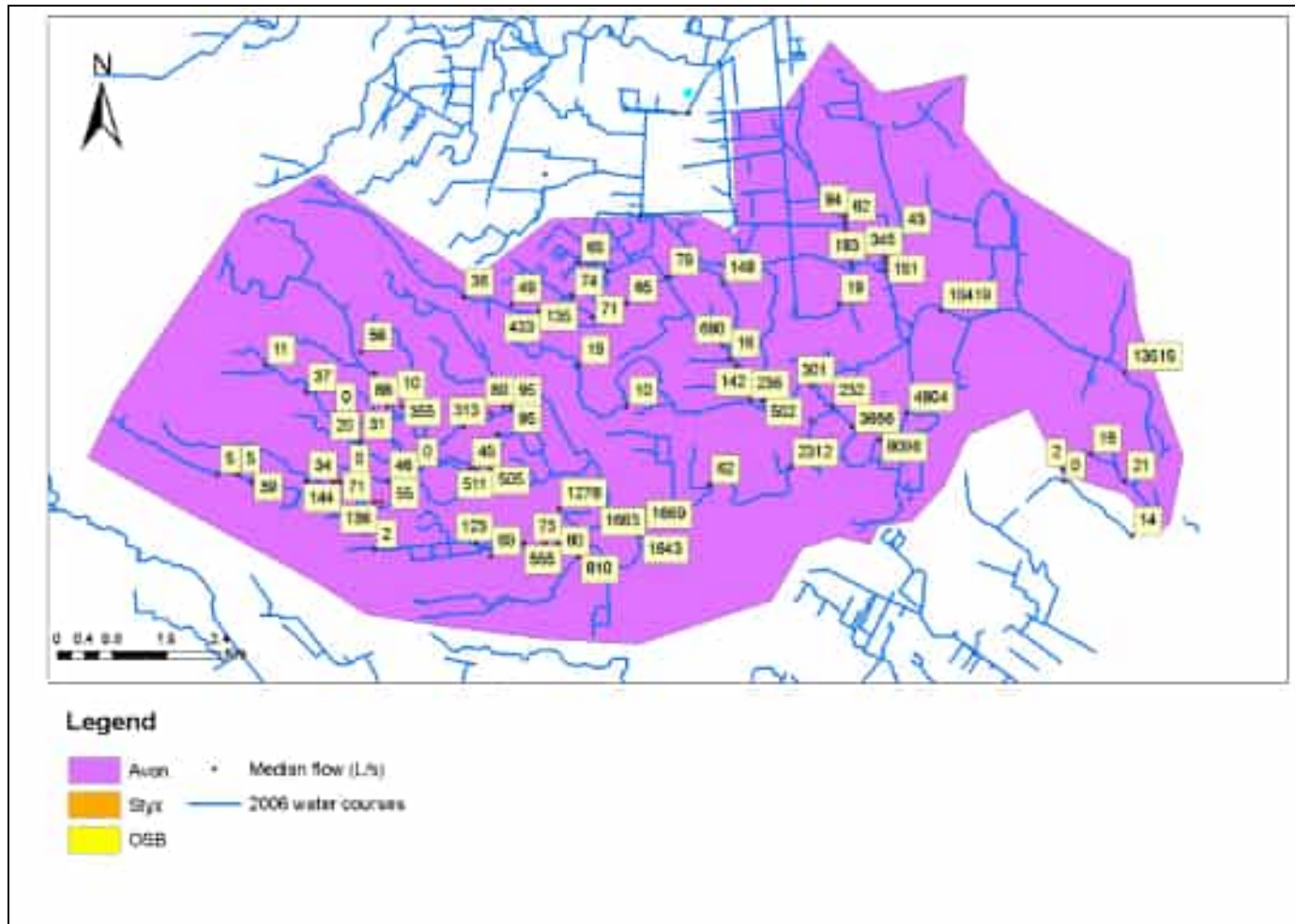


Figure 44. All median flow estimates in the Avon River catchment.

Confidential 2007

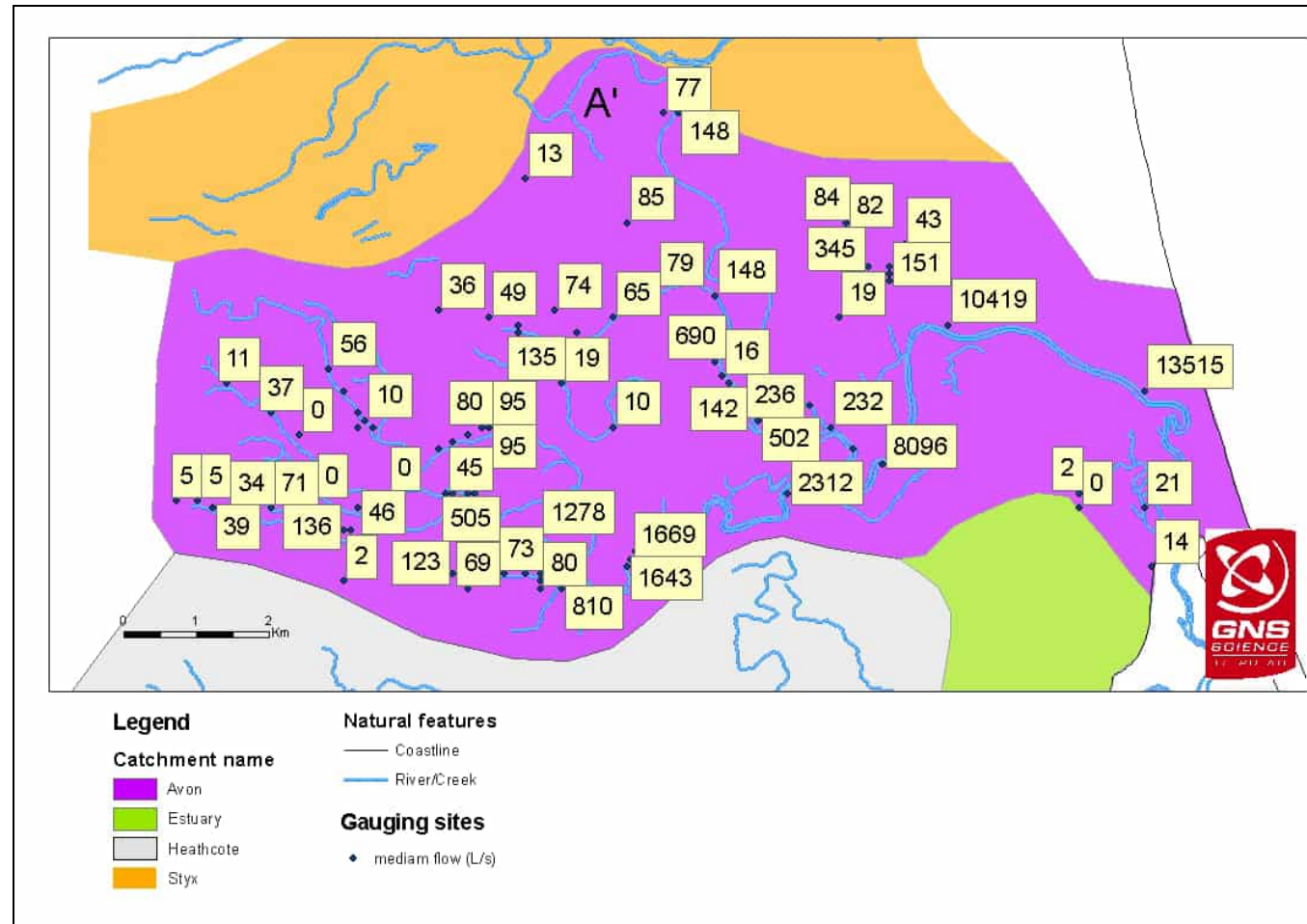


Figure 45. The 1856 Avon River catchment and streams with the median flow estimates.

Confidential 2007

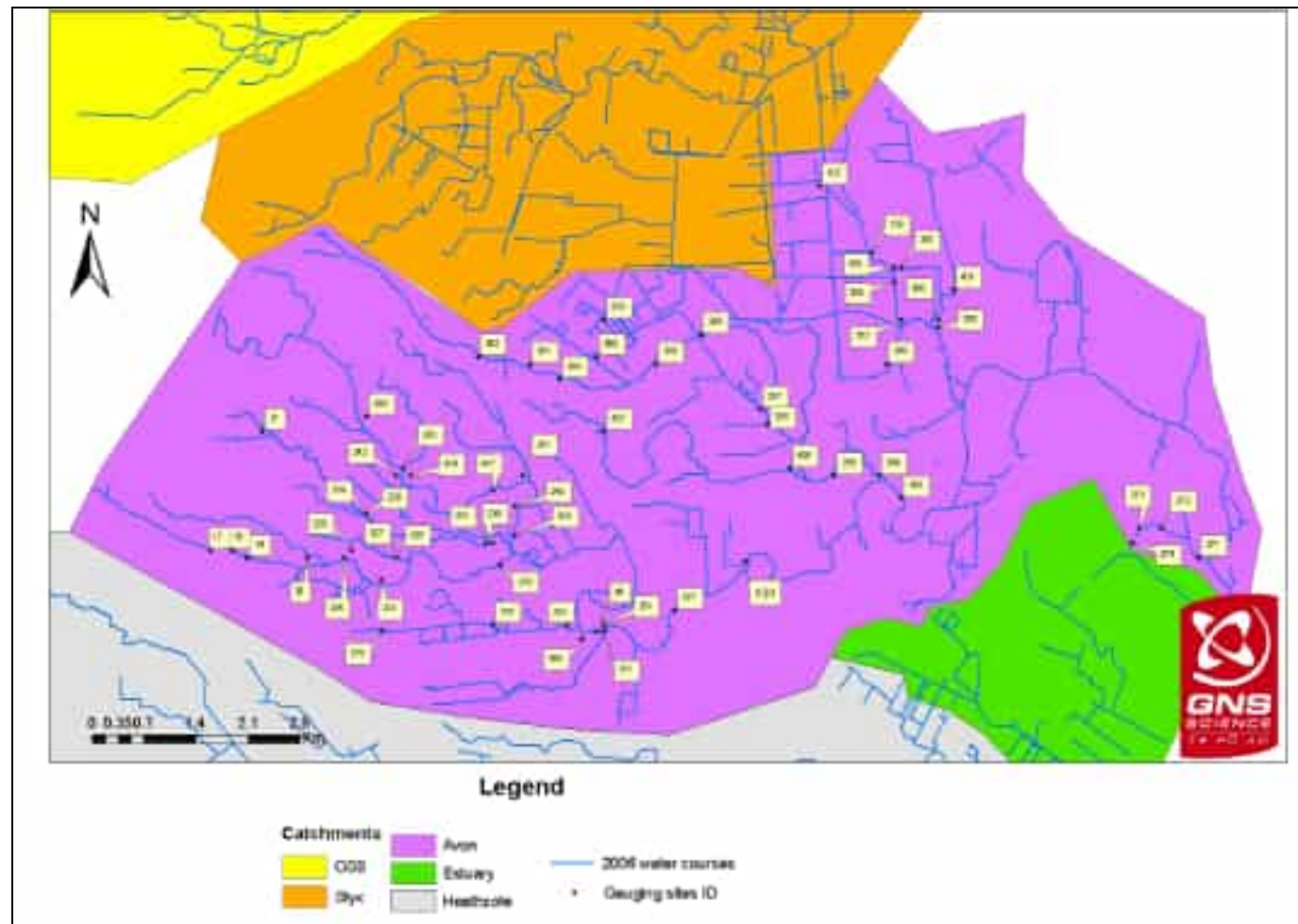


Figure 46. Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Avon River catchment.

Confidential 2007

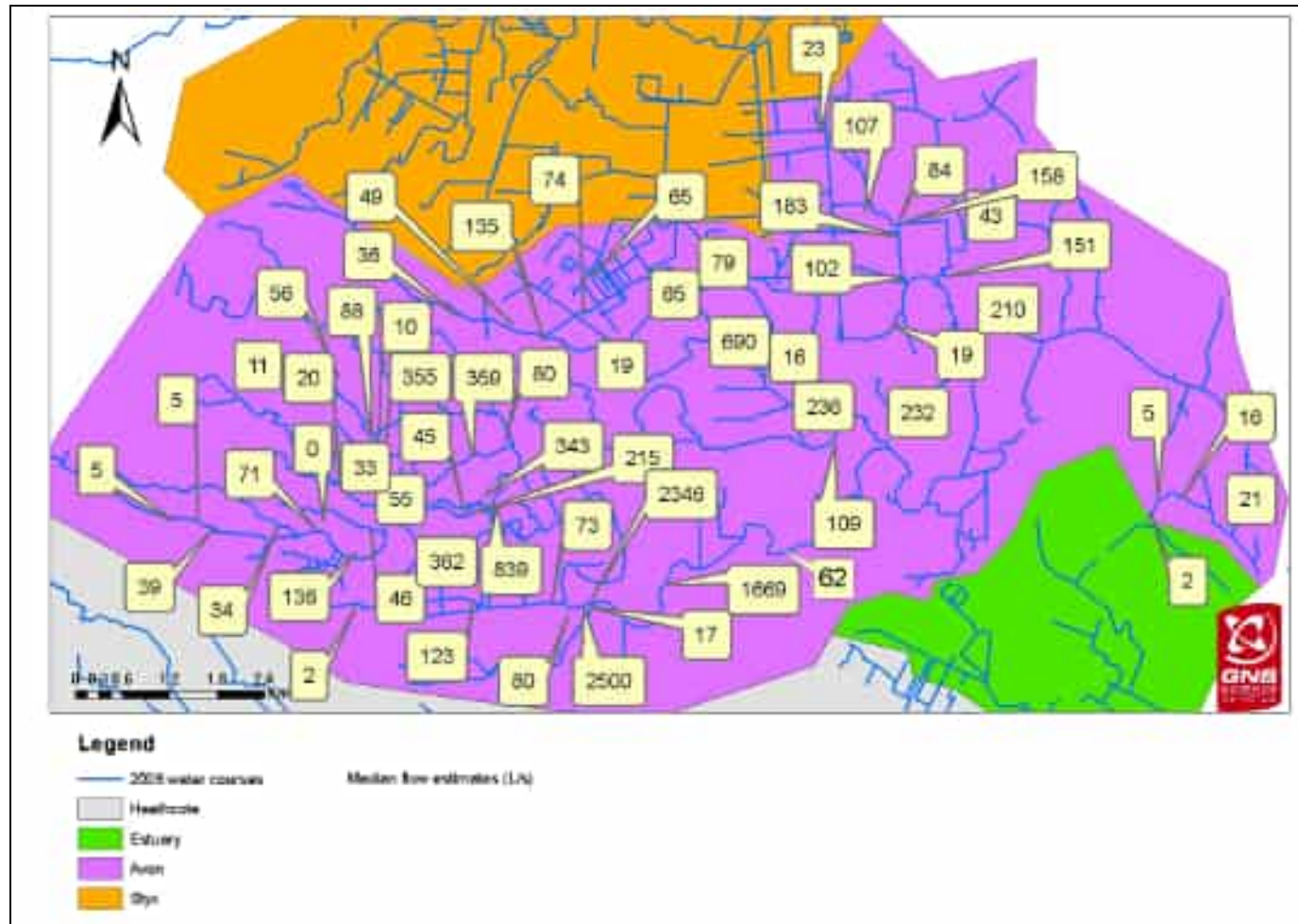


Figure 47. Selected median flow estimates in the Avon River catchment.

Confidential 2007

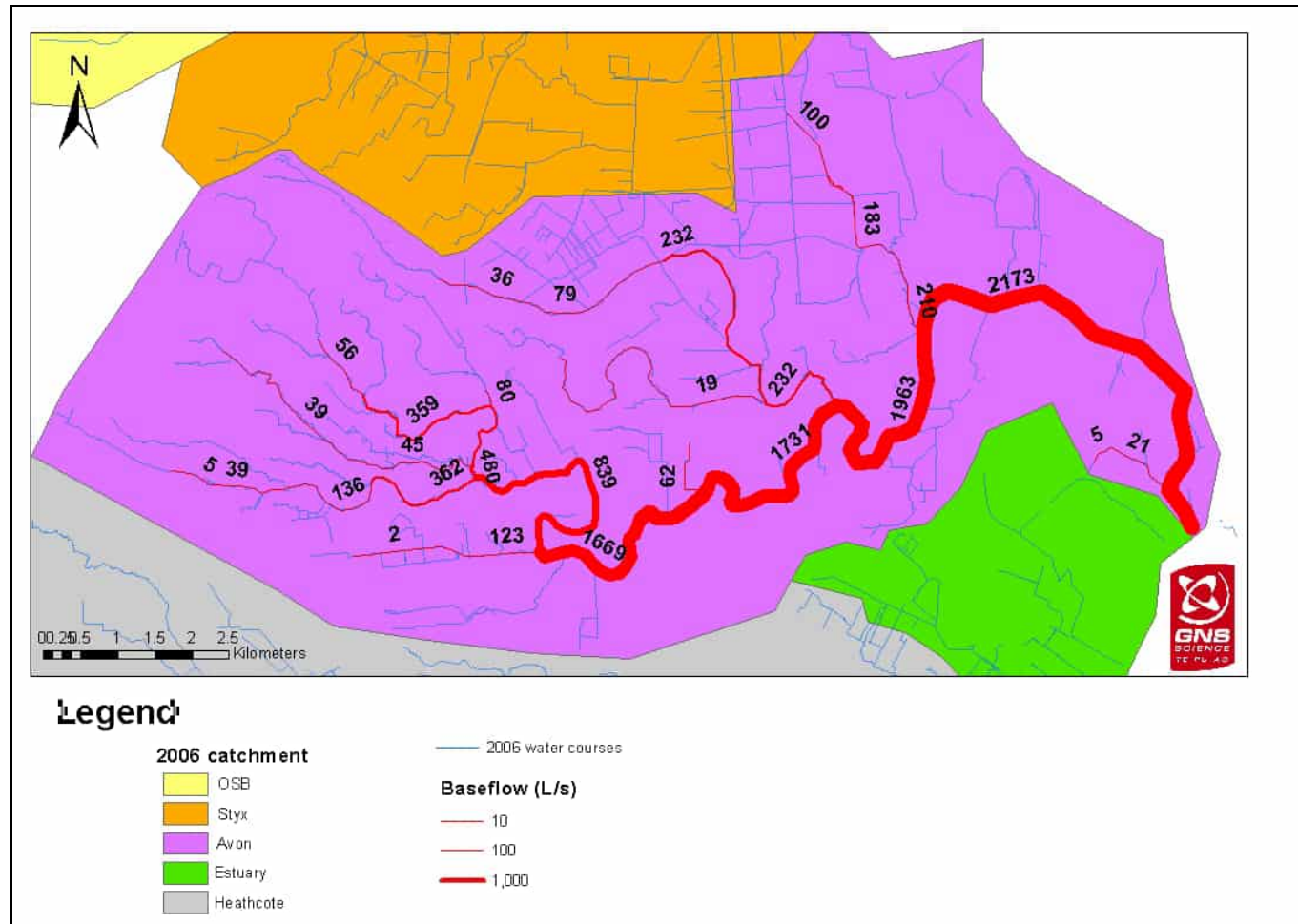


Figure 48. Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Avon River catchment.

Confidential 2007

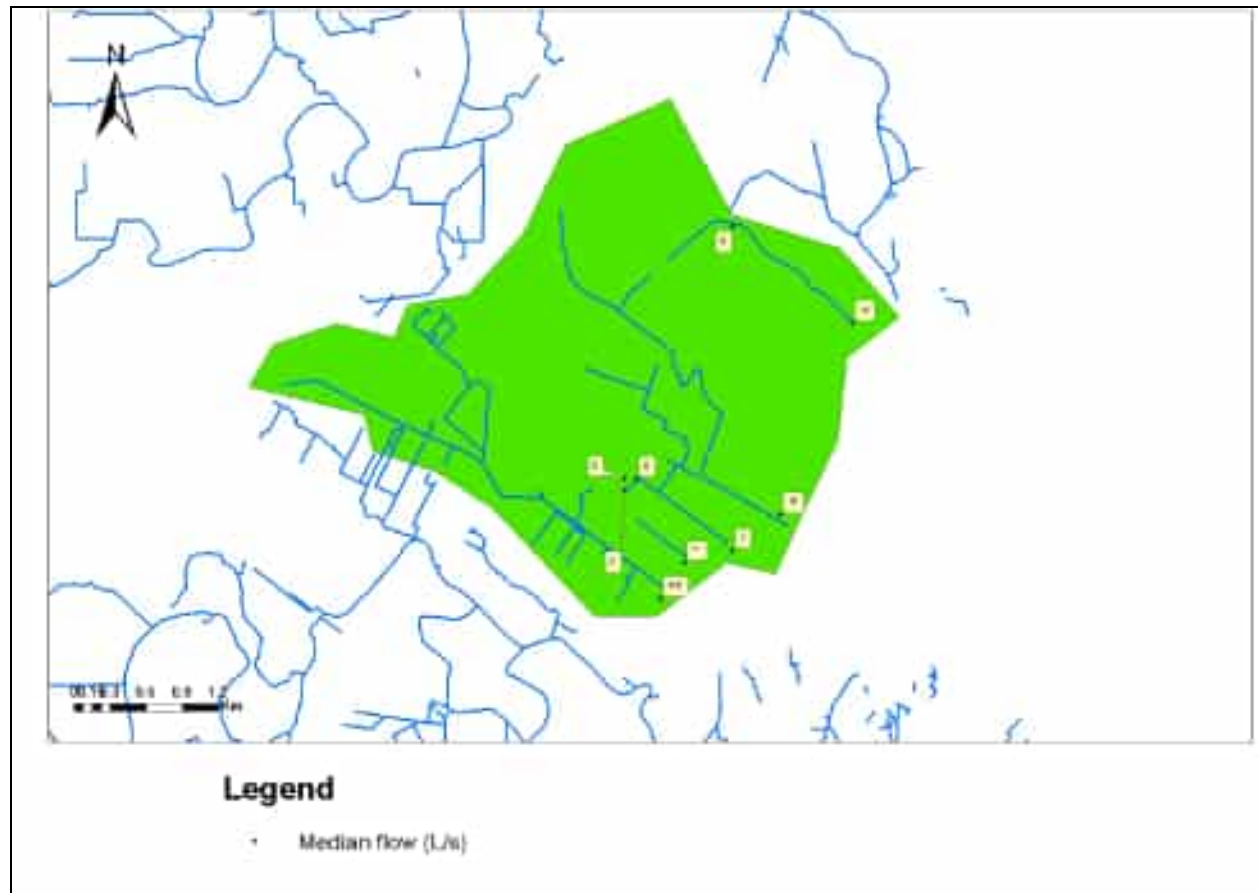


Figure 49. All median flow estimates in the Estuary catchment.

Confidential 2007

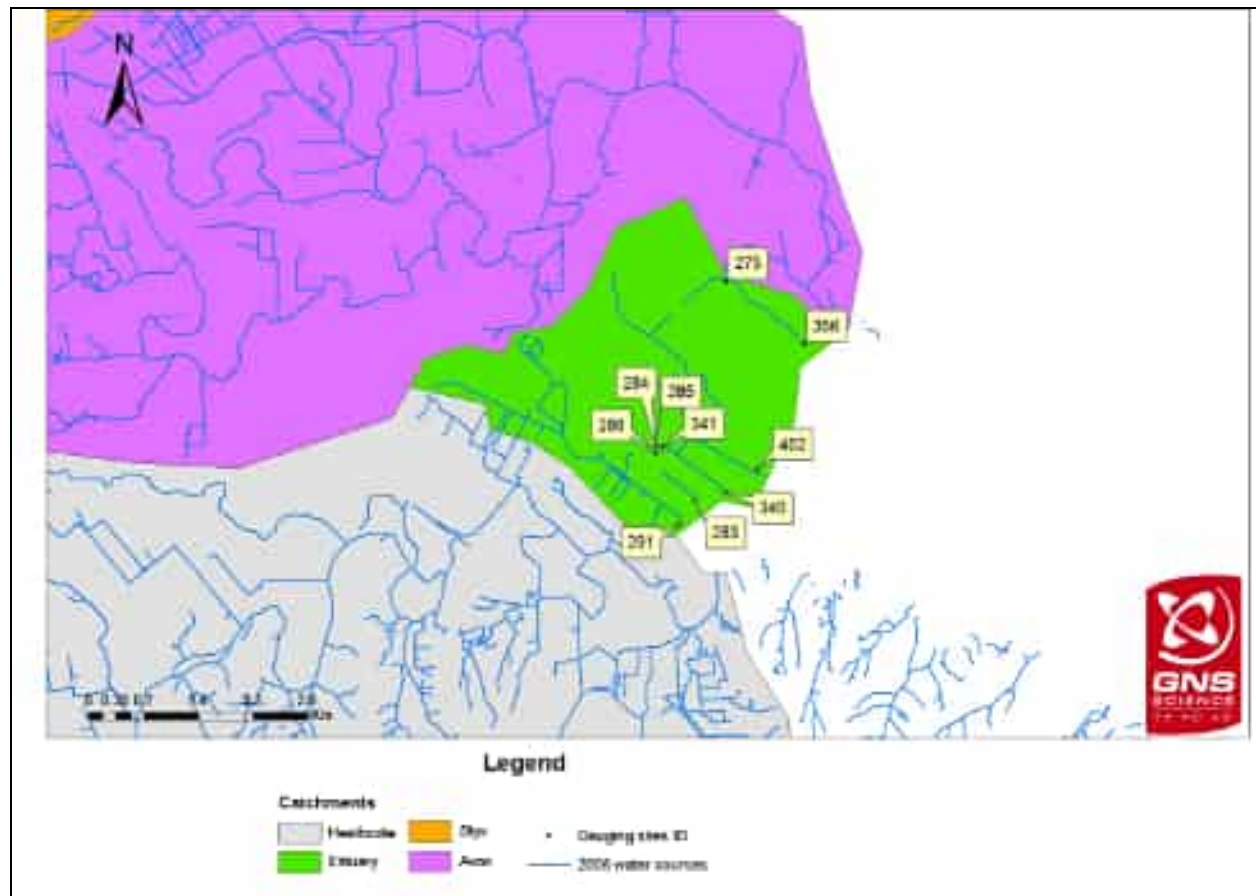


Figure 50. Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Estuary catchment.

Confidential 2007

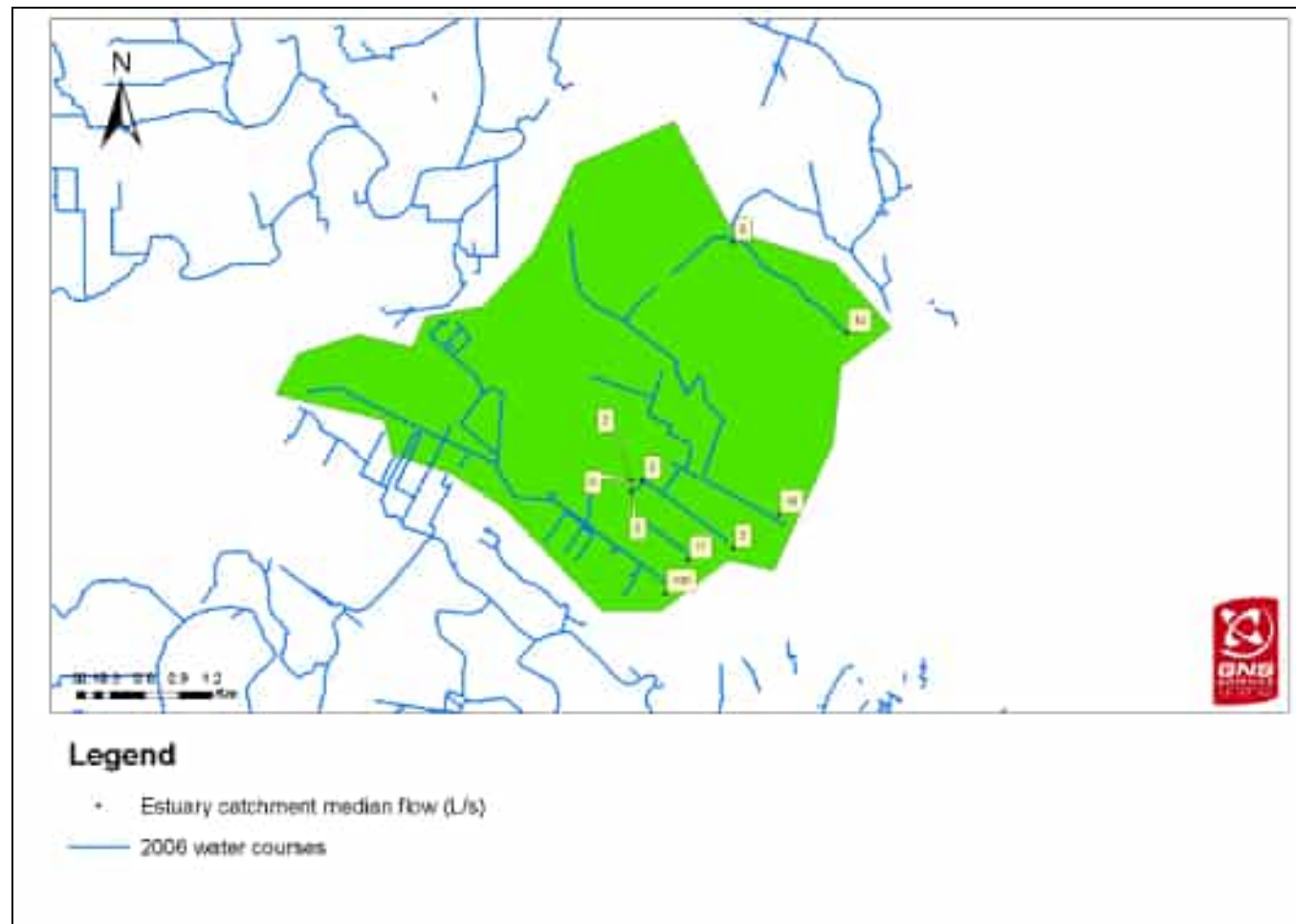


Figure 51. Selected median flow estimates in the Estuary catchment.

Confidential 2007

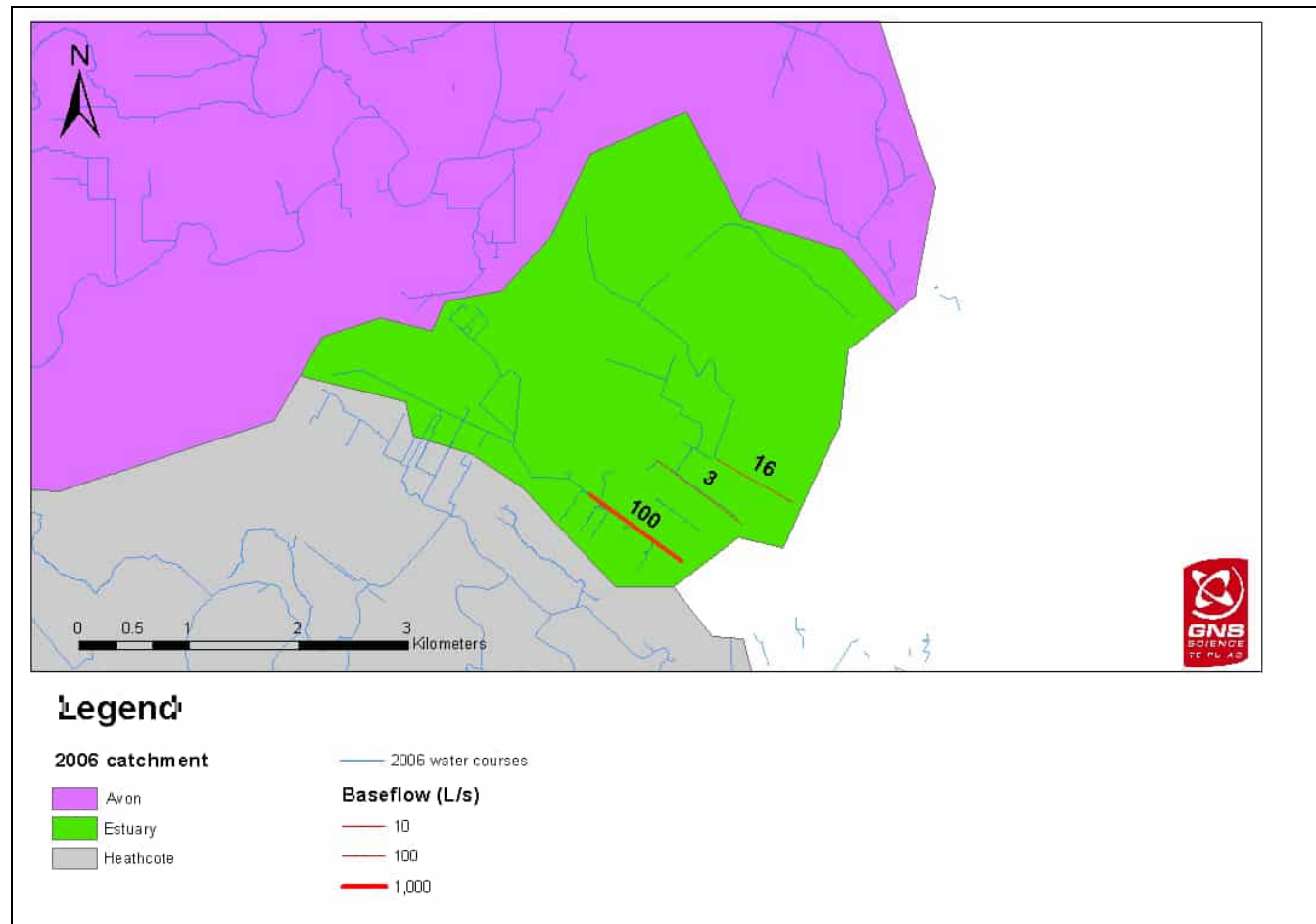


Figure 52. Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Estuary catchment.

Confidential 2007

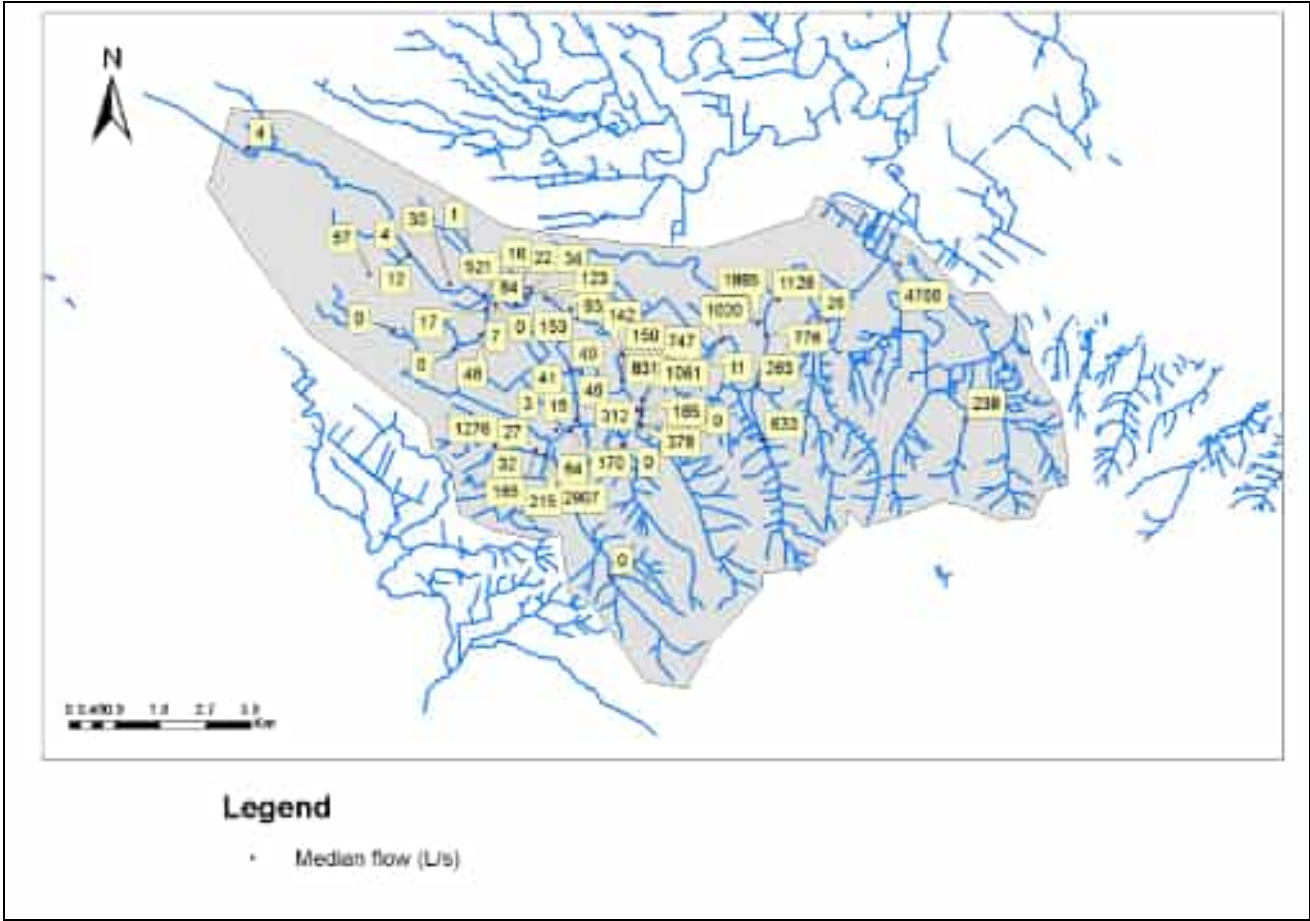


Figure 53. All median flow estimates in the Heathcote River catchment.

Confidential 2007

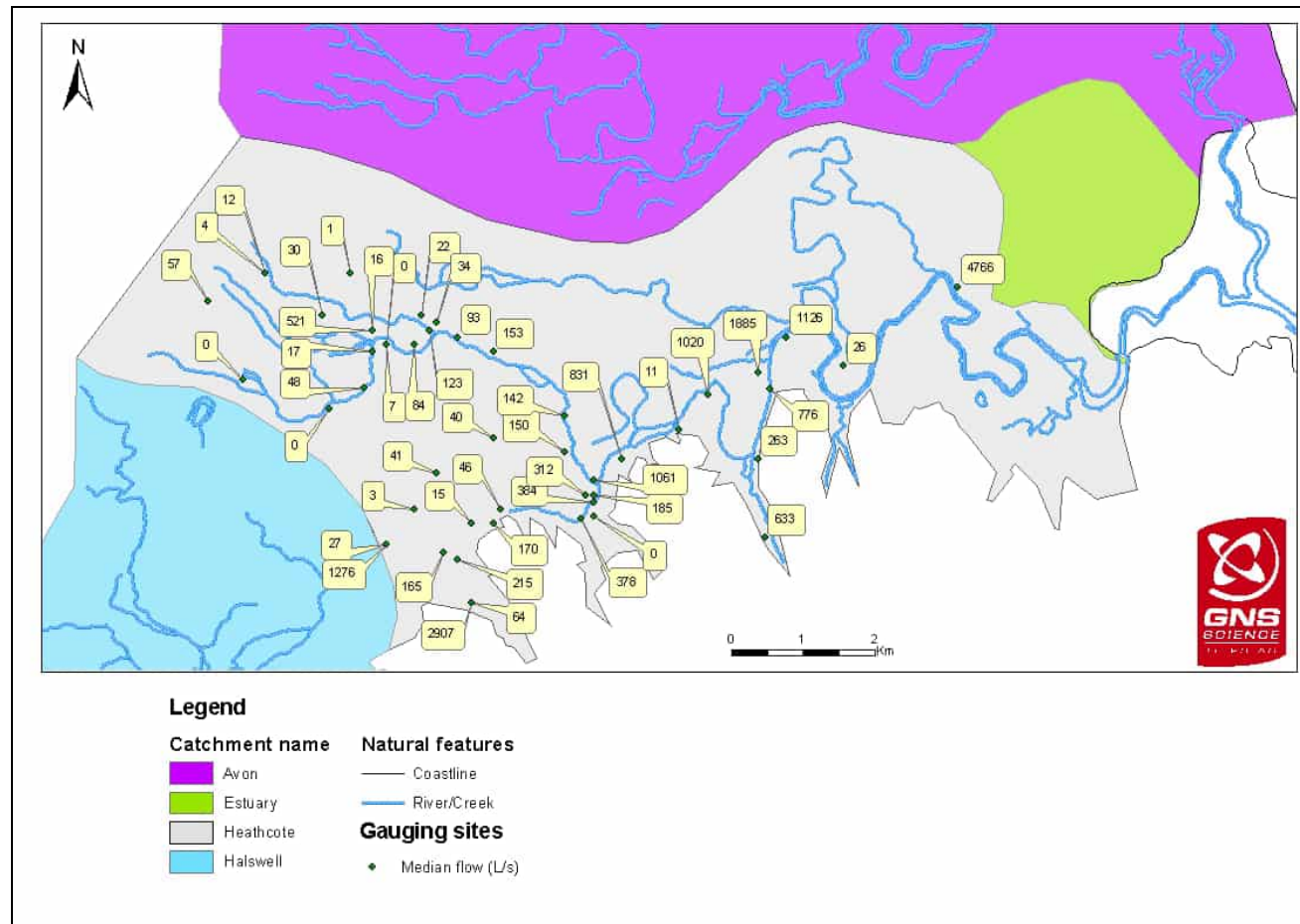


Figure 54. The 1856 Heathcote River catchment and streams with median flow estimates.

Confidential 2007

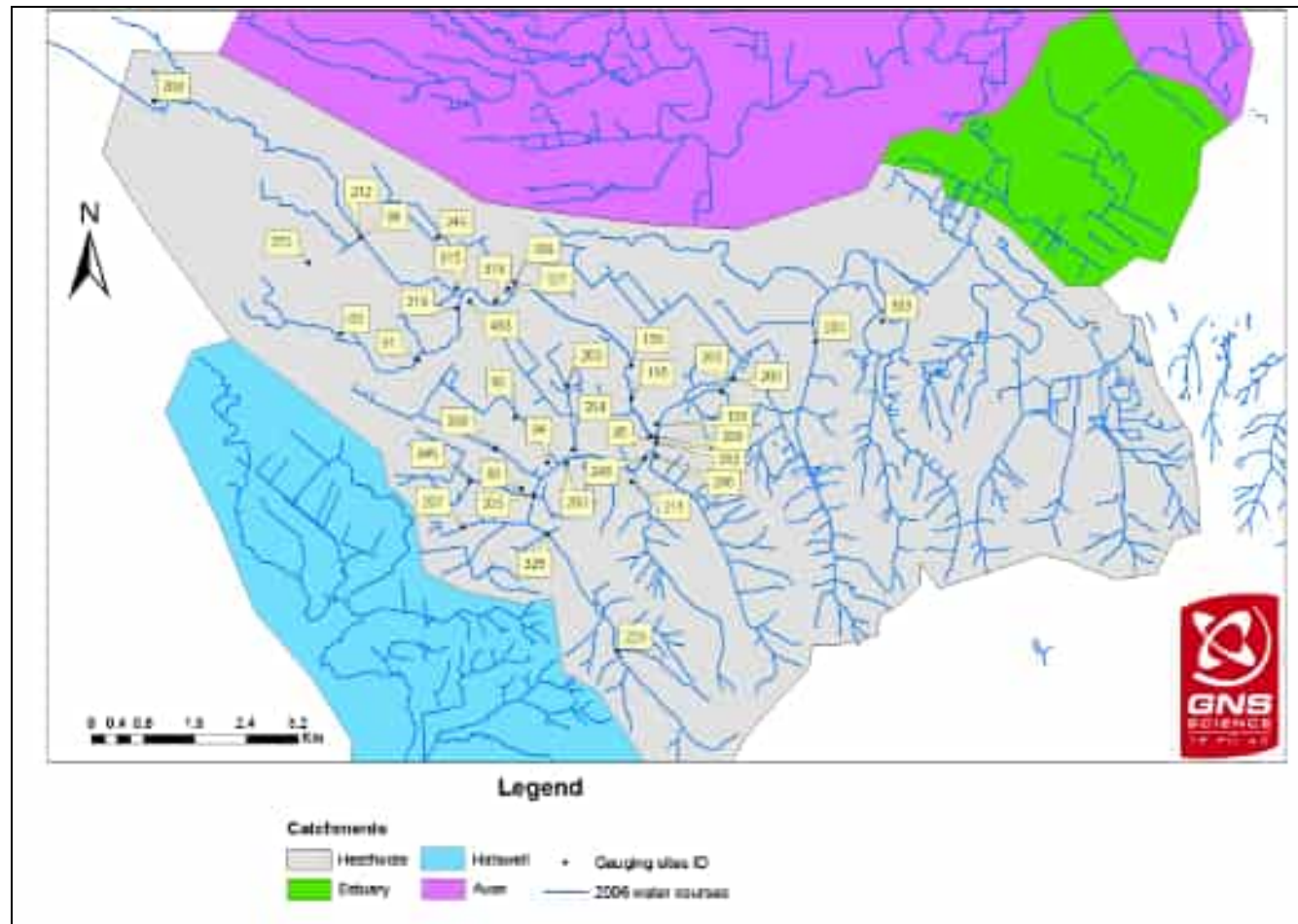


Figure 55. Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Heathcote River catchment.

Confidential 2007

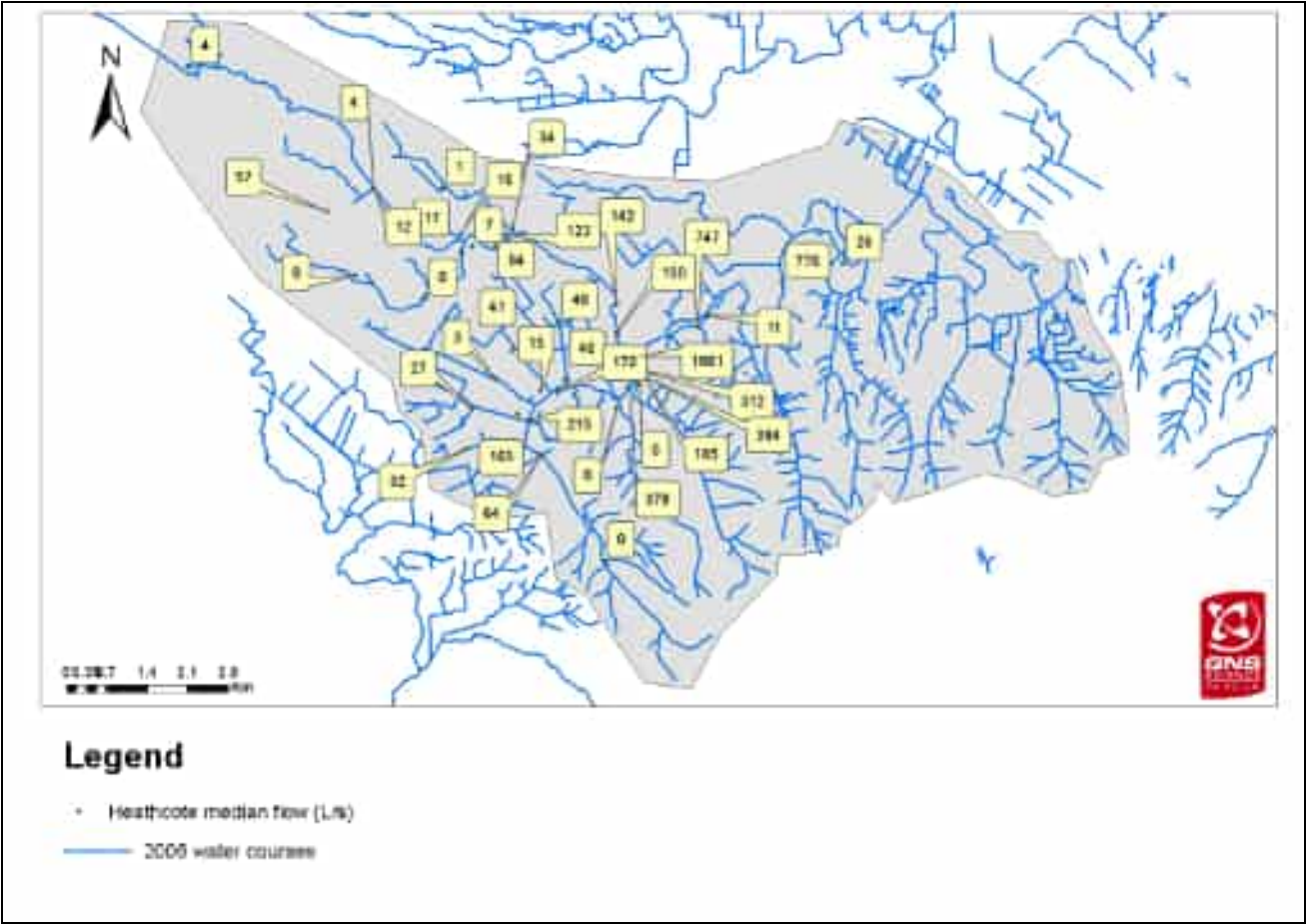


Figure 56. Selected median flow estimates in the Heathcote River catchment.

Confidential 2007

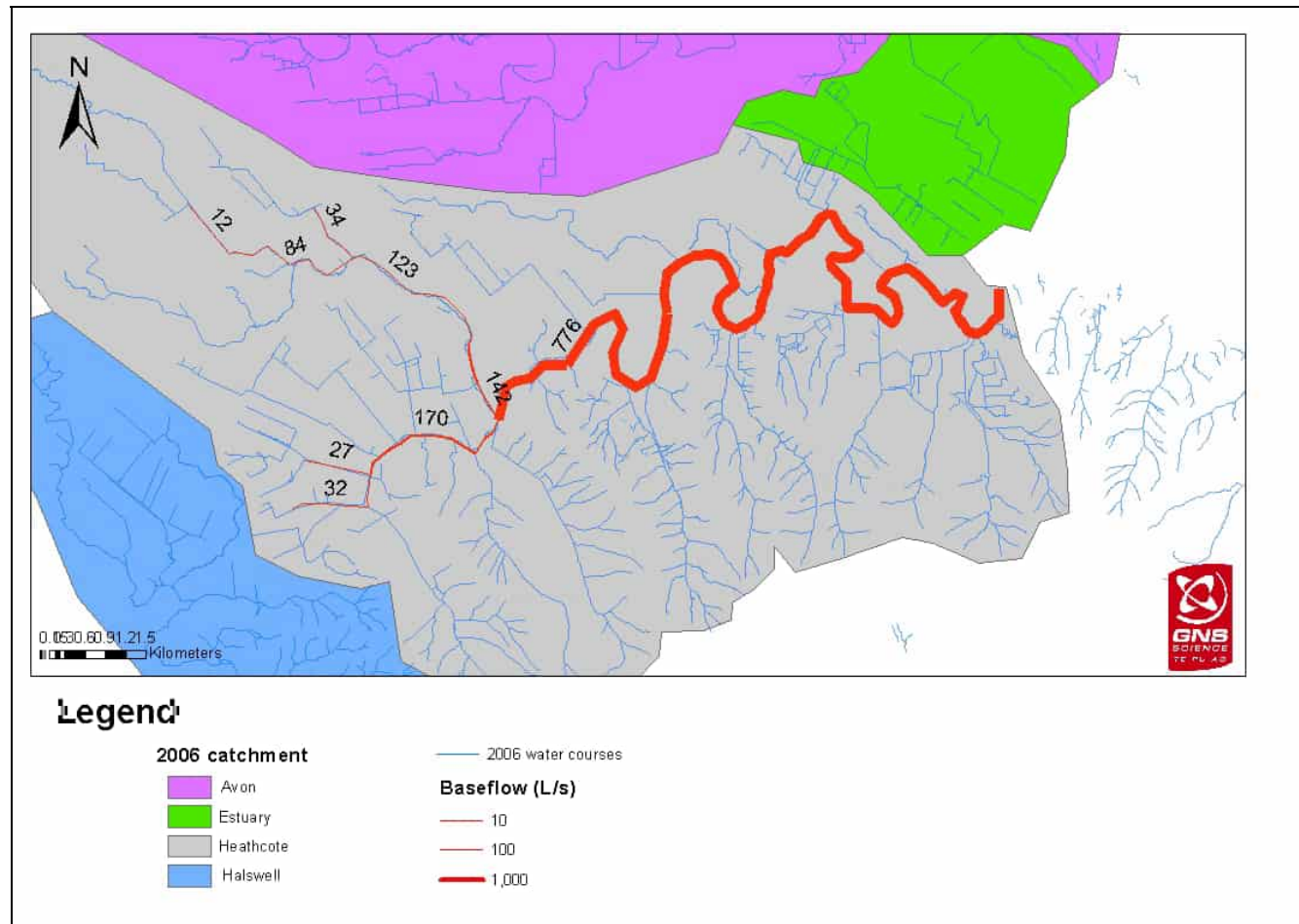


Figure 57. Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Heathcote River catchment.

Confidential 2007



Figure 58. All median flow estimates in the Halswell River catchment.

Confidential 2007

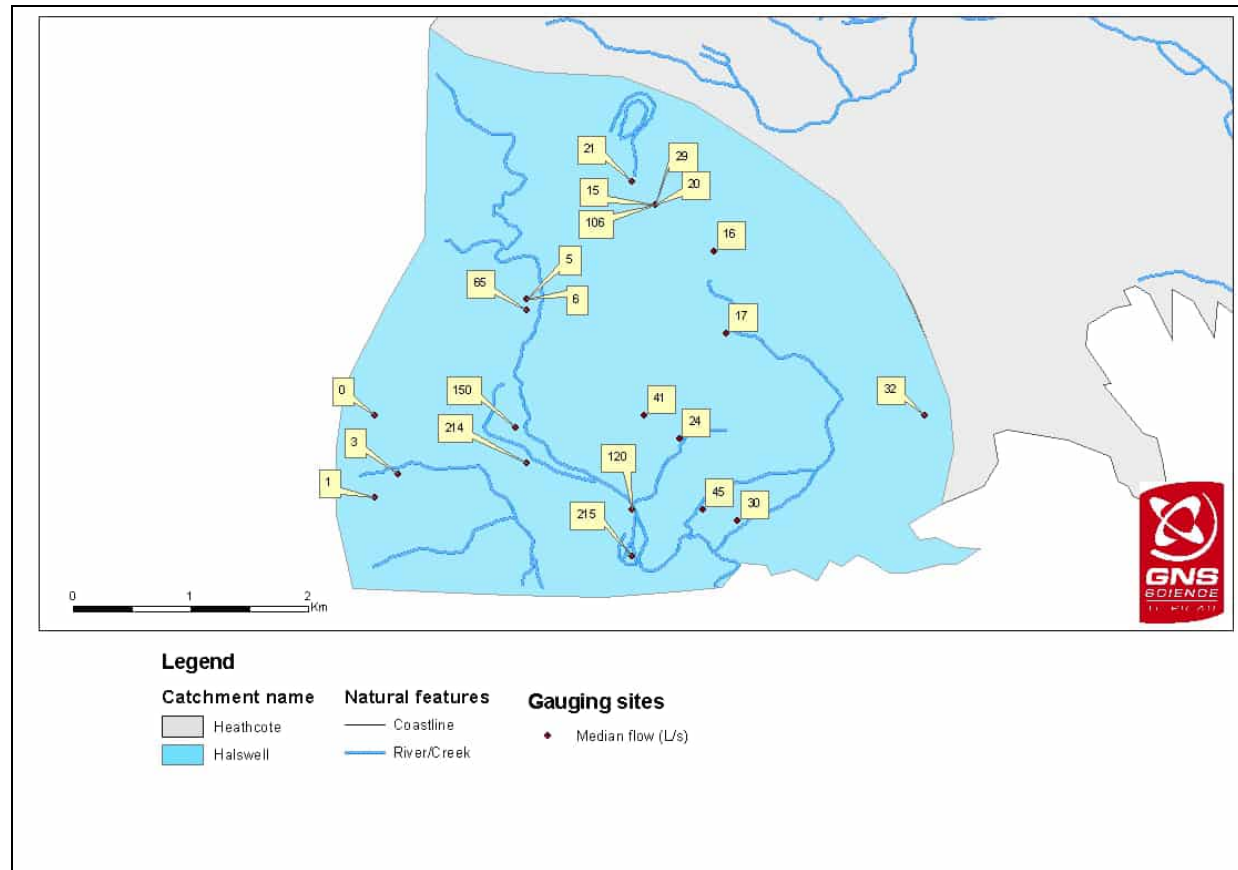


Figure 59. The 1856 Halswell catchment and streams with the median flow estimates.

Confidential 2007

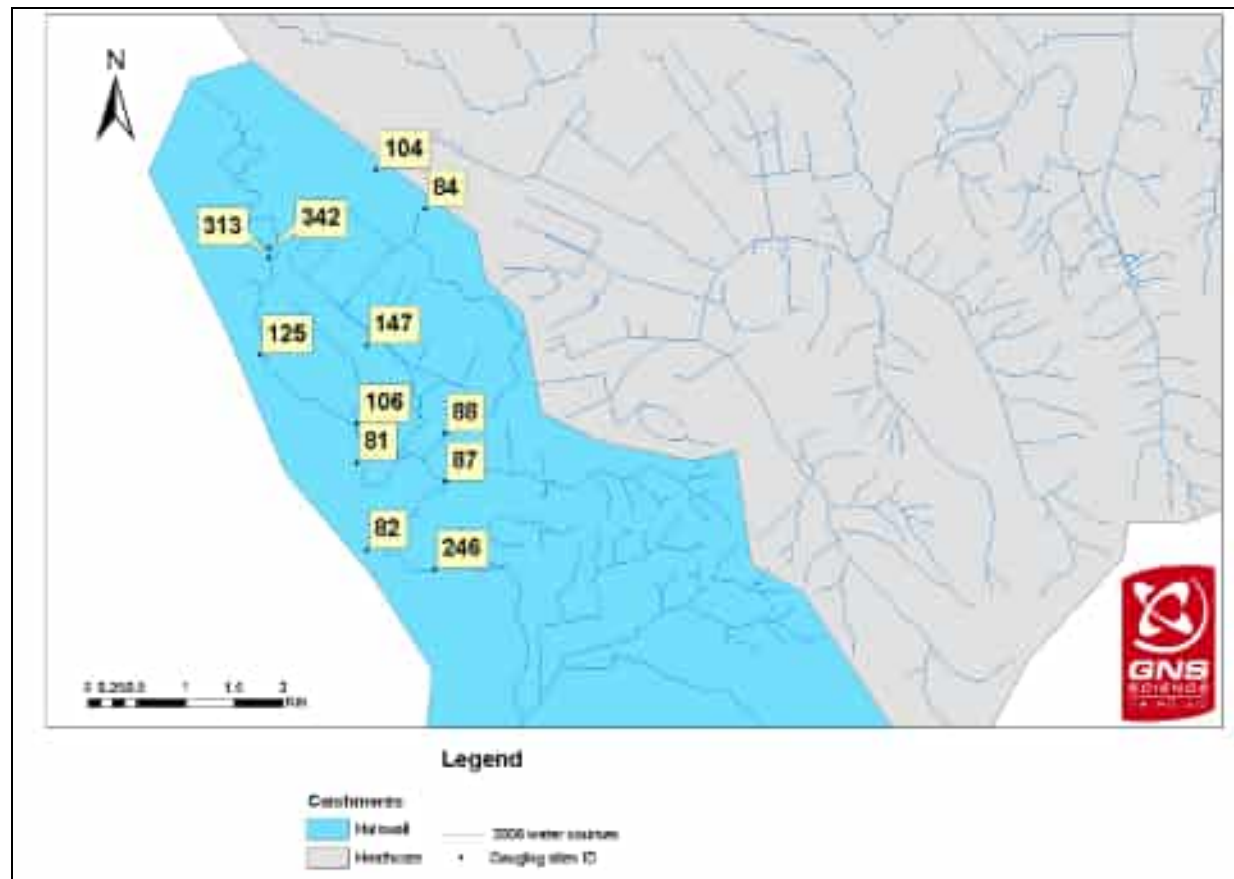


Figure 60. Site numbers used for the baseflow estimates in the Halswell River catchment.

Confidential 2007

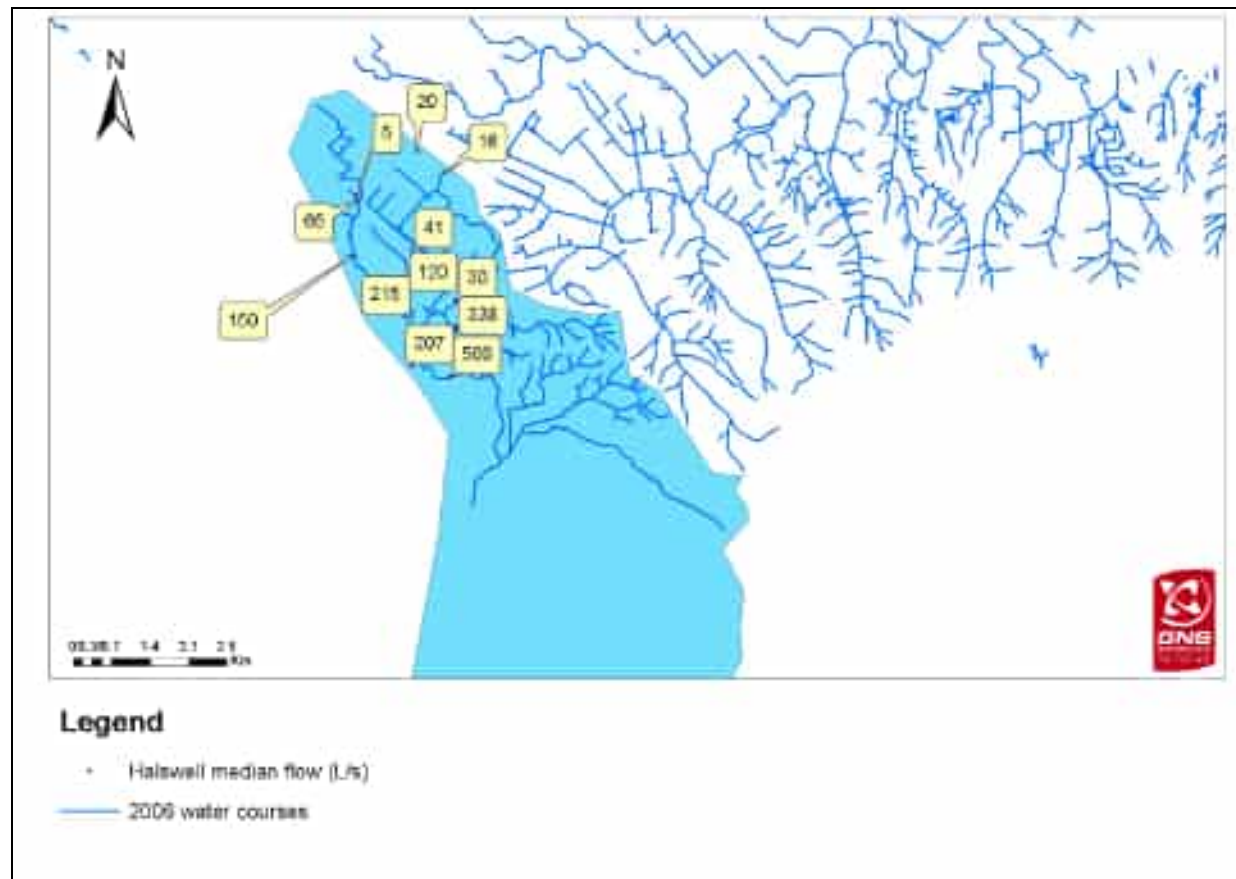


Figure 61. Selected median flow estimates in the Halswell River catchment.

Confidential 2007

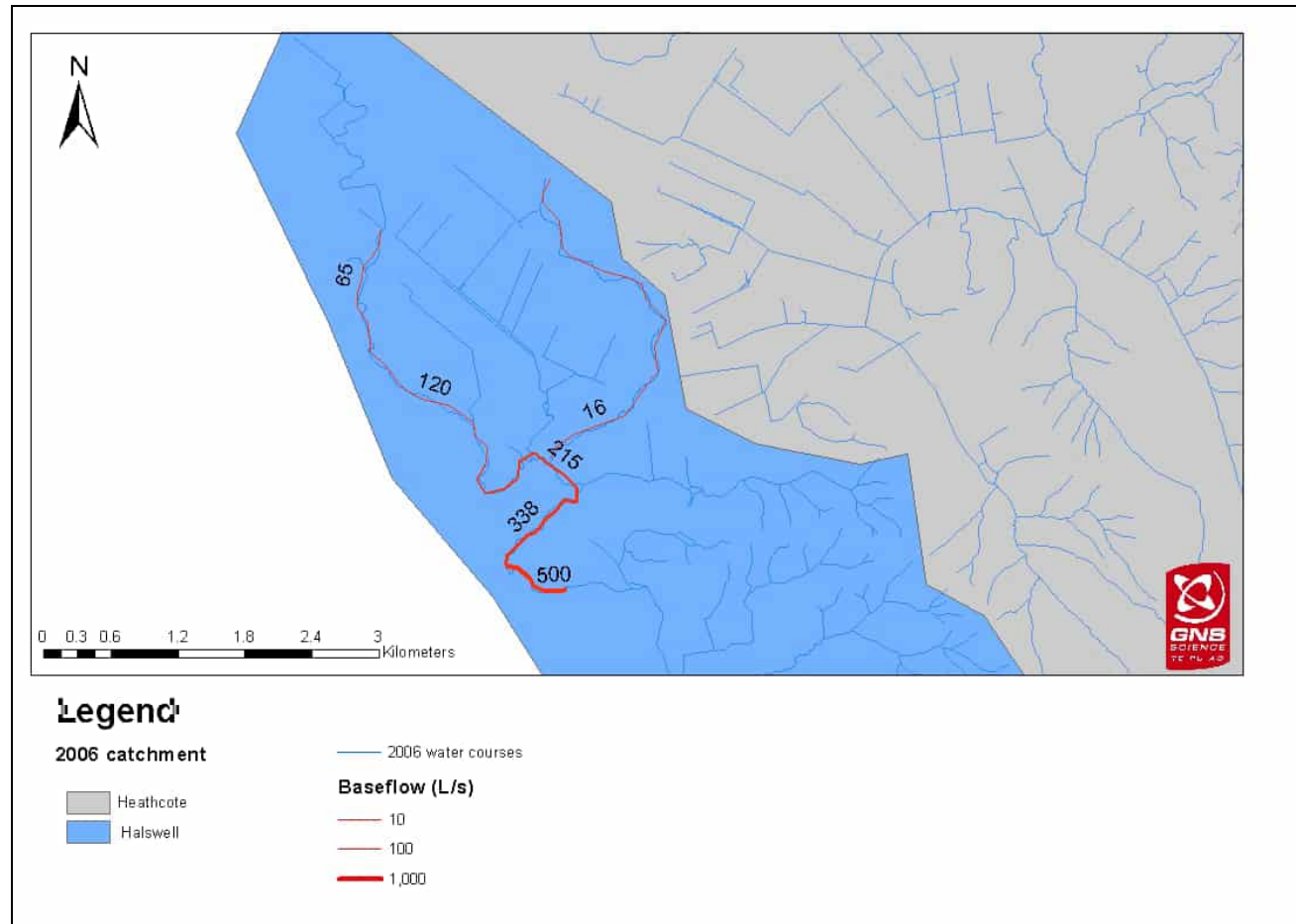


Figure 62. Estimated base flow (L/s) in the Halswell River catchment.

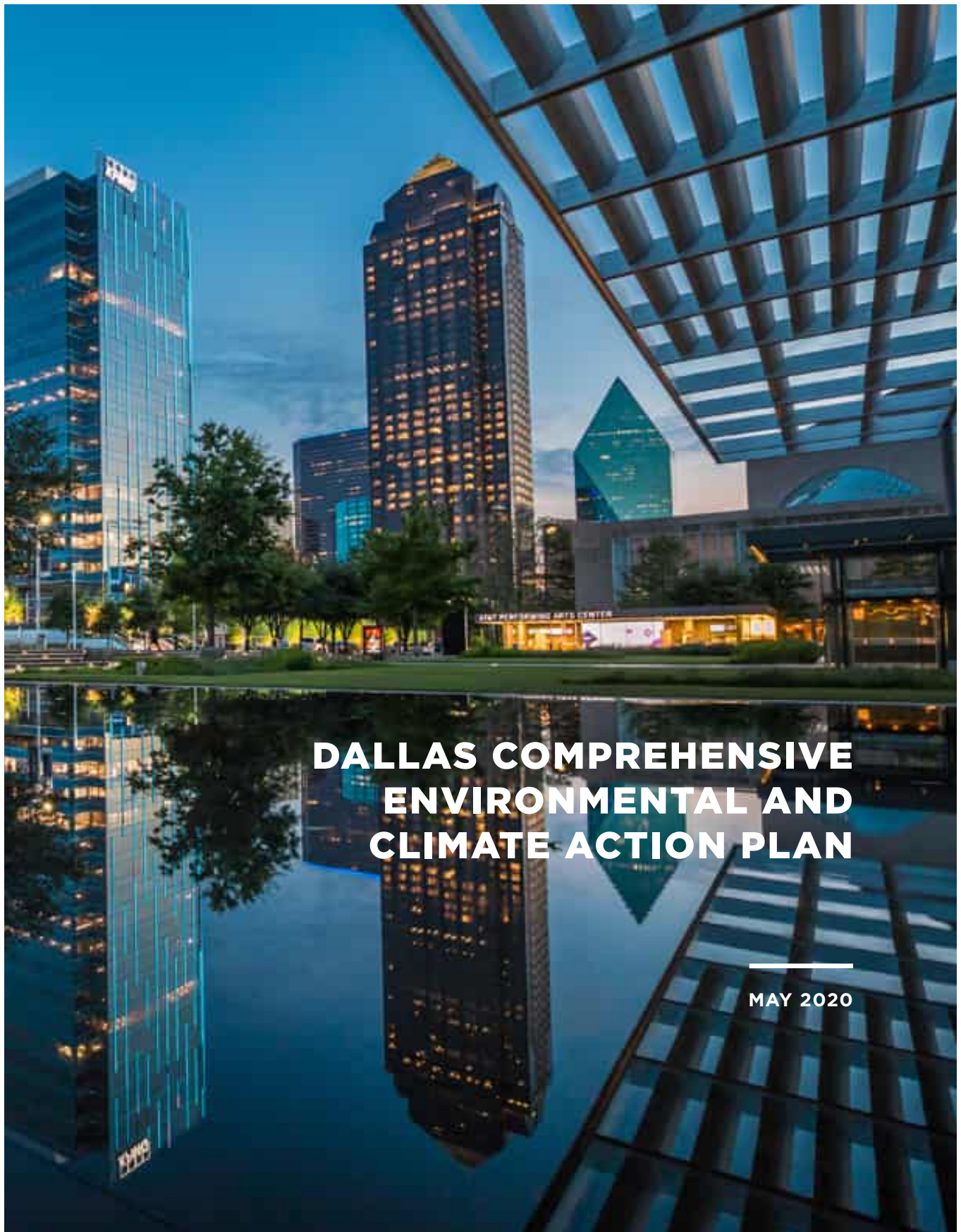
APPENDIX 1 MEDIAN FLOW ESTIMATES FROM ENVIRONMENT CANTERBURY AND CHRISTCHURCH CITY COUNCIL
GAUGING DATA

These data are sorted by catchment

ID	Source	River	2006 Catchment Name	Median flow estimate (L/s)	1856 Catchment Name	Site Name	Xcoordinate	Ycoordinate
81	ECAN	Halswell River	Halswell	215	Halswell	Sabys Road Bridge	2473600	5734400
82	ECAN	Knights Creek	Halswell	207	Outside	Jamiesons Property	2473700	5733500
84	ECAN	Nottingham Creek	Halswell	16	Halswell	Nottingham Avenue	2474300	5737000
87	ECAN	Halswell River	Halswell	338	Outside	Windy Corner	2474500	5734200
88	ECAN	Nottingham Creek	Halswell	30	Halswell	Candys Road Culvert	2474500	5734700
104	ECAN	Burkes Pit	Halswell	20	Halswell	Outlet	2473800	5737400
106	ECAN	Cases Drain	Halswell	120	Halswell	Coakleys Farm	2473600	5734800
125	ECAN	Knights Stream	Halswell	150	Halswell	Longstaffs Road Culvert	2472600	5735500
147	ECAN	Quaifes Drain	Halswell	41	Halswell	Quaifes Road	2473700	5735600
246	ECAN	Halswell River	Halswell	509	Outside	Leadleys Road	2474400	5733300
313	CCC	Halswell River	Halswell	65	Halswell	Quaifes Road-150m d/s	2472700	5736500
342	CCC	Marshs Road	Halswell	5	Halswell	Race at Knights Drain near Longstaffs Road	2472700	5736600
275	CCC	Bexley Drain	Estuary	0	Avon	Start of timber channel	2486600	5742600
283	CCC	Charlesworth Drain	Estuary	11	Outside	Outlet to Estuary	2486200	5739800
284	CCC	Charlesworth Drain	Estuary	0	Estuary	Dyers Road	2485700	5740500
285	CCC	Charlesworth Drain	Estuary	2	Estuary	30m d/s from Dyers Road	2485700	5740500
286	CCC	Charlesworth Drain	Estuary	0	Estuary	Branch parallel Dyers Road	2485700	5740400
291	CCC	City Outfall	Estuary	100	Estuary	Humphreys Drive	2486000	5739500
340	CCC	Lovetts Drain	Estuary	3	Outside	Outlet to Estuary	2486600	5739900
341	CCC	Lovetts Drain	Estuary	0	Estuary	Dyers Road	2485800	5740500
356	CCC	Northern Toe Drain	Estuary	14	Avon	Outlet to Estuary	2487600	5741800
402	CCC	Southern Toe Drain	Estuary	16	Estuary	Outlet to Estuary	2487000	5740200
27	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch Trib 7	OSB	563	Outside	Greywacke Road	2474800	5751400
30	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch Trib 7	OSB	638	Outside	G Banks Property	2475400	5749500
37	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch Tribs 1&2	OSB	685	Outside	G Banks Property	2476300	5750400
45	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch North Trib	OSB	1197	Outside	Hummarana Track	2477200	5750800
46	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch	OSB	2333	Outside	Upstream Recreation Lakes Intake	2477600	5750700
47	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch	OSB	2564	Outside	Groynes	2478100	5750600
60	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch Tributary	OSB	12	Outside	Darrochs Road	2479900	5751500
69	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch	OSB	3500	Outside	Waimakariri River Confluence	2481200	5754300
97	ECAN	Abbotts Creek	OSB	759	Outside	Upstream Sth Branch Confluence	2478600	5752200
100	ECAN	Bevins Stream	OSB	167	Outside	Sth Branch Confluence	2478900	5752100
132	ECAN	Isaacs Drain	OSB	195	Outside	Duck Pond	2473900	5748800
136	ECAN	Isaacs Drain	OSB	415	Outside	Shipleys	2474700	5749300
144	ECAN	Poulson Stream	OSB	90	Outside	Poulsons Farm	2477500	5750500
168	ECAN	Waimakariri Spring Fed Stream	OSB	40	Outside	Poulsons Farm	2477500	5750300
221	ECAN	Waimakariri Sth Branch	OSB	3105	Outside	Dickeys Road	2480300	5752300
228	ECAN	Okeover Stream	Avon	0	Avon	Downstream Dewatering Pipe	2476100	5742700
379	CCC	Riccarton Main Drain	Avon	2	Avon	Wharenui Road	2476500	5741600
274	CCC	Bexley Drain	Avon	2	Avon	Entrance to pipe	2486600	5742800
17	ECAN	Avon River Trib	Avon	5	Avon	72 Nortons Road	2474200	5742700
18	ECAN	Avon River Trib	Avon	5	Avon	Avonhead Road Bridge	2474500	5742700
273	CCC	Bexley Drain	Avon	5	Avon	Exit from pipe	2486700	5743000
243	ECAN	Wai-iti Stream	Avon	10	Avon	218 Clyde Road	2476800	5743800
21	ECAN	Waimairi Stream	Avon	11	Avon	Burnside Park	2474900	5744300
272	CCC	Bexley Drain	Avon	16	Avon	Culvert	2487000	5743000
305	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	16	Avon	Aylesford Street	2481700	5744400
231	ECAN	Addington Drain	Avon	17	Avon	Hagley Park	2479500	5741600
350	CCC	No 1 Drain	Avon	19	Avon	Horseshoe Lake Road	2483300	5745200
407	CCC	St Albans Creek	Avon	19	Avon	Innes Road	2479500	5744300
239	ECAN	Waimairi Stream	Avon	20	Avon	Coldstream Court	2476300	5743200
271	CCC	Bexley Drain	Avon	21	Avon	Bexley Road	2487500	5742600
107	ECAN	Chapmans Drain Diversion	Avon	23	Styx	Marshlands Road	2482400	5747600
238	ECAN	Waimairi Stream South Branch	Avon	33	Avon	Barlow Street	2476300	5743200
28	ECAN	Ilam Stream	Avon	34	Avon	Waimairi Road	2475500	5742600
302	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	36	Avon	Matsons Avenue	2477800	5745300
19	ECAN	Avon River Trib	Avon	39	Avon	Corfe Street Reserve	2474700	5742600
401	CCC	Snellings Drain	Avon	43	Avon	At Clare Park bridge	2484200	5746200
237	ECAN	Fendalton Drain	Avon	45	Avon	7 Royd Street	2477900	5742800
357	CCC	Okeover Stream (Clarkson Drain)	Avon	46	Avon	University of Canterbury	2476700	5742600
301	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	49	Avon	Blighs Road	2478500	5745200
235	ECAN	Okeover Stream	Avon	55	Avon	University of Canterbury	2476700	5742600

ID	Source	River	2006 Catchment Name	Median flow estimate (L/s)	1856 Catchment Name	Site Name	Xcoordinate	Ycoordinate
244	ECAN	Lake Outlet	Avon	56	Avon	Jellie Park	2476300	5744500
434	ECAN	Barbadoes Street Drain	Avon	62	Avon	Avon River tributary at Barbadoes Street drain – Cambridge Terrace	2481400	5742550
216	ECAN	Tyson's Drain (Christchurch)	Avon	65	Avon	Grassmere Street	2479500	5745800
300	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	65	Avon	Cranford Street	2480200	5745200
245	ECAN	Avon River	Avon	71	Avon	Ilam Road	2476000	5742600
232	ECAN	Riccarton Drain	Avon	73	Avon	Riccarton Avenue	2479000	5741700
365	CCC	Papanui Drain	Avon	74	Avon	Paparoa Street(opp end)	2479400	5745300
299	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	79	Avon	Philpotts Road	2480800	5745600
241	ECAN	Taylor's Drain (Christchurch)	Avon	80	Avon	Elmwood Park	2478400	5743700
380	CCC	Riccarton Main Drain	Avon	80	Avon	Riccarton Avenue	2479200	5741500
355	CCC	No 2 Drain	Avon	84	Avon	15m d/s of Old No2 Drain	2483400	5746500
242	ECAN	Wairarapa Stream	Avon	88	Avon	42 Gleneagles Terrace	2476700	5743700
353	CCC	No 2 Drain	Avon	102	Avon	Lake Terrace Road	2483500	5745800
139	ECAN	No.2 Drain	Avon	107	Avon	Mairehau Road	2483100	5746700
295	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	109	Avon	North Parade	2482600	5743700
378	CCC	Riccarton Main Drain	Avon	123	Avon	Dilworth Street	2478000	5741700
304	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	135	Avon	Paparoa Street below diversion	2478900	5745000
234	ECAN	Avon River	Avon	136	Avon	University of Canterbury	2476500	5742300
360	CCC	Old No2 Drain	Avon	151	Avon	Lake Terrace Road	2484000	5745800
351	CCC	No 2 Drain	Avon	158	Avon	North side Windsor Pony Club	2483500	5746500
359	CCC	Old No2 Drain	Avon	183	Avon	QE II Drive	2483400	5746300
358	CCC	Old No2 Drain	Avon	210	Avon	Horseshoe Lake	2484000	5745700
236	ECAN	Waimairi Stream	Avon	215	Avon	Daresbury Park	2478000	5742800
306	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	232	Avon	River Road	2483200	5743700
406	CCC	St Albans Creek	Avon	236	Avon	Slater Street	2482000	5743800
240	ECAN	Wairarapa Stream	Avon	343	Avon	Garden Road Bridge	2478300	5743300
429	CCC	Wairarapa Stream	Avon	355	Avon	Clyde Road	2476900	5743700
427	CCC	Wairarapa Stream	Avon	359	Avon	Idris Road	2478000	5743500
233	ECAN	Avon River	Avon	362	Avon	Harakeke Street Bridge	2478100	5742500
297	CCC	Dudley Creek	Avon	690	Avon	Crosby Street	2481600	5744600
423	CCC	Wairarapa Stream	Avon	839	Avon	Fendalton Road	2478300	5742900
227	ECAN	Avon River	Avon	1669	Avon	Gloucester Street Bridge (Recorder)	2480450	5741895
261	CCC	Avon River	Avon	2346	Avon	Bot. Gardens Footbridge	2479500	5741700
98	ECAN	Avon River	Avon	2500	Avon	Botanical Gardens Footbridge	2479400	5741600
260	CCC	Avon River	Avon	3666	Avon	Morris Street(east end)	2483500	5743400
55	ECAN	Styx River	Styx	832	Styx	SH1 Bridge	2479000	5748800
67	ECAN	Kaputone Creek	Styx	53	Styx	Factory Road	2480900	5751200
71	ECAN	Kaputone Creek	Styx	1780	Styx	Styx River Confluence	2482400	5749400
149	ECAN	Rhodes Main Drain	Styx	67	Avon	Hawkins Road Culvert	2481100	5748300
171	ECAN	Styx River	Styx	2860	Styx	Earlham Road Bridge	2485000	5754500
172	ECAN	Styx River	Styx	3300	Styx	Flood Gates	2484900	5756100
173	ECAN	Styx River South Branch	Styx	263	Styx	Gardiniers Road	2476700	5748800
174	ECAN	Styx River North Branch	Styx	123	Outside	Gardiniers Road	2476700	5749600
175	ECAN	Styx River	Styx	1595	Styx	Marshlands Road	2482200	5749300
176	ECAN	Styx River	Styx	2718	Styx	Spencerville Road Bridge	2484800	5753100
222	ECAN	Styx River	Styx	1379	Styx	Radcliffe Road (Recorder)	2481726	5749037
225	ECAN	Kaputone Creek	Styx	178	Styx	Belfast Road	2482100	5749800
277	CCC	Boundary Drain	Styx	33	Styx	Styx Mill Road	2478300	5748800
281	CCC	Horners Drain	Styx	154	Styx	Selkirk Road	2481400	5748500
326	CCC	Horners Drain	Styx	77	Avon	Prestons Road near Hawkins Road	2480900	5748000
327	CCC	Horners Drain	Styx	148	Avon	Prestons Road	2481100	5748000
329	CCC	Canal Reserve Drain	Styx	40	Styx	Hawkins Road	2481400	5748500
330	CCC	Horners Drain	Styx	85	Avon	Winters Road	2480400	5746500
337	CCC	Kaputone Stream	Styx	10	Styx	Main North Road	2479800	5750300
338	CCC	Kaputone Stream	Styx	181	Styx	Guthries Road	2482000	5751800
339	CCC	Kruzes Drain	Styx	13	Avon	Main North Road	2479000	5747100
374	CCC	Rhodes Main Drain	Styx	108	Styx	Hawkins Road	2481600	5748500
408	CCC	Styx Drain	Styx	87	Styx	Styx Mill Road	2478100	5748800
410	CCC	Styx River	Styx	4	Styx	Sawyers Arms Road	2476100	5747800
83	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	0	Heathcote	Wigram Road	2474200	5738600
91	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	0	Heathcote	Nash Road Bridge	2475400	5738200
206	ECAN	Cashmere Valley Drain	Heathcote	0	Heathcote	Holmcroft Cres	2479100	5736700
211	ECAN	Worsleys Valley Drain	Heathcote	0	Outside	Worsleys Road Culvert	2478700	5736300
229	ECAN	Hoon Hay Stream	Heathcote	0	Outside	Weir (Recorder)	2478482	5733676
249	ECAN	Curletts Drain	Heathcote	1	Heathcote	Curletts Road Culvert	2475700	5740100
208	ECAN	Dunbars Drain	Heathcote	3	Heathcote	Sparks Road	2476600	5736800

ID	Source	River	2006 Catchment Name	Median flow estimate (L/s)	1856 Catchment Name	Site Name	Xcoordinate	Ycoordinate
212	ECAN	Paparua Main Drain	Heathcote	4	Heathcote	Haytons Road Drain Confluence	2474500	5740100
280	CCC	Buchanans Road	Heathcote	4	Outside	near Gilbertthorpes Road	2471300	5742200
433	CCC	Wigram East Pond Outflow	Heathcote	7	Heathcote	at outlet structure	2476200	5739100
200	ECAN	Cashmere Drain	Heathcote	11	Heathcote	Heathcote River Confluence	2480300	5737900
86	ECAN	Haytons Road Drain	Heathcote	12	Heathcote	Carwreckers	2474500	5740100
94	ECAN	Hendersons Road Drain	Heathcote	15	Heathcote	Hendersons Road	2477400	5736600
315	CCC	Haytons Drain	Heathcote	16	Heathcote	Gauging weir	2476000	5739300
319	CCC	Heathcote River	Heathcote	17	Heathcote	at footbridge from Warren Cres	2476000	5739000
333	CCC	Jacksons Creek	Heathcote	26	Heathcote	Hawford Road	2482600	5738800
345	CCC	Milnes Drain	Heathcote	27	Heathcote	Sparks Road	2476200	5736300
207	ECAN	Cashmere Road Drain	Heathcote	32	Halswell	Sutherlands Road	2476100	5735600
109	ECAN	Curletts Road Drain	Heathcote	34	Heathcote	Heathcote River Confluence	2476900	5739400
269	CCC	Ballantines Drain	Heathcote	40	Heathcote	Sparks Road	2477700	5737800
92	ECAN	Hendersons Road Drain	Heathcote	41	Heathcote	Sparks Road	2476900	5737300
204	ECAN	Ballantines Drain	Heathcote	46	Heathcote	Cashmere Road	2477800	5736800
270	CCC	Barthers Road	Heathcote	57	Heathcote	Barthers Road crossing at Waterloo Road	2473700	5739700
325	CCC	Hoon Hay Valley Road Drain	Heathcote	64	Heathcote	Cashmere Road	2477400	5735500
318	CCC	Heathcote River	Heathcote	84	Heathcote	Warren Crescent (east end)	2476600	5739100
127	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	123	Heathcote	Downstream Curletts Road Drain	2476800	5739300
130	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	142	Heathcote	Sparks Road	2478700	5738100
195	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	150	Heathcote	Rose Street	2478700	5737600
93	ECAN	Milnes Drain	Heathcote	165	Heathcote	Hockings Farm	2477000	5736200
250	ECAN	Cashmere Stream	Heathcote	170	Heathcote	Hoon Hay Valley Road	2477700	5736600
209	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	185	Heathcote	Cashmere Stream Confluence	2479100	5737000
205	ECAN	Cashmere Stream	Heathcote	215	Heathcote	Milnes Drain Confluence	2477200	5736100
210	ECAN	Horotane Valley Stream	Heathcote	238	Heathcote	Butts Valley Road	2485500	5736800
95	ECAN	Cashmere Stream	Heathcote	312	Heathcote	Heathcote River Confluence	2479000	5737000
248	ECAN	Cashmere Stream	Heathcote	378	Heathcote	23 Waiau Street	2478920	5736670
282	CCC	Cashmere Stream	Heathcote	384	Heathcote	Cashmere Road	2479100	5736900
255	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	747	Outside	Barrington Street Bridge	2480100	5737700
230	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	776	Heathcote	Buxton Terrace (Recorder)	2481562	5738474
128	ECAN	Heathcote River	Heathcote	1061	Heathcote	Ferniehurst Street	2479100	5737200



THIS DOCUMENT
HAS BEEN DESIGNED
TO FACILITATE
ONLINE READING.

CLICK ON LINKS
INDICATED BY
Underlined Text
AND LOOK OUT FOR
THESE ARROWS
FOR GUIDANCE.

DALLAS COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN

MAY 2020

CONTACT
dallasclimateaction.com
DEQS@DallasClimateAction.com

PREPARED BY
AECOM, with the support of Arredondo, Zepeda & Brunz
and K Strategies in collaboration with the Office of
Environmental Quality & Sustainability, City of Dallas.

IMAGES
Cover photograph by Joseph Haubert.
All images not credited are either owned by the
City of Dallas or do not require attribution.



ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The City of Dallas would like to thank the many members of the public who participated in the planning process by offering their time, ideas, concerns, suggestions and support. A special thanks to the business, educational, finance, local, state and federal agencies; neighborhood, environmental, and social justice organizations who participated in the CECAP Stakeholder Advisory Committee (SAC).

Additionally, City staff members from over 20 departments served on the Environmental Planning Task Force (EPTF) to allow effective coordination of this plan with other related City efforts. The insights, suggestions and direction provided was critical to the development of the plan herein, and so, was greatly appreciated. The list of participants in the SAC and EPTF is provided in [Appendix A](#).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Executive Summary	Xii
Section 01 Background	1
Introduction.....	2
Timeline of City Environmental Initiatives.....	7
CECAP Development and Engagement Highlights.....	9
Environmental and Climate Challenges.....	11
Greenhouse Gas Emissions and Targets	21
Section 02 Goals, Objectives, Actions and Targets	34
Goal 1: Dallas’ buildings are energy-efficient and climate resilient.....	43
Goal 2: Dallas generates and uses renewable, reliable, and affordable energy	67
Goal 3: Dallas’ communities have access to sustainable, affordable, transportation options	83
Goal 4: Dallas is a zero waste community	105
Goal 5: Dallas protects its water resources and its communities from flooding, heat and drought	119
Goal 6: Dallas protects and enhances its ecosystems, trees and green spaces that in turn improve public health	135
Goal 7: All Dallas’ communities have access to healthy, local food	151
Goal 8: All Dallas’ communities breathe clean air	167
Section 03 Implementation and Monitoring	178
References.....	187
List of Figures.....	189
List of Tables.....	190
Glossary.....	190
Appendices	191
Appendix A: List of Stakeholders.....	191
Appendix B: Implementation Tables	192
Appendix C: Dallas’ GHG emissions.....	213

ACRONYMS

AMI	Area Medium Income
AVF	Alternative Fuel Vehicles
BOAT	Building Officials Association of Texas
BTU	British Thermal Units
C40	C40 International Climate Leadership Group
CAP	Climate Action Plan
CBCA	City-Business Climate Alliance
CCTV	Closed Circuit Television
CDR	Capacity, Demand and Reserves
CECAP	Comprehensive Environmental & Climate Action Plan
CLIDE	Celebrating Leadership in Development Excellence
CLM	Commercial Load Management Program
CNG	Compressed Natural Gas
CO₂	Carbon Dioxide
COPD	Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease
CRS	Community Rating System
CSA	Community Supported Agriculture
CURB	Climate Action for Urban Sustainability tool
DART	Dallas Area Rapid Transit
DCHHS	Dallas County Health & Human Services
DFW	Dallas-Fort Worth metropolitan area
DISD	Dallas Independent School District
DWU	Dallas Water Utilities
EEI	Environmental Education Initiative
EIA	US Energy Information Administration
ESCO	Electric Service Company

EPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
EPTF	Environmental Planning Task Force
ERCOT	Electric Reliability Council of Texas
EV	Electric Vehicle
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
GHG	Greenhouse Gases
GPC	Global Protocol for Community-Scale GHG Emission Inventories
GPCD	Gallons per Capita Daily
HERS	Home Energy Rating System
HOA	Homeowners Association
HOV	High Occupancy Vehicle
ICLEI	International Council for Local Environmental Initiatives
IECC	International Energy Conservation Code
IPCC	International Panel on Climate Change
ISA	International Society of Arboriculture
kW	Kilowatt
kWh/yr	Kilowatt hour per year
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LEED	Leader in Energy and Environmental Design
LIHEAP	Low Income Home Energy Assistance Program
MaaS	Mobility as a Service
MGD	Millions of Gallons Per Day
MT	Metric Tons of carbon dioxide equivalent per year (measure of GHG)
CO₂e/yr	
MwH	Megawatt hours

NAAQS	National Ambient Air Quality Standards
NCTCOG	North Central Texas Council of Governments
NFIP	National Flood Insurance Program
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NOAA	National Oceanic & Atmospheric Administration
NWS	National Weather Service
NOx	Nitrogen Oxides
NZE	Net Zero Energy
OEQS	Office of Environmental Quality & Sustainability
PACE	Property Assessed Clean Energy program
PFA s	Per- and poly-fluoroalkyl substances
PID	Public Improvement District
PM2.5	Particulate Matter at 2.5 micrometers
PM10	Particulate Matter at 10 micrometers
POC	People of Color
PUCT	Public Utility Commission of Texas
REC	Renewable Energy Credit
RECO	Residential Energy Conservation Ordinance
REPS	Renewable Energy Portfolio Standards
ROW	Right of Way
SAC	Stakeholder Advisory Committee
SMP	Strategic Mobility Plan
SNAP	Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program
SOV	Single Occupancy Vehicle

TCEQ	Texas Commission on Environmental Quality
TDEC	Delivery Technology Demonstration & Education Center
TERP	Texas Emissions Reduction Plan
TDM	Transportation Demand Management
TNC	Transportation Network Company
TNC	The Nature Conservancy
TOD	Transit Oriented Development
TTI	Texas A&M University Transportation Institute
TV	Television
TWDB	Texas Water Development Board
USACE	US Army Corps of Engineers
USDA	US Department of Agriculture
VOC	Volatile Organic Compound
VW	Volkswagen
WBCSD	World Business Council for Sustainable Development
WIC	Women, Infants & Children
WRI	World Resources Institute
ZNE	Zero Net Energy

VISION STATEMENT

**“DALLAS IS A LEADER IN
REDUCING EMISSIONS AND
ADDRESSING CLIMATE
AND ENVIRONMENTAL
RISK WITH EFFECTIVE,
EQUITABLE, AND COMMON-
SENSE SOLUTIONS.”**

LETTER FROM THE MAYOR
ERIC JOHNSON

Dallas is a dynamic and vibrant city that has always handled significant challenges with a collaborative approach and an indomitable spirit. And our city's problem-solving culture has been on full display as we have looked to address the effects of climate change. The City of Dallas released its first Comprehensive Environmental and Climate Action Plan (CECAP) on April 22, 2020 - the 50th anniversary of the first Earth Day - in recognition of the need for community-oriented and data-driven solutions to the environmental challenges we face as a city, a state, and a nation.

With equity and inclusion as core values, the CECAP proposes solutions that will improve our natural environment, our educational and economic outcomes, the affordability of our housing stock, and our transportation systems.

Through the goals and concrete actions outlined in the plan, Dallas can achieve significant and measurable reductions in carbon emissions, enhance environmental quality for our most vulnerable residents, and create a more sustainable infrastructure that can withstand the negative effects of climate change.



Our framework for this plan was based on equitable and inclusive community engagement. From the nascent stages of the CECAP's development, businesses worked closely with members of our city's environmental justice communities and public health sectors. I subsequently created the first Dallas City Council Environment and Sustainability Committee, which guided the CECAP to fruition. This process led to a balanced approach that addresses environmental issues while recognizing the city's economic needs and building on best practices currently in place among local businesses. As mayor, I have greatly appreciated the teamwork and dedication demonstrated by all those who worked on the CECAP, which incorporates the ambitious goals of the Paris Agreement and works to preserve the city that our children will inherit. This plan will help the City of Dallas continue to serve as a global leader in efforts to reduce emissions and improve our air quality. I look forward to working collaboratively on the CECAP's implementation to ensure Dallas continues to thrive in the decades to come.

STATEMENT FROM THE CHAIR OMAR NARVAEZ
ENVIRONMENT & SUSTAINABILITY COMMITTEE



Omar Narvaez (Chair)



Tannell Atkins (Vice Chair)



Paula Blackmon



Jennifer Staubach Gates



David Blewett

It is an honor to chair the City of Dallas' first-ever Environment & Sustainability Committee. When established in 2019, the top priorities of this committee were ensuring that Dallas is a global climate leader and creating and implementing the City's comprehensive environmental and climate action plan (CECAP). Since then, we have immersed ourselves in data, best practices, and community engagement to create the first CECAP for Dallas and our region. The CECAP is an innovative municipal policy framework meant to ensure a healthier and cleaner environment and allow Dallas to be a regional leader in addressing climate change.

The goals and actions in this groundbreaking document will build coalitions and strengthen communities while significantly reducing carbon emissions and improving the quality of life for residents.

I am proud that we have taken an equitable and inclusive approach, focusing on co-benefits of effective environmental and climate policies as well as the need for swift action. I am also appreciative of the time and effort put in by my colleagues Vice Chair Tannell Atkins, Councilmember Jennifer Staubach, Councilmember Paula Blackmon, and Councilmember David Blewett, in creating the CECAP.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

THE CHALLENGES:

Extreme heat and more frequent and severe storms

Dallas is already experiencing the impacts of climate change—from droughts and heatwaves to more frequent floods. By 2050, Dallas is likely to suffer **30 to 60 more days with temperatures over 100°F**. Of all U.S. states, Texas is estimated to have the highest increase in electricity demand by mid-century; heat-related labor productivity will decline across all sectors in Texas and will likely **cost the economy up to \$12.5 billion statewide each year**, with a 1-in-20 likelihood of costing more than \$19.6 billion annually.

Everyone will be affected but not everyone will be affected equally

Vulnerable populations are most at risk to the impacts of climate change due to existing social, economic and environmental barriers. Low income households are more likely to live in poor quality homes and less able to afford repairs and improvements after weather-related damage. Children and the elderly are at greater risk of illness during heatwaves because they are less able to regulate their body temperatures and are more sensitive to air quality excursions. **Extreme heat can cause or aggravate negative health impacts** including respiratory and cardiovascular disease, mental health challenges and loss of life.

Based on the Dallas’ 2015 Dallas’ greenhouse gas (GHG) inventory, 64% of emissions come from the buildings and energy sectors and 35% from the transportation sector

To avoid the worst impacts, communities across the planet need to limit the increase in global temperatures to below 1.5°C. To achieve this, the Intergovernmental Panel for Climate Change (IPCC) recommends reducing GHG to net zero by 2050. In meeting this target, **The City, residents and businesses will need to work together** to focus on addressing emissions from these three sectors.

SELECT ANY ICON
TO SKIP DIRECTLY
TO THAT GOAL

8 GOALS AND CORRESPONDING OBJECTIVES:



EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

CHALLENGES AND APPROACH

Dallas residents are familiar with Texas’ extreme weather—from flooding and storms, to heatwaves and drought. By 2050, Dallas is likely to experience a 5° F increase in mean temperature during summer months if global greenhouse gas emissions continue to increase. Climate models also predict a decrease in overall annual precipitation, and an increase in the frequency, intensity, and length of severe droughts. Over the next few decades, seasonal swings in weather will be extreme, with colder, wetter winters and hotter, dryer summers. Climate change will impact every part of daily life in Dallas. Climate change will also impact the sensitive urban ecosystem balances that provide food, water and habitat to plant, animal and human life. The Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas estimates that:

.....
“Severe weather events can have a substantial human and economic cost and are likely to have a negative impact on the region’s longer-term business prospects and migration trends.”
.....

Climate change will affect everyone, but not everyone will be affected equally—the effects of climate change will disproportionately impact communities with the least means to adapt, and who have been burdened with negative historic environmental impacts. These vulnerable communities are predominantly located in the southern and western sectors of Dallas. The City recognizes environmental injustices of the past and elevates solutions to address them, placing equity at the center of this effort towards a more resilient future.

The City of Dallas is committed to meeting the international emission reduction targets set by the Paris Agreement in 2016 and the goal to keep warming at or below 1.5 degrees Celsius. In 2017, Mayor Rawlings signed the Climate Mayors’ National Climate Agreement in support of the Paris Agreement. In 2019, Mayor Johnson re-affirmed the City’s ongoing commitment to protecting the community from the impacts of climate change and supporting measures to reduce GHG emissions.

DALLAS’ CONTRIBUTION TO GLOBAL EMISSIONS

The City prepared a 2015 communitywide GHG inventory to be used as the basis for emissions forecasting in the Comprehensive Environmental and Climate Action Plan (CECAP). The inventory outlines the volume and sources of GHG emissions within Dallas and serves as a reference point for appropriate emissions reduction pathways to achieve our targets.

The 2015 inventory was prepared according to the Global Protocol for Community Scale GHG Inventories (GPC), an internationally accepted protocol developed by the C40 Cities Climate Leadership Group (C40), the World Bank, ICLEI-Local Governments for Sustainability (ICLEI), and World Resources Institute (WRI). The inventory was based on calculations to estimate emissions using a combination of activity data and emissions factors. The results are expressed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (MT CO₂e), that allow emissions of different greenhouse gases to be compared as a single unit. Dallas’ 2015 emissions inventory totals 19,529,600 MT CO₂e/year, which is approximately 15 MT CO₂e per person per year. Buildings and energy form the largest contributor of GHG emissions in the city (64%), with transportation contributing most of the remainder (35%), meaning that local emissions reduction efforts will need to focus on these two sectors. The waste sector (including wastewater) is responsible for the remaining <1% of emissions.



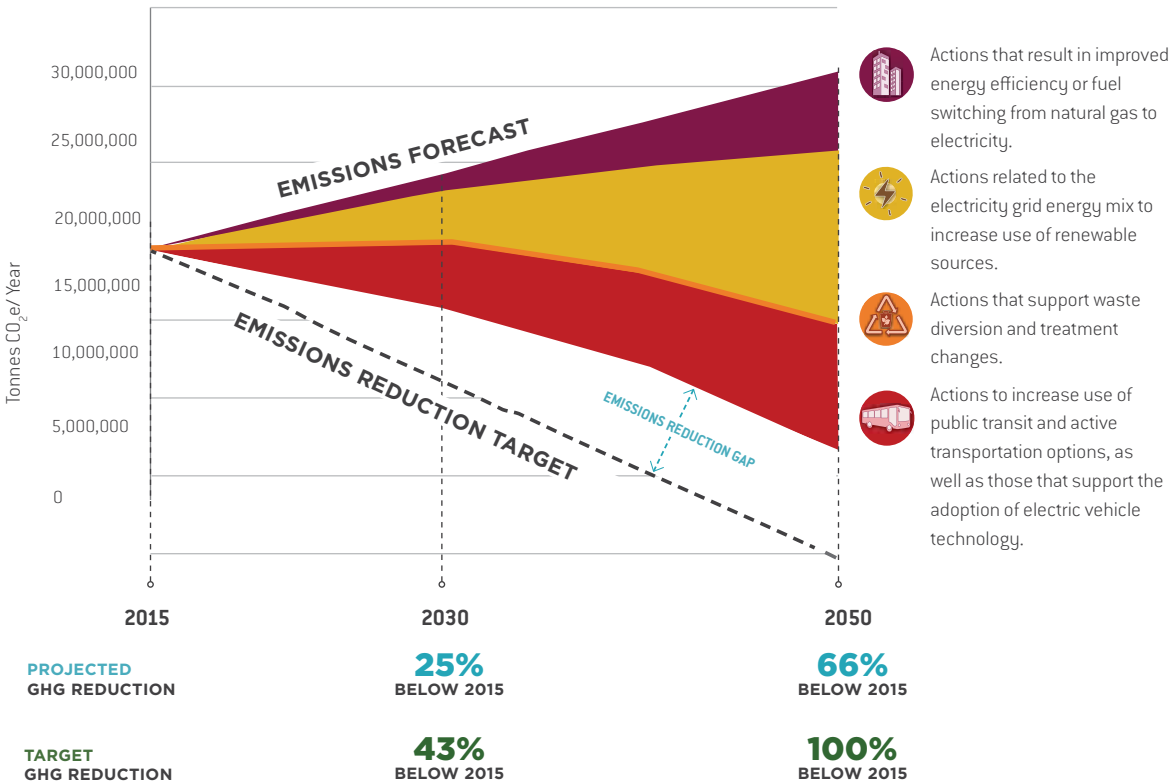


Figure i: GHG emissions forecast and reduction targets

Source: AECOM 2020

ACHIEVING OUR TARGETS

Consistent with other Texas cities and the goals of the Paris Climate Agreement, the City selected targets of reducing GHG emissions by 43% by the year 2030, and 100% by the Year 2050. The CECAP comprises 97 actions across eight sectors, of which 45 are aimed primarily at reducing GHG emissions. The GHG reduction estimates for the suite of actions in this plan were modeled using the CURB tool, which estimates GHG reductions from implementing technological approaches (e.g., switching from incandescent bulbs to LEDs, transitioning from gas-powered passenger vehicles to electric vehicles).

This modeling was based on assumptions about the fuel makeup of the electrical grid that is fueled primarily by natural gas and coal-fired power plants (2019 data) and current predictions of how the grid fuel mix will evolve between now and 2050 (based on ERCOT projections through 2030 and U.S. EIA projections through 2050). Because of this, the modeled actions within the CECAP are anticipated to achieve reductions of GHG emissions by 25% in 2030 and 66% by 2050, respectively. An adaptive management approach to implementation will be adopted, to allow adjustment of both the grid mix and the actions, as necessary to continue towards this important goal.

COMMUNITY OUTREACH AND ENGAGEMENT

The CECAP was developed by the City of Dallas in partnership with a broad and diverse community. Outreach efforts included formal community meetings held over several months across the City, over 180 individual meetings with community groups per their request, two surveys, campaigns on multiple social media platforms, and a website that facilitated public information sharing, input and transparency concerning this effort. Staff met one-on-one with over 6,000 people and attained over 9,000 individual comments and suggestions for the plan. More importantly, this input was received from every single zip code in Dallas.

Additionally, two stakeholder groups were convened to advise the City on outreach, vision, goals and objectives, and actions for the plan. Community members with a wide range of perspectives including public agencies, education, business, and social and environmental advocacy groups were convened as one Stakeholder Advisory Group. A separate Environmental Planning Task Force was convened of City staff from over 20 departments with roles in implementing the actions proposed in this plan.



230 CECAP EVENTS
6000+ COMMUNITY PARTICIPANTS
9000+ COMMUNITY SUGGESTIONS

THE COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN

In combination with public and stakeholder input, relevant best practices from peer and aspirational cities, and other international standards informed recommendations for the plan. To screen actions for the CECAP, equity considerations, relative costs, and both disadvantages and advantages of each action were evaluated. The CECAP is a comprehensive roadmap that outlines specific activities that the City plans to undertake to improve quality of life for all residents, to reduce greenhouse gas emissions, to prepare for the impacts of climate change, and to create a healthier and more prosperous community.

The suite of actions in the plan has been carefully selected to include mitigation, adaptation and environmental quality and justice activities to start Dallas on a positive path towards achieving carbon neutrality by 2050.

Actions were evaluated on their potential to deliver a range of co-benefits, including social equity, economic, health, mitigation, environmental quality and adaptation. The goals are ambitious, but actionable, and have defined metrics for success. Given this is Dallas' first climate action plan, and to encourage buy-in and broad participation of the CECAP from businesses and residents, the City has chosen a phased approach to implementation over time. The plan contains educational programs and incentives to inspire action and to allow time to build institutional capacity, develop public-private sector partnerships and build community support to create momentum for voluntary updates of actions while laying the groundwork for more impactful and transformational actions in the future.

The City will form a new Environment and Sustainability Advisory Committee to assist with implementation across all sectors and concerned departments. In addition, the City will continue to work with the Environmental and Sustainability Committee established by Mayor Johnson and with the Regional Climate Coalition. The City of Dallas recognizes the importance of the actions included in this CECAP and is dedicated towards timely and effective implementation. We will be relying on residents, businesses and institutions to work together towards this effort.



Figure ii: The intersection between mitigation, adaptation, and environmental quality

Source: AECOM 2020



Credit: 350Dallas

01
Background

COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN

01
INTRODUCTION

In January 2019 the Dallas City Council approved the Dallas Climate Resolution that directed staff to develop an effective, actionable climate plan. Per this resolution, the Comprehensive Environmental and Climate Action Plan (CECAP) is to build upon existing planning efforts, to benchmark against other U.S. city climate planning efforts, be generally consistent with national and international climate planning protocols, include a robust community engagement effort, and outline a series of actions to reduce greenhouse gas emissions, help the community adapt to a climatically different future, and comprehensively enhance environmental quality across Dallas. The CECAP is organized into three sections:

Section 01 outlines the purpose and approach of the CECAP, introduces Dallas’ climate and environmental challenges and outlines the potential impacts of current and future climate projections. This section discusses Dallas’ greenhouse gas emissions, forecasts, targets, and provides an estimate of the GHG reductions provided by the actions in this plan.

Section 02 summarizes the eight sector goals including buildings, energy, transportation, solid waste, water resources, ecosystems and green space, food and urban agriculture, and air quality. For each goal, a brief introduction is provided, outlining existing environmental issues and the impact(s) that climate change will have on the sector. Examples of current initiatives that address these issues are showcased, and suggestions for how residents and businesses can get help are provided. Finally, for each goal, actions developed in the planning process are listed with details.

Section 03 discusses how the plan will be implemented and highlights the City’s immediate next steps.

The CECAP is a comprehensive roadmap that outlines the activities that the City will undertake to improve quality of life, to reduce greenhouse gas emissions, to prepare for the impacts of climate change, and to create a healthier and more prosperous community. It builds upon our understanding of future impacts from climate change, other environmental challenges facing Dallas, and the data from the 2015 City of Dallas greenhouse gas inventory. The CECAP leverages existing efforts by the City and builds upon an active public outreach and engagement effort to solicit input from businesses, community organizations, residents, and stakeholders, to create an effective and equitable Dallas plan that everyone can implement.

.....
In 2017, former Mayor Michael Rawlings signed the U.S. Climate Mayors pledge along with six other Texas mayors to meet the international emissions reduction targets set by the Paris Agreement.
.....

Upon election in 2019, Mayor Eric Johnson reiterated the City of Dallas' commitment towards leadership in efforts to reduce emissions and improve air quality in Dallas. He also directed staff to build upon collective efforts and to focus on common sense, data-driven solutions to ensure that Dallas continues to thrive in the decades to come. The City of Dallas has committed to achieving carbon neutrality by 2050, joining some of the most ambitious US cities towards addressing climate change. The CECAP meets one Paris Agreement goal of having a Climate Plan in place by 2020. While this is the first climate action plan that the City has developed, the plan is founded upon decades of City of Dallas planning and environmental leadership, and comprehensively builds upon ongoing actions compiled from over 20 existing planning documents. A list of these baseline documents is included on **p.35-36**.

The CECAP directly follows the [Resilient Dallas Plan](#), completed in 2018 under a grant from the Rockefeller Foundation, that enabled the initial data compilation critical to the timely development of the CECAP. The Resilient Dallas Plan identifies seven different goals to build community resiliency towards handling social, economic, and environmental shocks and stressors. The CECAP forms the logical next step towards building resilience for the environmental reality posed by a changing climate, and the potential impacts this may have on the community fabric.

Two primary goals from the Resilient Dallas Plan that provide direction for the CECAP are:

Goals from Resilient Dallas:

GOAL 6
INVEST IN NEIGHBORHOOD INFRASTRUCTURE TO REVITALIZE HISTORICALLY UNDERSERVED NEIGHBORHOODS

- *Recognize and institutionalize the need for a multi-pronged, coordinated, place-based approach and the long-term commitment necessary to achieve holistic revitalization in low- and moderate-income neighborhoods.*

GOAL 7
PROMOTE ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY TO IMPROVE PUBLIC HEALTH AND ALLEVIATE ADVERSE ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- *Support and leverage the leadership of academic institutions, nonprofit organizations, and philanthropic foundations working to fill science and data gaps to bring best practices to Dallas and North Texas.*
- *Promote partnership efforts to implement green infrastructure projects in neighborhoods disproportionately vulnerable to the impacts of the urban heat island effect, poor water quality, and poor air quality.*

Resilient Dallas Strategy
(City of Dallas, 2019)

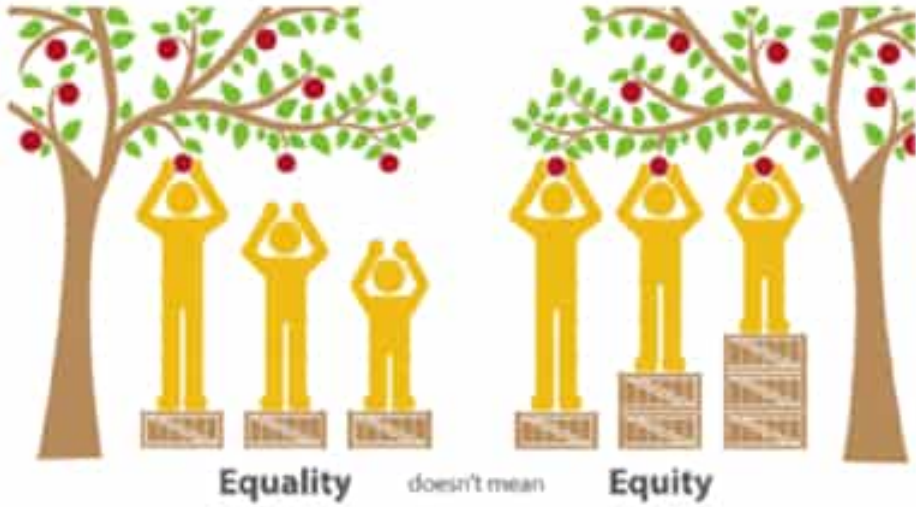


Figure 1: Equality versus Equity
Source: Office of Health Equity, Maine 2016

Equality and equity are often used interchangeably, but equity and equality do not mean the same thing. Equality is about sameness—meaning that everyone receives the same thing regardless of any other factors. However, equality is only useful if everyone starts from the same place, which is often not the case. Lower income populations and communities of color often have less access to adequate and energy efficient housing, transit, or safe bicycling and walking routes.

Equity, on the other hand, is about fairness, which is about ensuring that people have access to the same opportunities and have what they need to thrive and succeed. Equity is needed before equality can be reached. This understanding recognizes that people may have different starting points and may need different types and levels of support to flourish.

[Guide to Equitable, Community-Driven Climate Preparedness Planning](#)
(The Urban Sustainability Directors Network, 2019)

AN EQUITABLE APPROACH TO CLIMATE ACTION

Climate change will affect everyone, but not everyone will be affected equally—the effects of climate change will disproportionately impact communities with the least means to adapt, and who have been burdened with negative environmental impacts due to institutionalized discriminatory practices.

The CECAP recognizes the environmental injustices of the past and elevates solutions to address them, thereby placing justice at the center of this effort towards a more resilient and equitable future. The CECAP builds on previous City efforts to engender equity through actions that address both environmental quality and justice. The principles of equity shaped the development of the plan’s vision, the engagement process, the development of actions, and will influence plan implementation.

Community engagement efforts focused on increasing access to information for communities that have not historically been engaged in planning processes, while also providing a range of opportunities for a broad audience to provide input. This was done by bringing information to people, rather than solely relying on residents’ availability during formal CECAP meetings (although those were an option, too). The information was delivered in various formats—at in-person events, and online through live-streamed meetings and social media. Neighborhoods of southern and western Dallas were prioritized, and participation was encouraged, both directly and through partnerships with trusted community partners. The City will continue to work with vulnerable neighborhoods through implementation to ensure the CECAP efforts lead to equitable outcomes.

The CECAP Stakeholder Advisory Committee (SAC) was convened to reflect a diverse group of voices including representatives of public health, education, environmental justice, housing, neighborhoods, public agencies, and large and small business organizations. A full list of participating organizations is provided in [Appendix A](#). During implementation of outreach and engagement, a SAC community engagement sub-committee was formed to help re-focus the outreach and engagement methods, materials and implementation to improve engagement. **Figures 2 and 3** illustrates participation in the community engagement process across the city. As shown, meetings were held throughout the city, and plan input was provided by residents from all Dallas zip codes.

PLAN PROCESSS

The focus areas, goals, objectives, and actions included in this plan were shaped by two formal rounds of community input, numerous informal meetings at community request, City staff and stakeholder input, relevant best practices from peer and aspirational cities, and other international standards. To develop actions for the CECAP, the disadvantages (exposure to harm), advantages (access to opportunity) and equity considerations of each action were assessed. Actions were evaluated on their potential to deliver a range of co-benefits, including social equity, economic, health, mitigation, environmental quality, and adaptation.

During implementation, programs and initiatives described in the actions may be initiated through pilot programs, to focus on vulnerable communities or communities most affected by environmental challenges. Performance will be evaluated based on metrics, to include new and existing equity indicators developed for the City of Dallas.

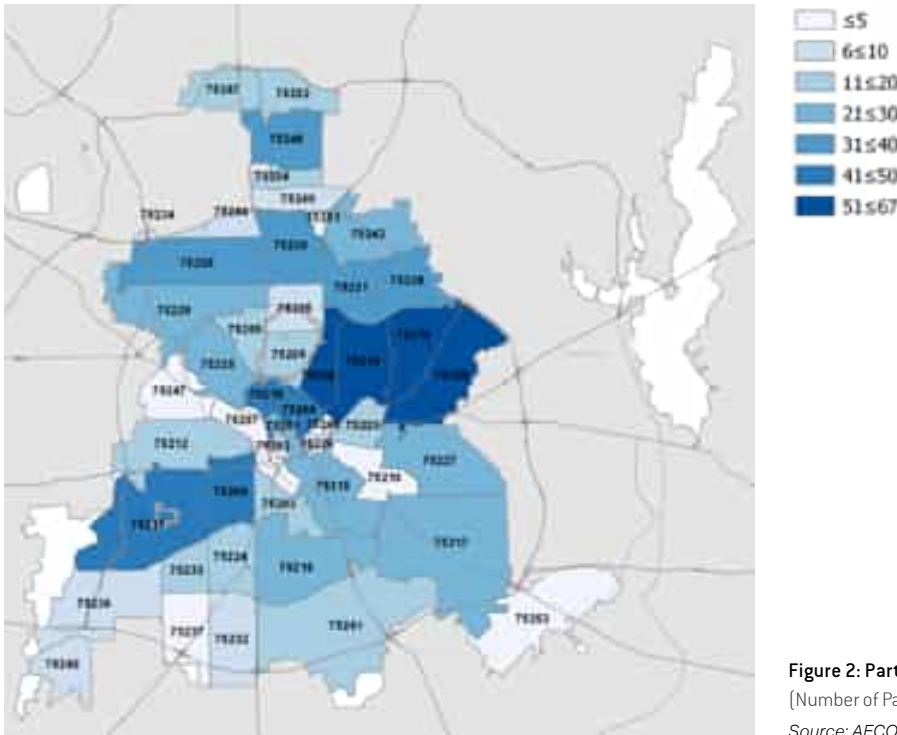


Figure 2: Participation by zip code
[Number of Participants Spring 2019]
Source: AECOM 2020

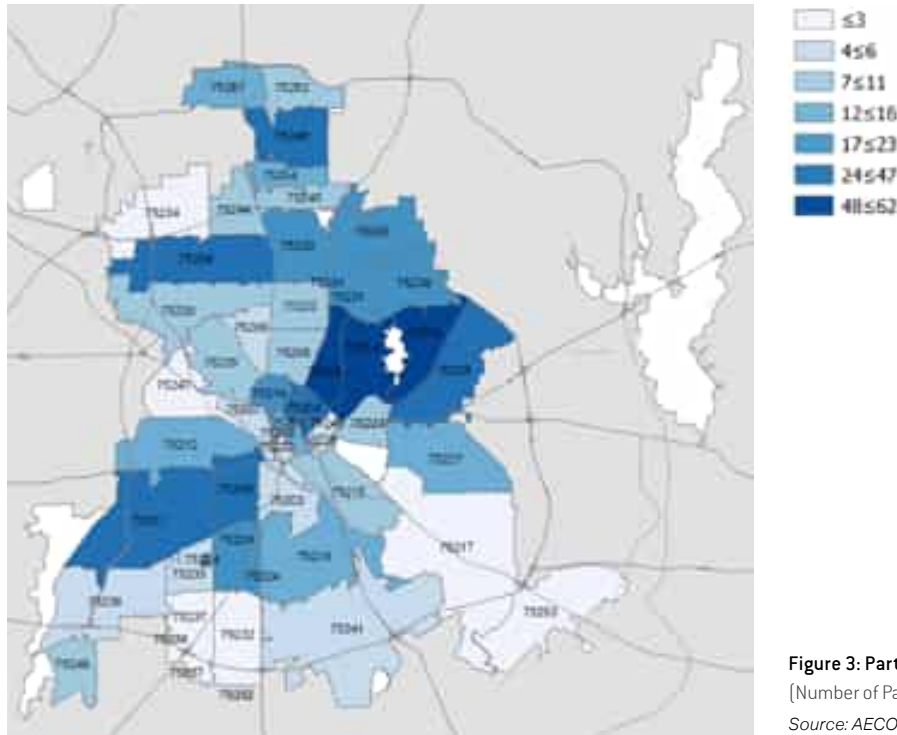
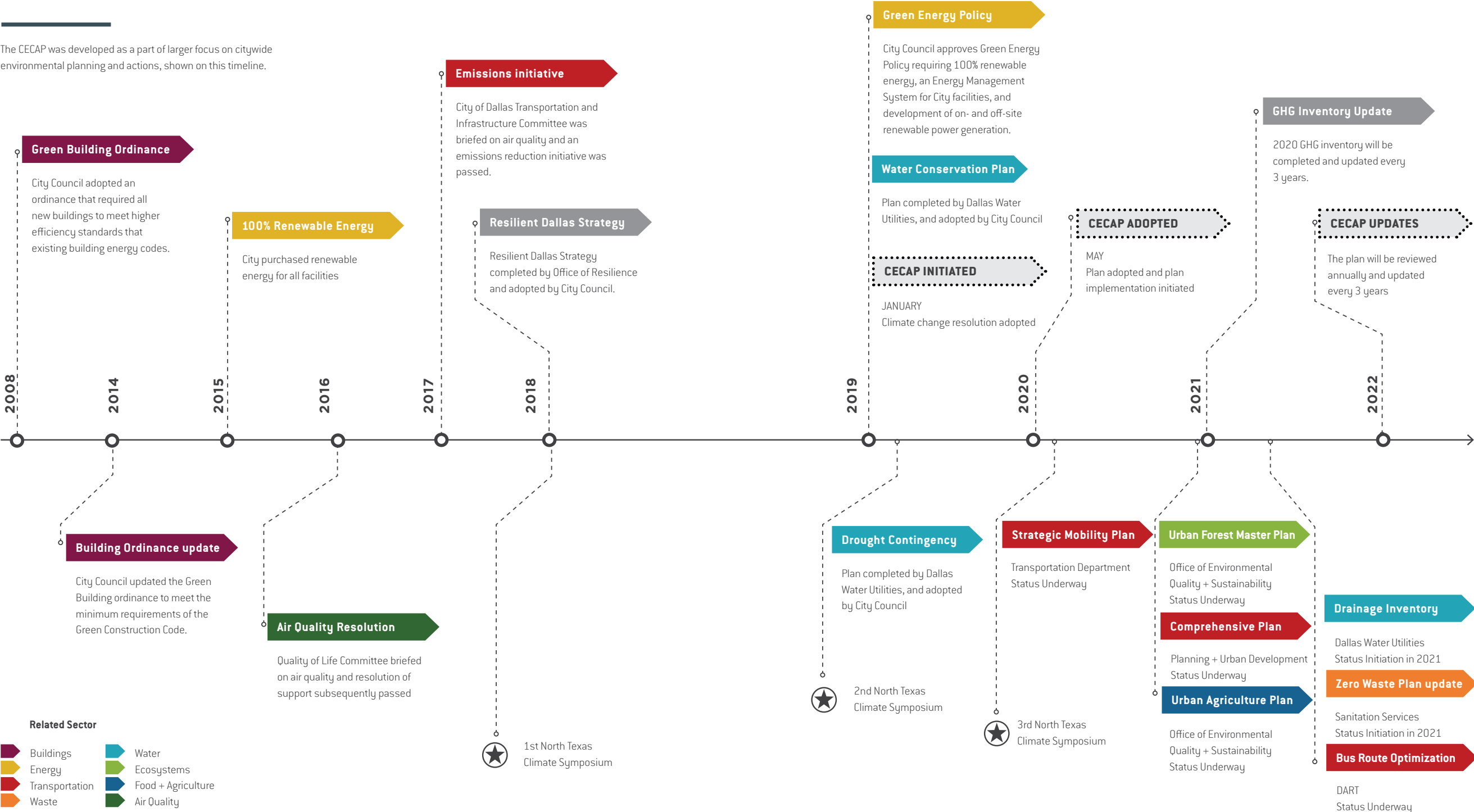


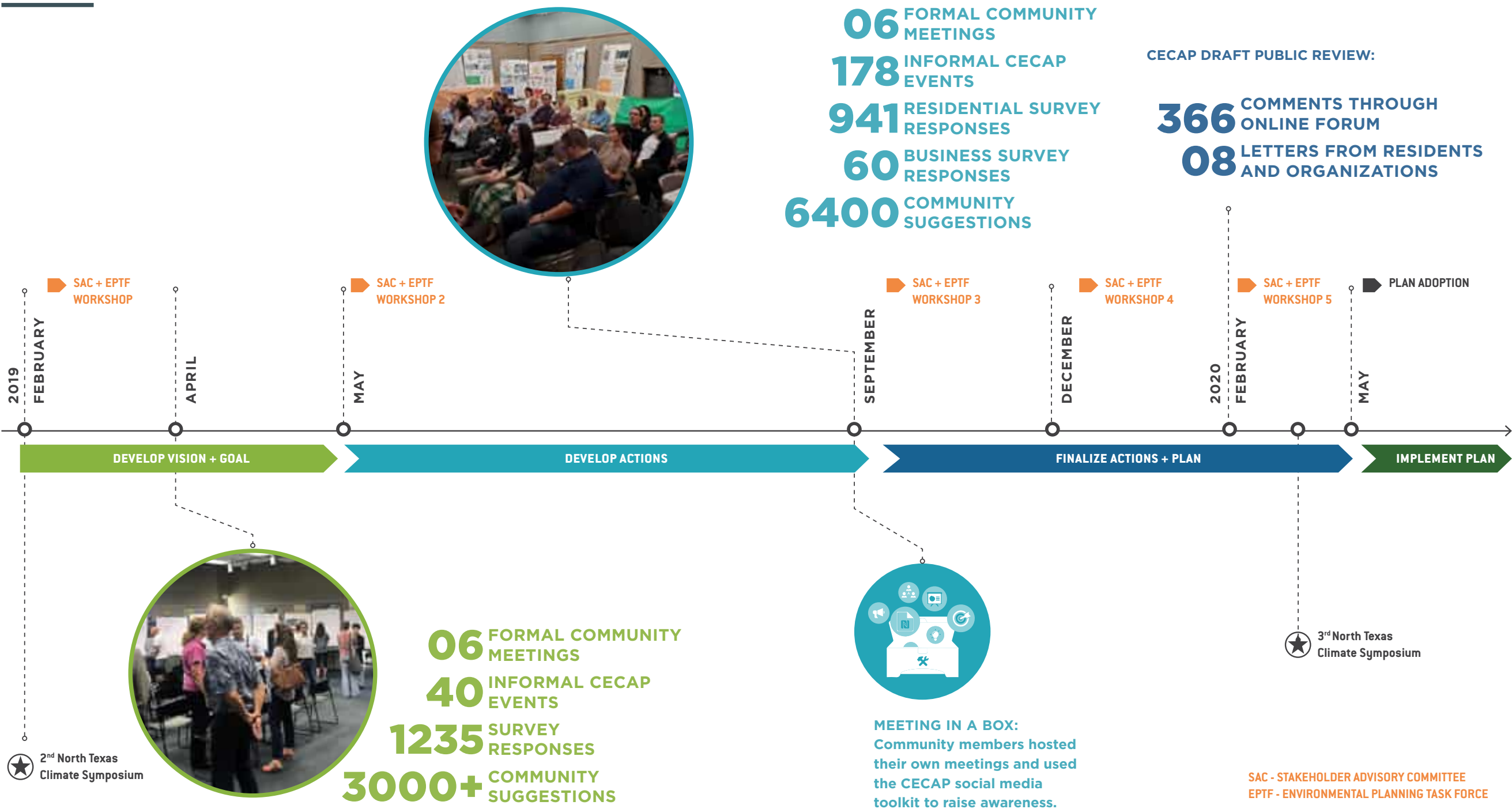
Figure 3: Participation by zip code
[Number of Participants Fall 2019]
Source: AECOM 2020

TIMELINE OF CITY ENVIRONMENTAL INITIATIVES

The CECAP was developed as a part of larger focus on citywide environmental planning and actions, shown on this timeline.



CECAP DEVELOPMENT + ENGAGEMENT HIGHLIGHTS



01

ENVIRONMENTAL + CLIMATE CHALLENGES

OUR CHANGING CLIMATE

Dallas residents are familiar with Texas' extreme weather—from storms and flooding to heatwaves and drought. Climate change is expected to exacerbate the currently variable conditions. Following the catastrophic 2015 impacts of unprecedented month-long heavy rainfall in the Upper Trinity River basin, 2016 flooding in the Hill Country, and 2017 Hurricane Harvey along the Texas Coast,

the Texas Governor's Office implemented a task force to review flood conditions, and to provide recommendations for how to "future proof" the state.

Figure 4 is from the Governor's task force report and illustrates the concern posed by increased flood losses in areas located outside of the regulated floodplain (illustrating just how much it is flooding in areas that are not anticipated to be flood prone). This graph shows a marked increase in unexpected flooding in the period from 1986 to 2014.

As part of the Southern Great Plains region outlined in Chapter 23 of the National Climate Assessment¹ Texas is anticipated to experience wide extremes in weather. By 2050, Dallas is likely to experience a 5°F increase in mean temperature during summer months, especially if global greenhouse gas emissions continue to increase. In climate models, this is referred to as the "high emissions scenario." Temperatures during the summer are already frequently over 100°F, and by the middle of this century, Dallas is likely to experience 30-60 more days over 100°F. These heat waves will be more frequent, hotter, and longer than the previous historic heat events. Not only does this pose a health threat by heat stroke and other heat-related illnesses, but it also creates stagnant air conditions, resulting in poor air quality, an issue already impacting parts of Dallas.

In cities, this heat can be exacerbated through the urban heat island effect, which develops in urban or metropolitan areas due to impermeable, dry, dark surfaces such as roads and buildings. Dallas' urban heat island is increasing at the second highest rate in the nation (second to Phoenix). The urban heat island effect is strongest in areas with few trees or green spaces such as downtown, along the I-35 corridor in the northeast, and between the Trinity River Greenbelt and I-30.

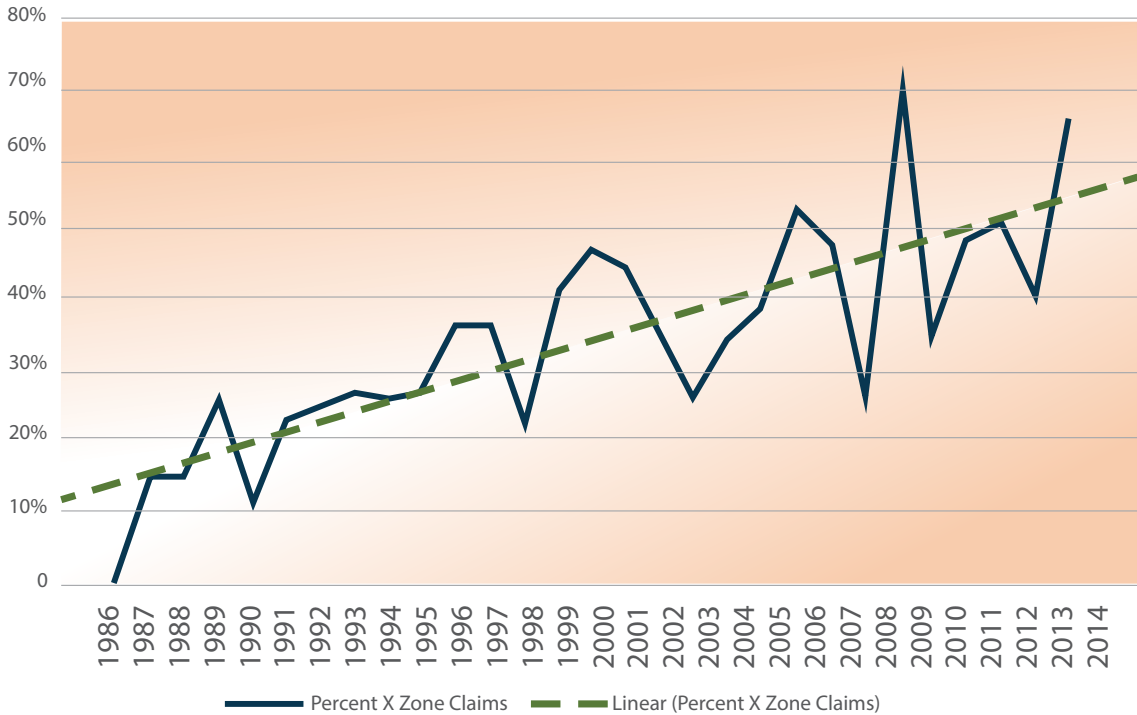


Figure 4: Share of total insured flood losses outside Texas floodplains
[X Zone claims are those that occur outside of the regulatory floodplain]
Source: Texas Governor's Task Force 2018

Climate models also predict a decrease in overall annual precipitation and an increase in the frequency, intensity, and length of severe droughts. Over the next few decades, seasonal swings in weather will be extreme, with colder, wetter winters and hotter, dryer summers. Most of the rainfall will occur during the spring in heavy precipitation events, which could cause increased flooding.

Climate change will impact every part of daily life in Dallas. Key impacts on people, the environment and the economy are highlighted on the following pages, and specific impacts on key infrastructure sectors such as buildings, energy, and transportation are described later in the plan alongside actions that are being proposed for addressing those impacts.



IMPACTS ON PEOPLE

Vulnerable populations are most at risk to the impacts of climate change due to existing social and economic barriers and sensitivity to environmental hazards. Factors that increase climate vulnerability include income, living conditions, age, location, occupation, health and language barriers.² Low income households are more likely to live in poor-quality homes and less able to afford improvements after weather-related damage. Children and the elderly are at greater risk of illness during heatwaves because they are less able to regulate their body temperatures and are more sensitive to changes in air quality, which worsens with the rise in temperature.

Figures 5 to 8 show census blocks in Dallas with higher concentrations of low-income communities, communities of color, elderly residents, and children. There is a substantial overlap between low income communities and communities of color in Dallas due to sustained, historic underinvestment in these neighborhoods. These communities are primarily in the southern and western sectors of Dallas.

Extreme heat can cause negative health impacts and aggravate existing conditions including respiratory and cardiovascular disease, mental health challenges, and loss of life. During May to September 2011, there were 112 heat-related deaths in Dallas.³ Severe weather events also pose a risk to healthcare facilities. During the aftermath of Hurricane Harvey, 15 hospitals had to evacuate their patients due to power outages and suffered shortages of medication after deliveries could not be made.

Figures 9 to 12 (overleaf) illustrate vulnerable communities at risk to increased heat and flood.

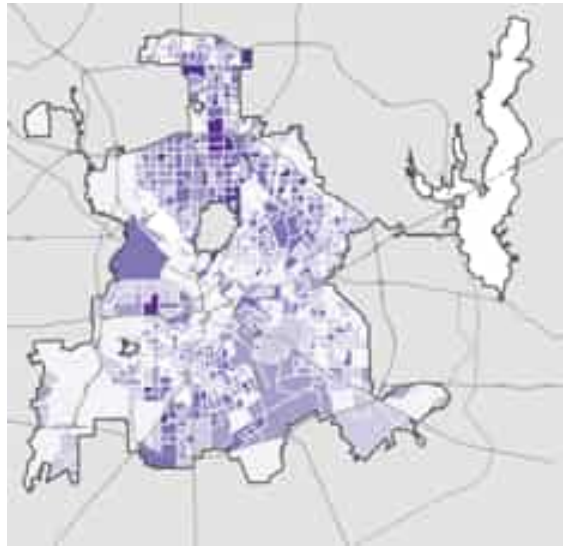


Figure 5: Elderly
(Percent of population age 65 or older by census block)
Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018

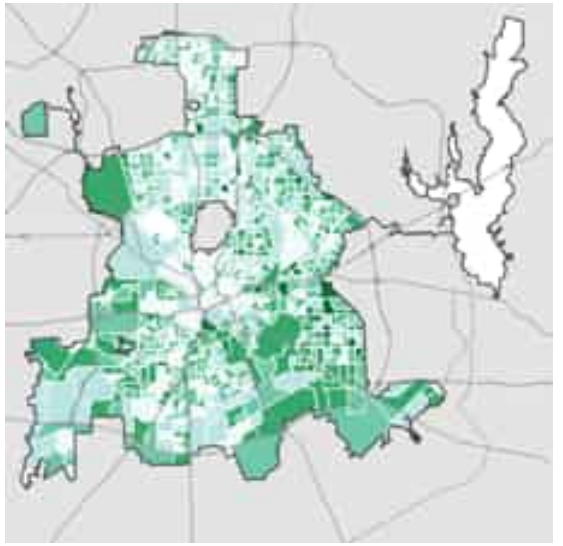


Figure 6: Children
(Percent of population age 5 or younger by census block)
Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018

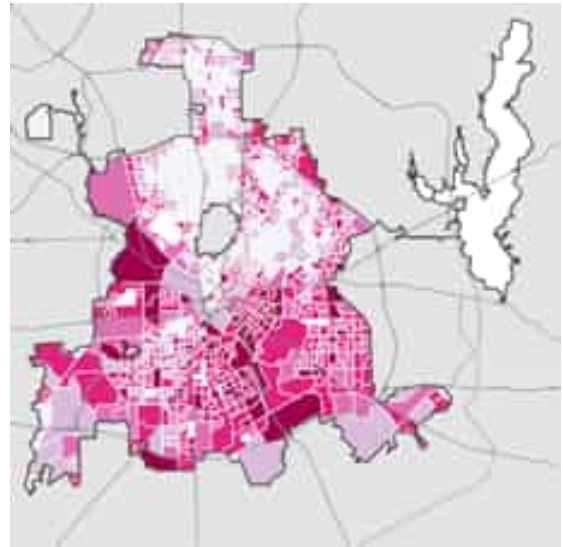


Figure 7: People with low income
(Median annual household income by census block)
Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018

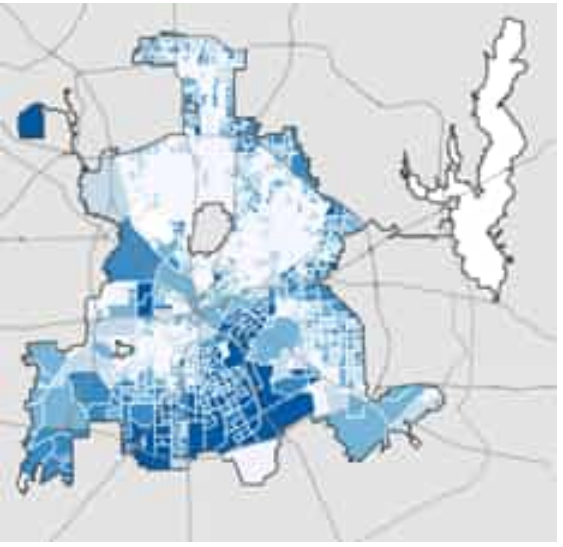


Figure 8: People of color
(Percent of population that is non-white or Hispanic/Latino by census block)
Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018

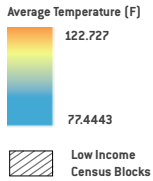
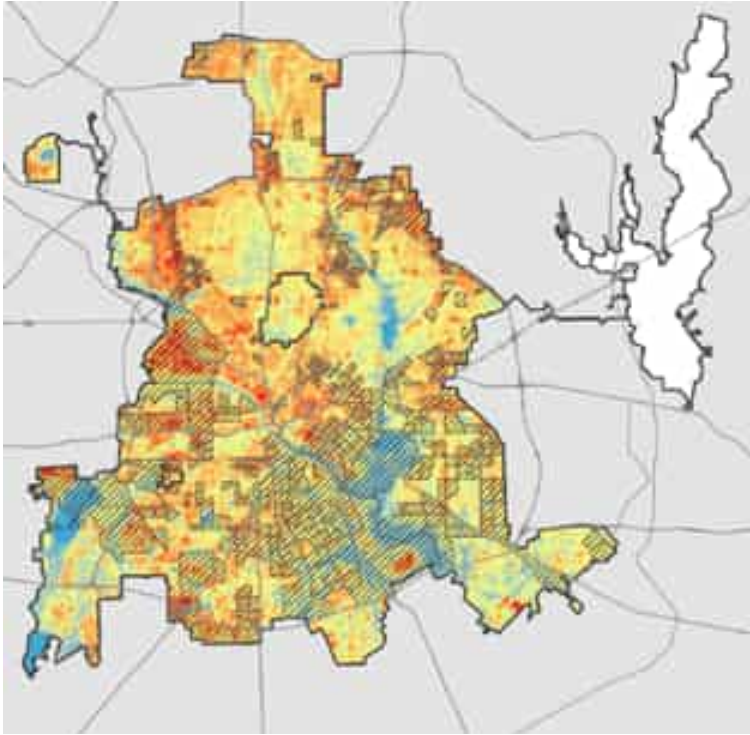


Figure 9: Heat exposure to people with low income
[Median annual household income of \$38,000 or less versus heat by census block; higher temperatures shown in red]

Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018 and NASA 2016

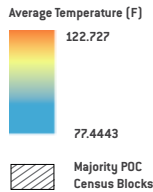
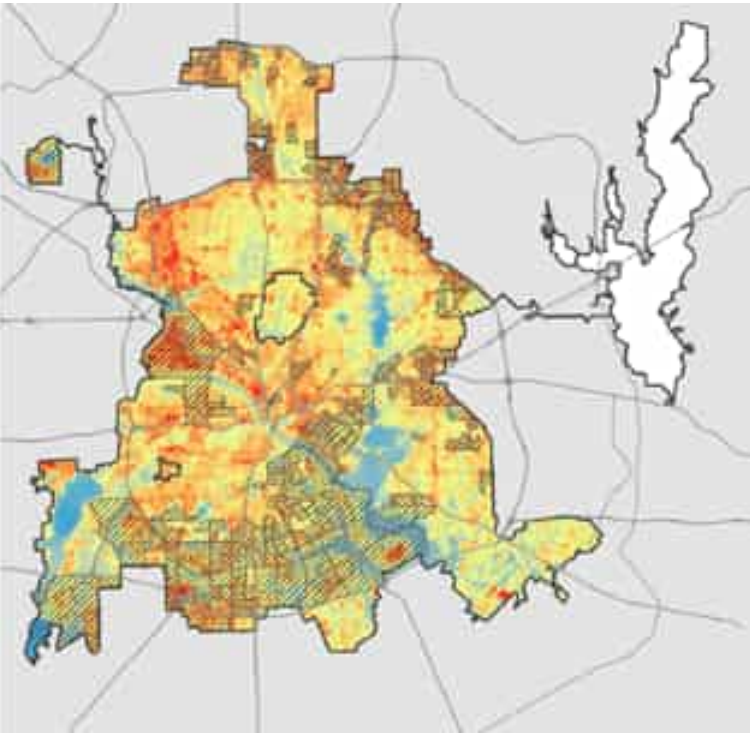


Figure 10: Heat exposure to people of color
[50% or more of population people of color versus heat by census block; higher temperatures shown in red]

Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018 and NASA 2016

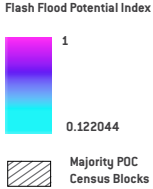
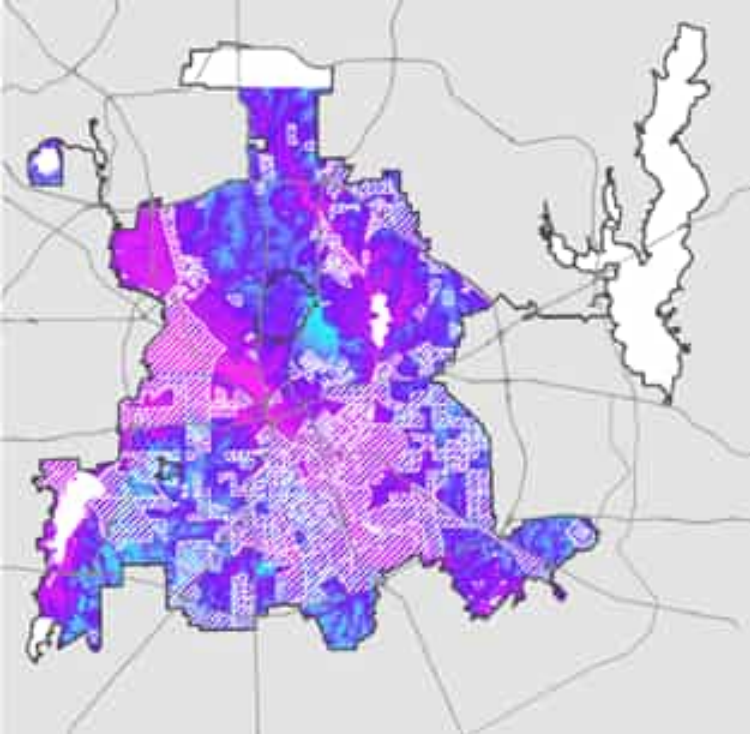


Figure 11: Flood risk to people with low income
[Median annual household income of \$38,000 or less versus composite flash flood risk index]; higher risk shown in pink

Source: Data from SMU, modelled by Rivera, S. 2018

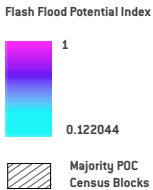
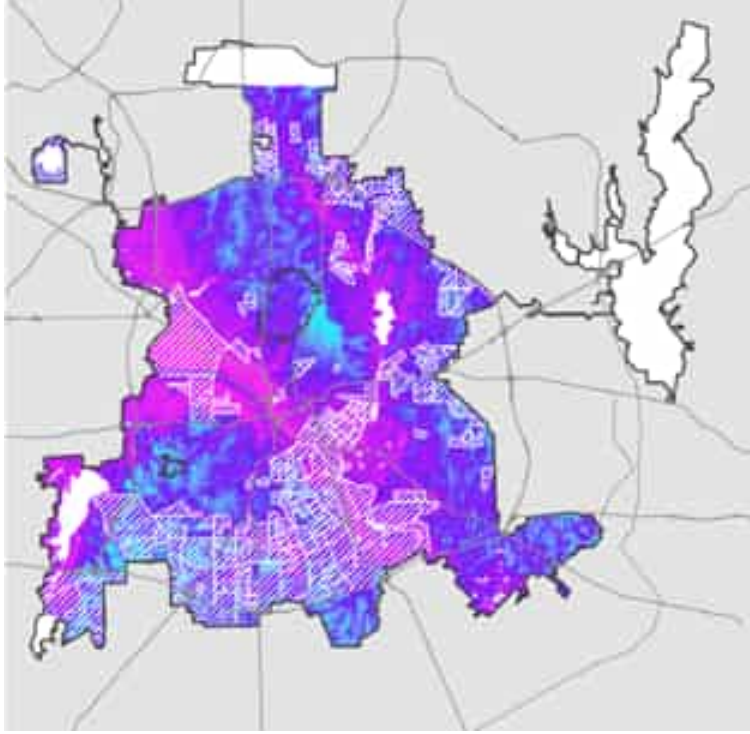


Figure 12: Flood risk to people of color
[50% or more of population people of color versus composite flash flood risk index by census block]; higher risk in pink

Source: Data from SMU, modelled by Rivera, S. 2018

IMPACTS ON THE ECONOMY

Dallas is the ninth most populous city in the United States (2018) and continues to grow in population and employment. Twenty-three Fortune 500 and 43 Fortune 1000 companies are headquartered in the Dallas region. The Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas estimates that ‘severe weather events can have a substantial human and economic cost’ and are likely to have ‘a negative impact on the region’s longer-term business prospects and migration trends.’⁴ The industries most sensitive to climate change in the Great Plains regions are agriculture and energy, with declining crop yields and increased electricity demand in each industry, respectively. Economic losses in agricultural production from the 2011 drought exceeded all previous droughts on record—estimated at \$7.62 billion.⁵ Out of all U.S. states, Texas is estimated to have the highest increase in electricity demand by mid-century: heat-related labor productivity will decline across all sectors in Texas and will likely cost the economy up to \$12.5 billion statewide each year, with a 1-in-20 likelihood of costing more than \$19.6 billion annually.⁶

Employment areas most likely to be impacted by climate change include mining, logging, and construction; trade, transportation, utilities and manufacturing. These sectors account for approximately 1/3 of the region’s total employment. Economic impacts may include:

- Disruptions to operations due to power outages and damage to critical infrastructure caused by extreme weather events.
- Brownouts as a result of increased demand for electricity.
- Labor force shifts away from oil and gas development to renewable energy resources.
- A decrease in labor productivity for outdoor workers (e.g., those in construction industry), which may lead to building and infrastructure projects slowing down or being put on hold.

Climate change can’t be directly attributed to any single extreme weather event, including Hurricanes Harvey, Maria, and Irma; California’s wildfires or Australia’s bushfires, but it makes such events more likely.

“They are starting to be more than tail events, they’re starting to affect economic outcomes,”

Robert Kaplan, President of the Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas.⁷

During Hurricane Harvey in August 2017, 68 people lost their lives, and 300,000 homes and businesses were flooded, resulting in an estimated loss of \$74 billion based on damage to property and lost output.

Figure 13 illustrates National Weather Service (NWS) data for billion-dollar disasters from 1980 to 2019 for the seven types of natural disasters that the National Oceanic & Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) tracks. Over this time period, there has been a significant increase in the number of events, particularly for severe storms. It should be noted that Texas leads the country in the number of billion-dollar weather-related disaster events; and North Texas experienced two such events within the past year.

Finally, it is important to note that consumers drive commercial sector efforts. The public’s awareness of the relationship between the impacts of climate change and actions taken in response to it can influence how business produces products; how they work to reduce waste; and how they invest their funds.

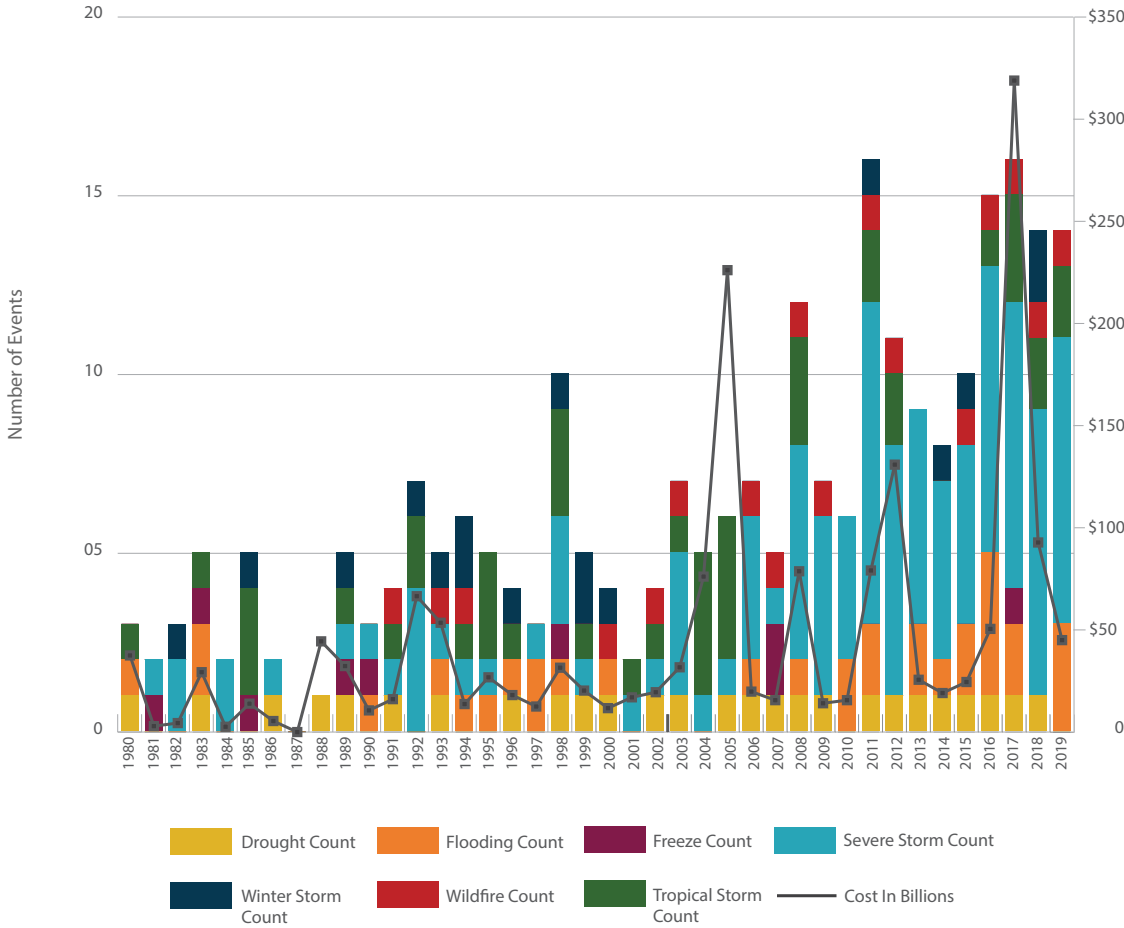


Figure 13: Weather and climate disasters in the United States (CPI adjusted)
(Data from NOAA)

Given current projections of rising average global temperature over the next century, the likelihood that temperatures persistently drift above their historical norm is very high. [...] this could lead to a permanent negative impact on state-level output growth (that is lower production growth in all sectors of the United States economy apart from the mining, government, and finance, insurance and real estate sectors).

While persistent deviations of precipitation from its historical norm (either above and below) or below-the-norm temperatures are less likely, the swings (variability) could be unprecedentedly large owing to climate change, and hence, the negative impact on state-level output growth could be sizable and long lasting.

[Long-Term Macroeconomic Effects of Climate Change](#)
(Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas, 2019)

IMPACTS ON THE ENVIRONMENT

Ecosystems are interconnected networks of living and non-living systems. Ecosystem services provide benefits that support plant and human health such as the production of clean air and water, improvements to soil health, and the creation and protection of habitat. Changes to one part of the system have multiplied effects across all systems. Rising temperatures may cause changes to growing seasons and habitat loss, which impact the migration and distribution of wildlife. White-winged doves have been observed as far north as Oklahoma, despite being previously confined to the Lower Rio Grande Valley⁹, which illustrates that habitat suitability is changing.

.....

The problem with this is that environmental conditions are changing faster than some species will be able to adapt, which could lead to the loss of plant and animal life.

.....

Increased temperatures can dry out the soil and lead to increased water evaporation from our reservoirs. This will strain the water supply for the region, as well as degrade the water quality of our lakes and rivers, since pollutants will become more concentrated. In 2011, the drought killed approximately 5.6 million trees in urban areas across the state. Climate change will also increase the risk of fires in forested areas and wooded neighborhoods, although wildfire threat is currently low in most areas of the city, including the Great Trinity Forest. Wildfire risk is moderate in the Cedar Ridge Preserve in the southwest and high in the forested region between Lavon Lake and Lake Ray Hubbard in the northeast. **Figure 14** illustrates wildfire threat near Dallas. Climate change will also impact the sensitive urban ecosystem balances that provide food, water and habitat to plant, animal and human life.

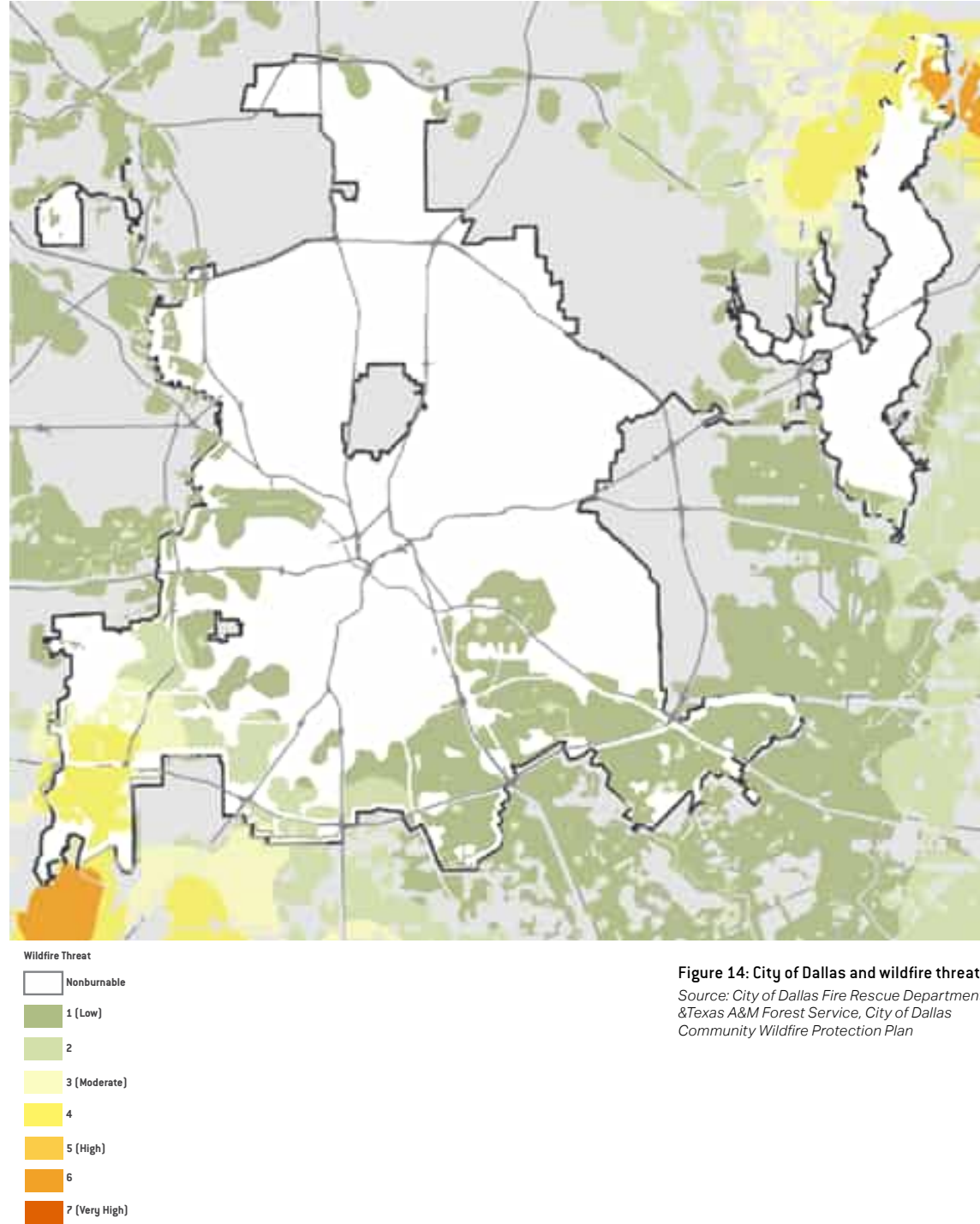


Figure 14: City of Dallas and wildfire threat
Source: City of Dallas Fire Rescue Department
& Texas A&M Forest Service, City of Dallas
Community Wildfire Protection Plan

01

GREENHOUSE GAS EMISSIONS + TARGETS

The City prepared a 2015 community wide GHG inventory to be used as the basis for emissions forecasting in the CECAP. The inventory provides a snapshot of the volume and sources of GHG emissions within Dallas and serves as a reference point to help determine appropriate emissions reduction targets. It also indicates the types of measures to pursue to make meaningful progress toward those targets.

BASE YEAR INVENTORY

Emissions by Sector

Dallas' 2015 emissions inventory totals 19,529,600 MT CO₂e/year, which is approximately 15 MT CO₂e per person per year. Stationary energy is the largest contributor of GHG emissions in the city (64%),

with transportation contributing most of the remainder (35%). Stationary energy sources refer to electricity and other combustible fuels utilized in buildings and the GHG emissions that are contributed through these [\(also see Glossary\)](#). The transportation and energy sectors account for approximately 99% of total emissions, meaning that local emissions reduction efforts will need to focus on these two sectors (these will be addressed under three goals in the CECAP). The waste sector (including wastewater) is responsible for the remaining <1% of emissions. **Table 1 and Figure 15** presents the complete 2015 inventory by emissions subsector. Table 1 also shows the relative contribution of emissions by fuel type in the stationary energy sector, where stationary combustion refers to on-site fuel burning, such as natural gas, kerosene, or coal.

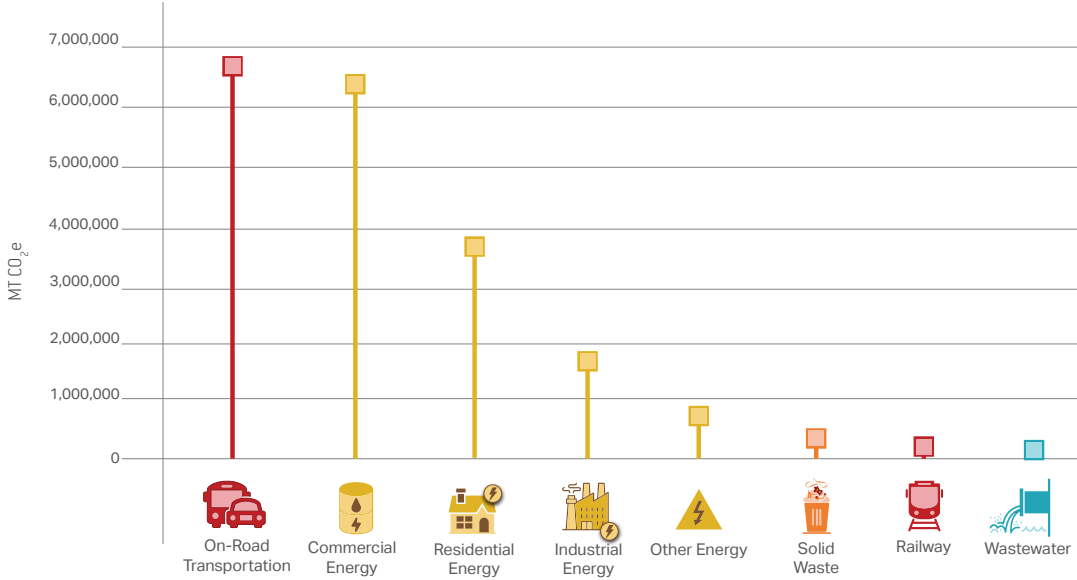


Figure 15: Community emissions by sub-sector
Source: Data from City of Dallas 2017

Sector/Subsector/Fuel Type	2015 Emissions (MT CO ₂ e)	% of 2015 Emissions
STATIONARY ENERGY	12,544,800	64%
Residential	3,893,700	20%
Stationary Combustion	742,400	4%
Electricity	3,151,300	16%
Commercial	6,475,300	33%
Stationary Combustion	1,261,800	6%
Electricity	5,213,500	27%
Industrial	1,659,400	8%
Stationary Combustion	345,200	2%
Electricity	1,314,200	7%
Other Non-Specified Sources	2,400	<1%
Fugitive Emissions	514,000	3%
TRANSPORTATION	6,849,600	35%
On-Road Vehicles	6,779,900	35%
Railways	69,700	<1%
WASTE	135,200	1%
Solid Waste	135,100	1%
Wastewater	100	<1%
TOTAL	19,529,600	100%

Table 1: 2015 Community Emissions by Sector, Subsector, and Fuel

Source: Data from City of Dallas 2017

[Appendix C](#) includes a detailed breakdown of emissions and sources by subsector and fuel type. It also provides further information about assumptions used for the forecasts and how the GHG reductions targets were developed.

GHG REDUCTION TARGETS

Emission reduction targets are a critical component of climate change mitigation planning—they demonstrate the City’s commitment to global efforts on climate change and provide a goal post against which to evaluate the cumulative progress of the City’s GHG reduction actions over time.

2050 Carbon Neutrality Target

The City of Dallas is committed to meeting the international emission reduction targets set by the Paris Agreement in 2016 and the goal to keep warming temperatures at or below 1.5 degrees Celsius. In 2017, Mayor Rawlings signed the Mayors National Climate Agreement in support of the Paris Agreement. Upon election in June 2019, Mayor Johnson reaffirmed the City of Dallas’ commitment to this agreement. The City of Dallas is fully committed to protecting the community from the impacts of climate change and taking measures to reduce its GHG emissions.

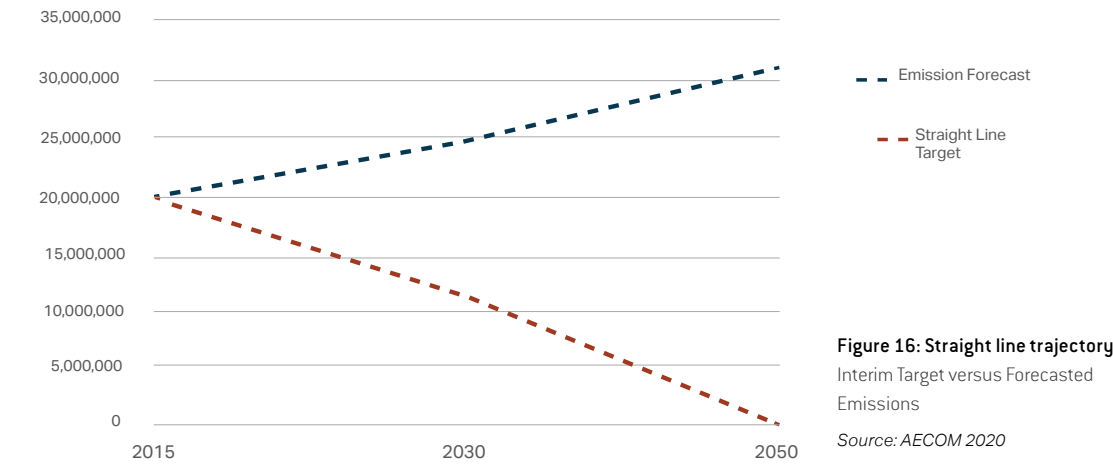
To position the Dallas CECAP as a climate action plan that meets the ambitious objectives of the Paris Agreement, and with other cities around the world committed to bold action on climate change, the City of Dallas has adopted a target of carbon neutrality by 2050. Carbon neutrality refers to achieving net zero GHG emissions, through reducing emissions as much as possible and then balancing remaining emissions with carbon removal or carbon offset programs. The actions described in this plan are measurable, common sense solutions intended to move Dallas forward towards achieving this goal.

2030 Interim Target

Achieving the City’s goal of carbon neutrality will require bold action, beginning now. Since the 2050 target year is still decades away, it is important to set interim targets to ensure the City is on a path to achieving its long-term goal. In evaluating interim targets for 2030, the City compared its emissions forecasts against different target options to understand the scale of reductions needed from the CECAP actions, and then selected an interim target that balances the City’s ambition with the realities of Dallas’ relatively high level of emissions in its base year. A common approach used by cities is to set interim targets based on a straight-line trajectory from their base year to their long-term goal. **Figure 16** shows this trajectory from the 2015 emissions base year to carbon neutrality by 2050. In Dallas, this would translate to a 43% reduction in total emissions below 2015 levels by 2030.

A review of climate plans from other cities in the United States allows an understanding that other cities are setting targets similar to Dallas for 2030 and 2050. Peer city 2030 targets are generally clustered around achieving a 40 to 50% reduction below base year levels, while 2050 targets are clustered around targets that reflect an 80 to 100% reduction below base year levels. Dallas’ targets are consistent with both ranges as shown on **Table 2**.

Dallas’ interim target represents an ambitious level of action to ensure the City is on track to achieving its long-term carbon neutrality goal. **Table 3** shows the interim and long-term emissions reduction targets evaluated in this plan compared to the emissions forecasts if no additional climate action is taken. The total emissions reductions and percent reductions needed for each target are also shown.



City	Base Year	2030 Target (% below base year)	2050 Target (% below base year)
Atlanta	2009	40%	n/a
Austin	2010	47%	100%
Chicago	1990	26-28% ¹	80%
Dallas	2015	~43%	100%
Denver	2005	30% ²	80%
Houston	2014	40% ³	100% ³
Los Angeles	1990	50% ²	100%
New Orleans	2014	50%	n/a
Phoenix	2012	30% ²	80%

Table 2: Targets adopted by peer cities

Source: AECOM 2020

¹ 2030 target is set below 2005 levels.
² Near-term target year is 2025 instead of 2030.
³ Per 2019 draft CAP

Measure	2015	2030	2050
Forecasted Total Emissions	19,529,600	24,504,700	30,870,100
Total Emissions Targets	19,529,600	11,159,800	close to 0
Total Below Base Year	-	13,344,900	30,870,100
% Below Base Year		-43%	-100%

Table 3: City of Dallas 2030 and 2050 emissions reduction targets

Source: AECOM 2020

ACHIEVING THE TARGETS

Greenhouse gas reduction estimates based on CECAP actions

The CECAP proposes 97 actions across eight sectors, of which 45 are aimed at primarily reducing GHG emissions. As outlined in the City’s 2015 communitywide GHG inventory, 64% of all communitywide GHG emissions can be attributed to stationary energy and 35% of emissions can be attributed to transportation sector in the base year. To meet the CECAP’s GHG reduction targets, ambitious actions have been proposed to address emissions from these two sectors. Total estimated reductions from CECAP actions are approximately 9,825,200 MT CO₂e/yr in 2030 and 24,248,500 MT CO₂e/yr in 2050. The total impact of these estimated reductions when compared to the city’s emissions forecasts and emissions targets is illustrated on **p.29 to 32**.

Through the implementation of all recommended actions as currently envisioned, the City would achieve reductions of 25% below 2015 levels by the 2030 target year (compared to its target of 43%) and 66% below 2015 levels by the 2050 target year (compared to its target of 100%). This represents a good start toward target achievement, especially when compared to the emissions forecasts; however, there is a need for further and greater action to achieve the City’s ambitious targets.

The suite of policies proposed in the CECAP builds upon the City’s ongoing work and commitment to sustainability, so in most instances, implementation will not begin from scratch, but reflect ongoing continuous improvement. In addition to providing GHG emissions reductions, the actions will also help Dallas residents and businesses to prepare and adapt to the impacts of climate

change, while improving the environment and quality of life through co-benefits. The plan anticipates implementation through adaptive management and data-driven decision making.

.....

The actions presented in this plan are designed to be implemented with an initial emphasis on education and voluntary participation, followed by incentives, then mandates, and ordinances.

.....

Implementing mandates may result in greater emissions reductions from increased participation rates; however, there is a policy preference towards market-based decision making. Moving forward, the City will monitor GHG emission trends through regular GHG inventory updates. The results and trends will be compared to the targets established in this plan to determine if more aggressive action is needed.

ACHIEVING THE 2030 TARGET

The suite of actions in the plan have been carefully selected to start Dallas on its path to carbon neutrality by 2050. Given this is Dallas’ first climate action plan, and to encourage buy-in and broad participation in the CECAP from businesses and residents, the City has chosen a phased approach to implementation over time.

The plan contains educational programs and incentives to inspire action and to allow time to build institutional capacity, develop public-private sector partnerships, and build community support to create momentum for voluntary updates of actions while laying the groundwork for more impactful and transformational actions in the future. The descriptions of the phased actions outline how each will be ramped up over time—e.g., from education to requirement.

As the City transitions actions to requirements during periodic plan updates, the assumptions around emissions reductions will also be updated to evaluate progress toward the City’s 2030 reduction target. With community support and buy-in, the City will be able to accelerate and adopt subsequent phases earlier.



The importance of the electricity sector

Although Texas leads the nation in wind-powered electricity generation and produces one-fourth of all the U.S. wind electricity (2017),¹⁰ less than 20% of the energy generated in the Electric Reliability Council of Texas (ERCOT) region comes from renewable energy sources. In the plan's base year (2015), approximately 45% of electricity came from natural gas combustion, 33% from coal, 11% from nuclear, and 10% from renewable energy sources.¹¹ The City's 2015 base year inventory was developed based on the EPA eGRID 2014v2 electricity energy sources reported for the ERCOT subregion. While the State continues to make progress in increasing its renewable energy portfolio, coal energy sources in the grid contribute significantly to the city's building sector emissions.

Looking forward, ERCOT's Capacity, Demand and Reserves (CDR) Report expects use of coal and nuclear power to decrease, while use of natural gas and renewable energy sources to increase. ERCOT's CDR estimates energy sources through 2029, which were used in the CECAP's 2030 GHG analysis scenario. Beyond that timeframe, the plan looked to the US EIA for long-term energy trends in the country to estimate how electricity energy sources might change through 2050. These long-term trends from 2019 to 2050 were applied to ERCOT's specific energy source mix

to estimate what ERCOT's 2050 energy scenario could be if it followed national projections. **Table 4** summarizes the energy sources included in the CECAP analysis for these time horizons.

As shown, long-term electricity trends estimate further decreases in coal energy and increases in renewable sources. These improvements over the base year levels, if realized, would have a significant impact on reducing emissions through 2050. However, this scenario alone will not help Dallas to reach its target. A faster transition to renewable sources is critically important to achieving the City's carbon neutrality target. Lower carbon electricity emissions will also enhance the GHG reduction of other important actions, including the increased use of electric vehicles and building energy switches from fossil fuel-based equipment to electric systems.

Dallas will need access to 100% emissions free electricity sources by 2050 to support its carbon neutrality goal. However, Texas' unique energy market makes it difficult for cities to directly regulate this sector. In 1999, the Texas legislature deregulated the retail electricity market to introduce competition and give customers the choice to select their retail providers. This led to Dallas being serviced by over 115 retail electricity providers, whose rates

Measure	2015	2030	2050
Natural Gas	45%	61%	47%
Coal	33%	16%	11%
Renewables	10%	17%	35%
Nuclear	11%	6%	7%

Table 4: Energy sources for 2015, 2030 and 2050

Source: Data from U.S. EPA eGRID 2014v2, 2015; ERCOT 2019; EIA 2020

are based on the market price. Importantly, some of these electricity providers allow customers to purchase 100% renewable electricity at rates competitive with other retailers, which provides an opportunity for the City to indirectly influence electricity sector emissions. While ERCOT will likely continue to change its energy generation sources in the future to include a growing share of renewable energy, residents and businesses also have the option to choose renewable energy sources today from their electricity provider, which can help to speed up decarbonization in the energy sector.

GHG REDUCTION ESTIMATE SCENARIOS

The following pages present the two GHG reduction scenarios analyzed for the CECAP. The left page in each scenario includes a figure illustrating the City's emissions forecasts, target, and impact from action implementation, as well as a summary of progress toward the 2030 and 2050 targets. The right page shows how the CECAP's actions are organized into GHG reduction strategies and notes the underlying assumptions for each strategy. The figures and lists of actions use colors to identify which GHG emissions sector is reduced through each action as indicated by the legend (Note that the tonnes CO₂e reduced per GHG reduction strategy are included in a version of these figures provided in the [Appendix C](#)).

Scenario 1: GHG reductions based on CECAP actions

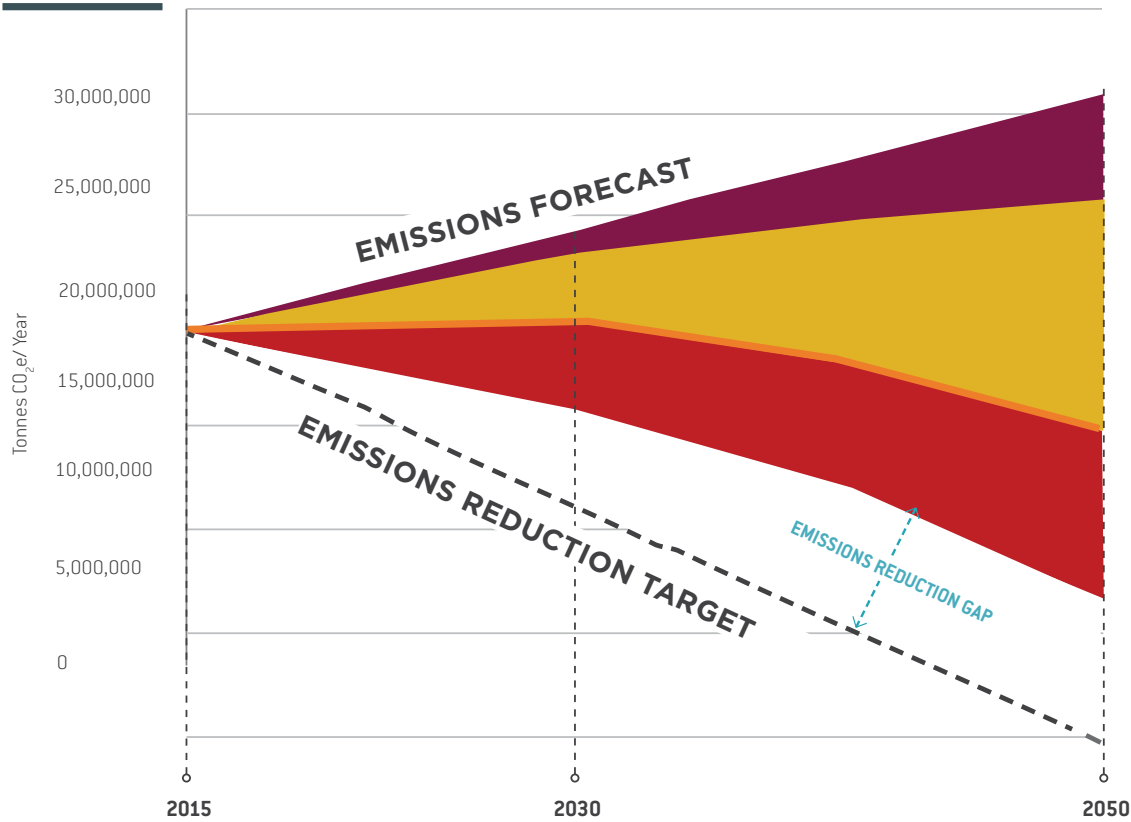
The first scenario represents implementation of the CECAP actions as currently written. This scenario would achieve a 25% reduction below 2015 levels in 2030 and 66% below 2015 levels in 2050. As shown in the figure, the greatest reductions are associated with increased renewable electricity. This is a combination of the changes estimated to

occur in the ERCOT grid (as described in the previous section), installation of rooftop solar photovoltaic systems, and a portion of residents and businesses voluntarily choosing electricity providers that offer 100% renewable energy options. The second greatest source of reductions are from transportation actions that would reduce total vehicle trips in the community and a gradual shift toward electric vehicles based on industry forecasts. Building energy actions that increase energy efficiency provide additional reductions and increase through 2050 with an assumption that all new construction is designed to be zero net energy beginning in 2030. Waste actions provide minimal GHG reductions due to that sector's relatively minor contribution to Dallas' total emissions inventory. However, waste actions will be critical to achieving carbon neutrality and provide other important co-benefits described later in the plan.

Scenario 2: GHG reductions based on increased participation

The second scenario is more optimistic based on increased action implementation in certain areas, including the use of some regulatory mandates. This scenario would achieve 30% reductions below 2015 levels in 2030 and 71% below 2015 levels in 2050. The changes in the second scenario are highlighted through the list of GHG reduction strategies and implementation assumptions. This scenario would increase reductions in the building energy sector with requirements for residential and commercial building energy efficiency improvements beginning in 2030. It also includes an aggressive transportation demand management program to increase work-from-home participation for jobs that can be performed remotely. This would help to reduce total vehicle trips in the city. The remaining reduction gap in this optimistic scenario primarily represents a need to further increase use of renewable electricity and expand electrification of vehicles and buildings.

GHG REDUCTION ESTIMATE BASED ON CECAP ACTIONS



PROJECTED GHG REDUCTION	25% BELOW 2015	66% BELOW 2015
TARGET GHG REDUCTION	43% BELOW 2015	100% BELOW 2015

LEGEND

- 

Actions that result in improved energy efficiency or fuel switching from natural gas to electricity.
- 

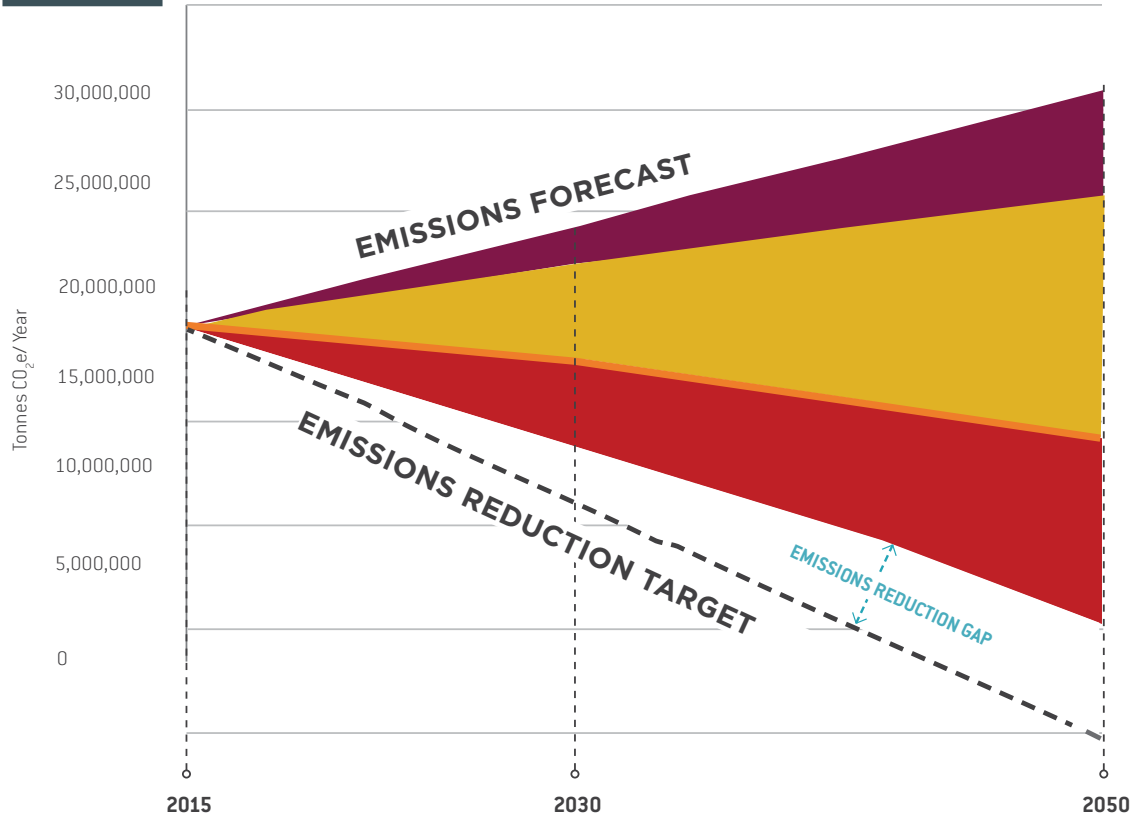
Actions related to the electricity grid energy mix to increase use of renewable sources.
- 

Actions that support waste diversion and treatment changes.
- 

Actions to increase use of public transit and active transportation options, as well as those that support the adoption of electric vehicle technology.

Actions	GHG Reduction Strategies	Assumptions
B1 B2 E7 E8 T16	Energy Efficiency: Existing City Buildings	<ul style="list-style-type: none">City buys RECs to offset 100% of municipal electricity use in 2030 and 2050.50% and 100% of municipal buildings achieve carbon neutrality by 2030 and 2050, respectively.Love Field and Dallas Executive Airport achieve Level 3+ carbon accreditation.
B4 B9	Energy Efficiency: Existing Residential Buildings	<ul style="list-style-type: none">All existing residential buildings reduce energy use 10% and 25% through lighting, appliance upgrades, space heating/cooling improvements, low-flow fixtures, and building envelope improvements by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
B7 B8 B10	Energy Efficiency: Existing Commercial Buildings	<ul style="list-style-type: none">20% of existing commercial buildings reduce energy use 15% below 2015 levels by 2030 and 50% reduce energy use 20% below 2015 levels by 2050All new construction from 2030 onward is zero-net energy.
B12 B14	Energy Efficiency: New Construction	
B11 E3 E4 E5 E6 E9	Renewable Energy: Increase Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Dallas achieves 10% and 50% of solar capacity potential by 2030 and 2050, respectively (currently achieves less than 1% potential).20% and 50% of customers purchase 100% renewable program by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
SW9	Energy Generation: Organics	<ul style="list-style-type: none">35% and 80% of food and yard waste is diverted by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
SW5	Recycling: Paper Diversion	<ul style="list-style-type: none">60% and 90% paper waste diversion by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
T3 T4 SW4	Electric Vehicles: Passenger	<ul style="list-style-type: none">14% and 50% passenger vehicles electric in 2030 and 2050, respectively.
T1	Electric Vehicles: Transit	<ul style="list-style-type: none">75% and 100% of DART buses are electric by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
T11 T12	Land Use: Transit Oriented Development	<ul style="list-style-type: none">10% and 30% of new housing units are in TOD locations by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
T2 T5 T6 T9 T7 T10 T13 T14 T15	Travel Mode Shift: SOV Trip Reduction	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Travel mode shift from single occupant vehicle to Bus and Light rail from 88% to 79% in 2030 and 88% to 62% in 2050.
	Vehicle Fuel Efficiency: Federal	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Additional reductions associated with implementation of federal vehicle fuel efficiency standards were included in the wedge diagram and total 2,603,600 and 1,536,200 MT CO₂e/yr for 2030 and 2050, respectively.

GHG REDUCTION ESTIMATE BASED ON INCREASED PARTICIPATION



PROJECTED
GHG REDUCTION

30%
BELOW 2015

71%
BELOW 2015

TARGET
GHG REDUCTION

43%
BELOW 2015

100%
BELOW 2015

LEGEND



Actions that result in improved energy efficiency or fuel switching from natural gas to electricity.



Actions that support waste diversion and treatment changes.



Actions related to the electricity grid energy mix to increase use of renewable sources.



Actions to increase use of public transit and active transportation options, as well as those that support the adoption of electric vehicle technology.

Actions

GHG Reduction Strategies

Additional Assumptions

B1 B2 E7 E8 T16	Energy Efficiency: Existing City Buildings	
B4 B9	Energy Efficiency: Existing Residential Buildings	100% of homes sold from 2030 through 2050 reduce energy use by 10% through energy efficiency improvements at point-of-sale.
B7 B8 B10	Energy Efficiency: Existing Commercial Buildings	100% commercial buildings perform retro-commissioning to reduce energy use 15% by 2030, 100% commercial buildings perform comprehensive energy upgrade program to reduce energy use 30% by 2050
B12 B14	Energy Efficiency: New Construction	
B11 E3 E4 E5 E6 E9	Renewable Energy: Increase Use	Changed as a result of decreased electricity use from other actions
SW9	Energy Generation: Organics	
SW5	Recycling: Paper Diversion	
T3 T4 SW4	Electric Vehicles: Passenger	Changed as a result of decreased electricity use from other actions
T1	Electric Vehicles: Transit	
T11 T12	Land Use: Transit Oriented Development	
T2 T5 T6 T9 T7 T10 T13 T14 T15	Travel Mode Shift: SOV Trip Reduction	10% of single occupant vehicle trips are avoided in TDM work from home programs
	Vehicle Fuel Efficiency: Federal	Changed as a result of fewer vehicle trips from other actions

02

GOALS, OBJECTIVES, ACTIONS + TARGETS



Figure 17: Intersection between mitigation, adaptation and environmental quality
(AECOM 2020)

DEVELOPMENT OF ACTIONS

The actions in the CECAP were developed based on community input, City staff and stakeholder input, relevant best practices from peer and aspirational cities, and other international standards, as potential solutions to address Dallas’s current and future challenges related to climate change. **Figure 18** provides an illustration of the overall process, including the iterations of action development, equity analyses, and the potential strategy development in these lenses.

The actions build on the initiatives that the City has implemented (see **Table 5**) as well as benchmarking best practices to introduce new ideas. The selection and prioritization of actions to include in the CECAP was based on an action’s potential to effectively deliver at least one of four primary benefits (**Figure 17**):

- **Mitigation** – actions with the potential to reduce GHG emissions that cause climate change.
- **Adaptation** – actions with the potential to manage the risk of climate change impacts
- **Environmental Justice** – actions that address issues of greatest concern for communities disproportionately impacted by climate change.
- **Environmental Quality** – actions that improve general sustainability and quality of life.

Actions were also evaluated based on equity, cost-effectiveness for both the public and private sectors, technical effectiveness, consistency with policy, and City authority.



Figure 18: Action development process
(Source: AECOM 2020)

02

ALIGNMENT WITH OTHER PLANS

PLANS	PLAN OBJECTIVES																											
	Buildings A	Buildings B	Buildings C	Energy A	Energy B	Energy C	Transportation A	Transportation B	Transportation C	Transportation D	Solid Waste A	Solid Waste B	Solid Waste C	Water A	Water B	Water C	Ecosystems A	Ecosystems B	Ecosystems C	Food Ag A	Food Ag B	Food Ag C	Food Ag C	Food Ag D	Air Quality A	Air Quality B		
Forward Dallas! Comprehensive Plan (2006)	●	●						●	●	●	●	●		●			●	●	●						●			
A Balanced Vision Plan for the Trinity River Corridor (2003)								●	●	●							●	●	●									
Resilient Dallas (2018)								●	●	●					●		●	●	●									
Building a Cool, Clean & Resilient Dallas (2018)														●	●		●	●	●						●			
Sustainable Development & Construction: Green Building Ordinance (2015)	●	●																										
Oncor Energy Efficiency Plan and Report (2018)	●				●																							
Dallas Green Energy Policy (2019)					●																							
2030 Transit System Plan (2006)								●	●																			
City of Dallas Complete Streets Design Manual (2016)								●		●								●										
Dallas Bike Plan (2011)								●		●																		
Dallas Trail Network Plan (2008)								●		●								●										
The 360 Plan (2017)								●	●																			
Neighborhood Plus Plan (2015)									●																			
Vulnerability and Risk Assessment for Transportation Infrastructure (2015)										●																		
Clean Fleet Vehicle Policy (2015)							●					●																
City of Dallas Waste Characterization Study (2013)											●		●															
Litter and Illegal Dumping Assessment Study (2018)												●																
Local Solid Waste Management Plan 2011 - 2060 (2013)											●	●	●															
Wastewater Treatment Facilities Strategic Plan (2010)															●													
Interim Bacteria Reduction Plan (2012)														●														
Interior Drainage Study for the East and West Levee (2014)															●													
Water Conservation Five-Year Work Plan (2019)														●														
2014 Dallas Long Range Water Supply Plan to 2070 and Beyond (2015)														●		●												
Stormwater Management Plan (2019)														●	●	●												
Dallas Park and Recreation Department - Comprehensive Plan (2016)								●	●	●								●										
Great Trinity Forest Management Plan (2008)																		●										
Urban Heat Island Management Study (2017)																	●	●										
Healthy Food Dallas -Presentation by Economic Development Committee (2017)																				●	●	●						

Table 5: A Matrix comparison of CECAP objectives with other City plans
Note: CECAP objectives are organized by goal. Letters indicate different objectives based on the order in which they appear throughout the plan.

02

SUMMARY OF TARGETS



NET ZERO ENERGY NEW CONSTRUCTION
100% starting in 2030

ENERGY USE IN EXISTING RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS
Existing buildings reduce energy use
10% by 2030
Existing buildings reduce energy use
25% by 2050



HEALTHY, AFFORDABLE FOOD ACCESS

50% of the population by 2030
75% of the population by 2040
100% of the population by 2050
($\frac{1}{2}$ mile walk or 10-minute drive from home)

ACRES OF URBAN GARDENS

Increase in 20% by 2030
increase in 50% by 2040
increase in 75% by 2050

(producing food for community distribution, local markets or restaurants)

RESTAURANTS, FARM STANDS, OR MARKETS SOURCING FROM LOCAL PRODUCERS

Increase in 10% by 2030
Increase in 25% by 2040
Increase in 50+% by 2050



SOLAR POWER INSTALLED
739,000 MW by 2030
3,695,000 MW by 2050

RENEWABLE ELECTRICITY PLANS

20% of residents + businesses
enrolled by 2030
50% of residents + businesses
enrolled by 2050



WATER CONSUMPTION

1% decrease (per-capita) annually

WATER FOR INDIRECT REUSE

5% implementation by 2030
10% implementation by 2050

IMPAIRED WATERBODIES LISTED IN WATERSHED

30% reduction by 2030
60% reduction by 2040
100% reduction by 2050
(within DWU service area)

GHG EMISSIONS FROM TREATMENT FACILITIES

45% reduction by 2035
100% reduction by 2050



PUBLICLY AVAILABLE EV CHARGING
1,500 outlets installed to
support 39,000 vehicles by 2030

ELECTRIC FLEETS
All new transit vehicle purchases by the
City, DISD, DART fully electric by 2030
100% electrified fleet by 2040

SINGLE OCCUPANT VEHICLE TRAVEL MODE SHIFT
88% to 79% in 2030
88% to 62% in 2050



GROUND LEVEL OZONE
meet NAAQS attainment standard by 2030
maintain status through 2050

AIR POLLUTANTS
maintain NAAQS attainment
status through 2050
(includes lead, carbon monoxide, nitrogen dioxide, particulate matter [PM10], particulate matter [PM2.5] and sulfur dioxide)



ORGANIC WASTE
35% diverted by 2030
80% diverted by 2050

PAPER WASTE
60% diverted by 2030
90% diverted by 2050

LANDFILL DIVERSION
35% reduction in waste by 2030
45% reduction in waste by 2040



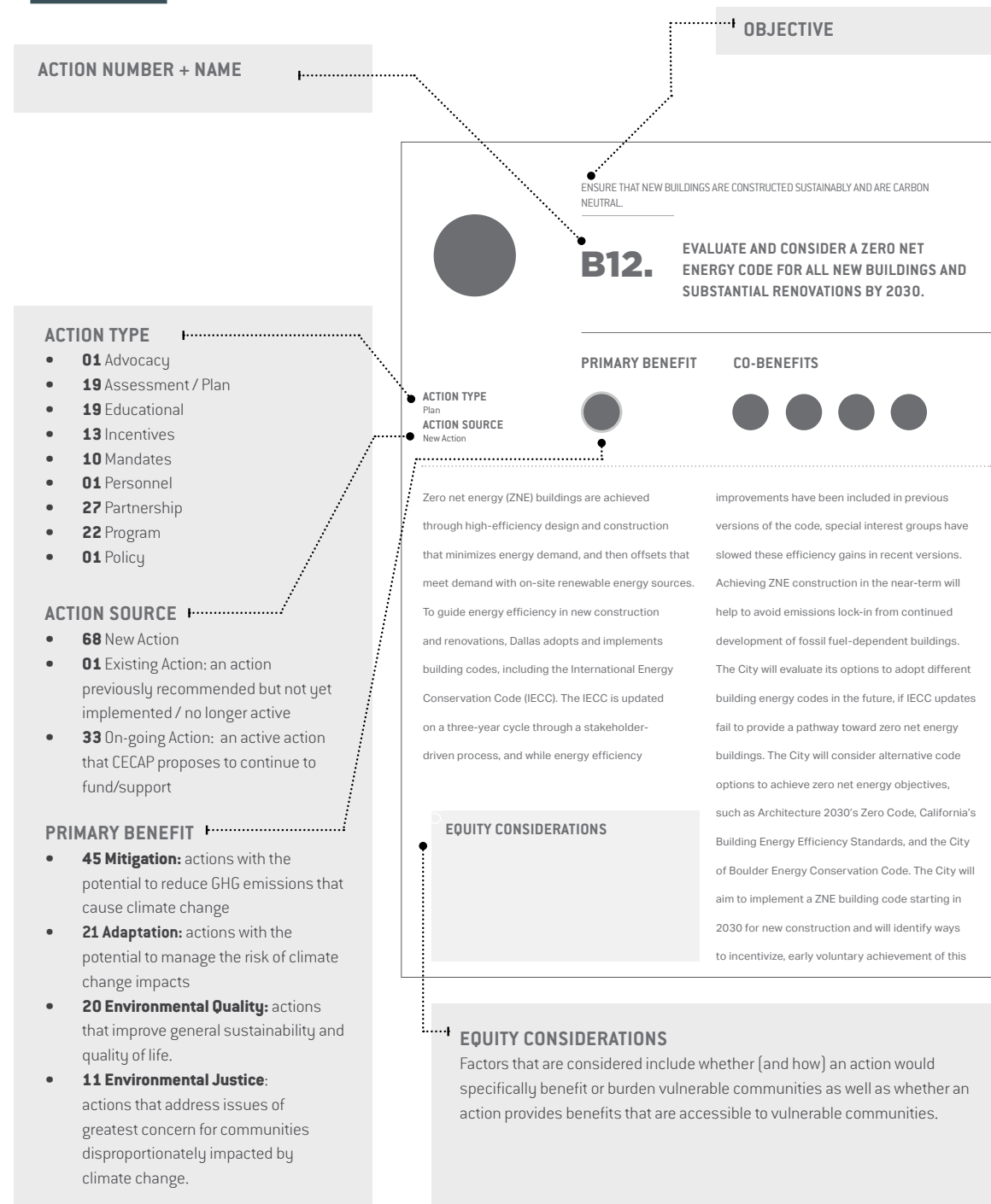
CANOPY COVER CITYWIDE
33% by 2030
37% by 2040
40+% by 2050

URBAN HEAT ISLAND INDEX
20% reduction by 2030
50% reduction by 2040
75% reduction by 2050

PARK OR TRAIL ACCESS
80% of the population by 2030
90% of the population by 2040
95% of the population by 2050
($\frac{1}{2}$ mile walk from home)

02

ACTION LEGEND + SUMMARY



97 CECAP ACTIONS



COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN

COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN





Credit: David Worthington

GOAL 1: DALLAS’ BUILDINGS ARE ENERGY- EFFICIENT AND CLIMATE RESILIENT.

- | Why Buildings Matter p. 45
- | Building on City Achievements p. 47
- | What can I do? p. 48
- | Actions p. 49

TARGETS

100% NEW CONSTRUCTION
WILL BE NET ZERO ENERGY
FROM 2030

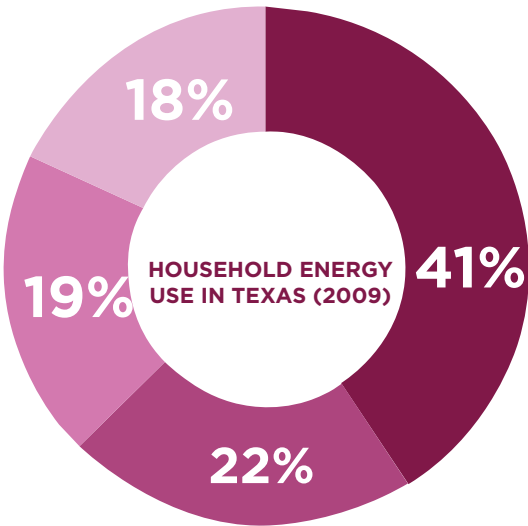
EXISTING RESIDENTIAL
HOMES REDUCE ENERGY USE
10% AND 25% BY 2030 AND
2050, RESPECTIVELY.



WHY BUILDINGS MATTER

The combined building and energy sectors account for the highest percentage of GHG emissions in Dallas (64%). Of these, 33% is from commercial buildings including offices, restaurants and retailers; 20% from homes, and 8% from the industrial sector. Although the building and energy sectors are very closely related and are considered one sector in the GHG inventory, actions that reduce emissions in the two sectors are on very different scales and so have been separated for the CECAP. This allows a sharper focus on actions that reduce energy use within the building envelope and actions that change the way electricity is generated for the grid.

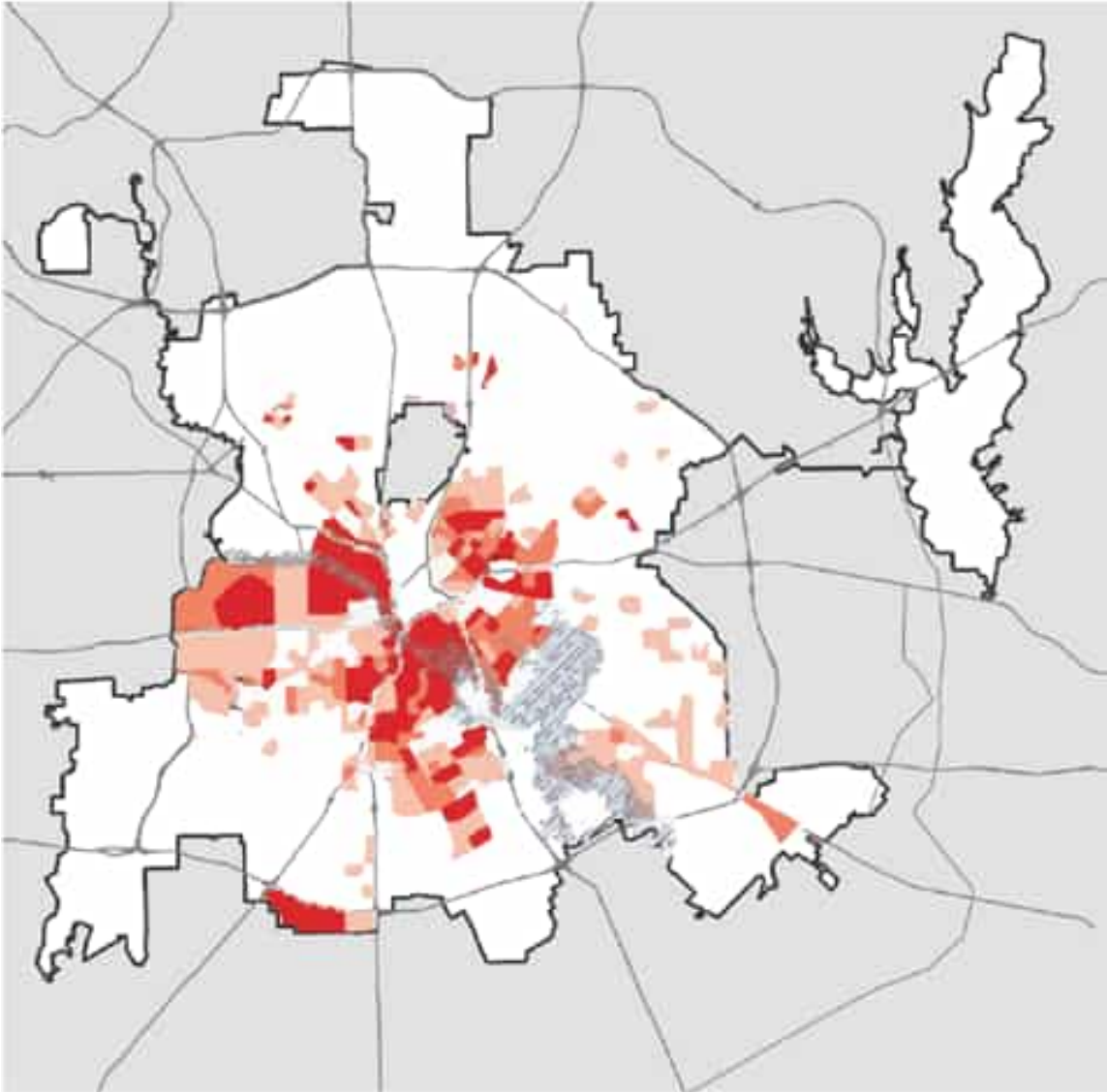
The impacts of climate change on buildings are wide ranging. Warmer temperatures increase the demand for air conditioning and therefore increase energy costs. This will disproportionately impact low-income communities that already struggle to cover housing and utility bills. Vulnerable households that do not have access to air conditioning will be more vulnerable during heatwaves. The increase in heat could also compromise building foundations due to soil shrinkage. Flood events may cause physical damage or impede access to buildings. Homes and places of work can be protected from the impacts of climate change through structural and operational improvements. To reduce GHG emissions in buildings, actions have been developed to enable businesses and institutions (including the City) to reduce their energy use, leveraging a wide range of energy efficiency opportunities. Solutions are aimed at both existing buildings and new construction.



- Appliances, Electronics + Lighting
- Space Heating
- Water Heating
- Air Conditioning

Figure 19: Household energy use in Texas
Source: Energy Information Administration (Household Energy Use in Texas) 2009

Energy efficiency improvements to existing residential and nonresidential buildings and appliances can reduce overall emissions and utility bills. Ensuring that all new construction is built in an energy efficient way will reduce future 'carbon lock-in' in the building stock. **Figure 20** indicates census tracts in Dallas with high percentages of poor housing. This provides an opportunity for energy efficiency improvements as these units are upgraded. The City may focus outreach efforts to publicize upgrading incentives to homeowners and landlords in these neighborhoods.



- 6% - 10%
- 11% - 15%
- More than 15%

Figure 20: Percent of housing in poor condition
Source: City of Dallas, Neighborhood Plus Plan 2015



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

In 2003, Dallas passed the original Green Building Ordinance, which required all new buildings to meet higher efficiency standards than the building energy codes that were previously enforced. The intent was to implement sustainable strategies that enhance the quality of life and promote economic vibrancy in Dallas and the North Texas region. The ordinance consisted of two phases, the first phase focused on energy efficiency, water conservation, and reduction of the heat island effect through cool roofs, and phase 2, enacted in 2008, focused on expanding phase 1 to implement a comprehensive green building standard for all new construction. The adoption of this ordinance was recognized with the 2008 Building Officials Association of Texas (BOAT) Award of Excellence for extra-large jurisdictions and a 2009 North

Central Texas Council of Governments CLIDE Award in Public Policy for its outstanding contribution to the building profession and the community.

The adoption of this ordinance has been highly successful. In 2018 Dallas ranked 3rd in EPA's annual Top 25 Cities list with 468 ENERGY STAR certified buildings with approximately 423,000 MTCO₂e emissions avoided and \$65 million in cost savings. The City of Dallas is committed to leading by example and since 2003 has implemented a 'City of Dallas Green Building Program' to incorporate sustainable building design and construction practices in municipal facilities. As of spring 2020, the City has 40 LEED certified facilities.¹²



Residents

- 01 Lower your utility costs** through the Dallas County Health and Human Services' Weatherization Assistance Program, which provides assistance to income eligible households by weatherizing their homes.
- 02** Weatherization and energy-related minor home repairs can also be funded through the **Federal Low Income Home Energy Assistance Program (LIHEAP)**.
- 03 Join the DFW Solar Tour** to learn how your neighbors—homeowners and businesses alike—are using solar energy, wind energy, energy efficiency, and other sustainable technologies to save money and consume less of our natural resources.

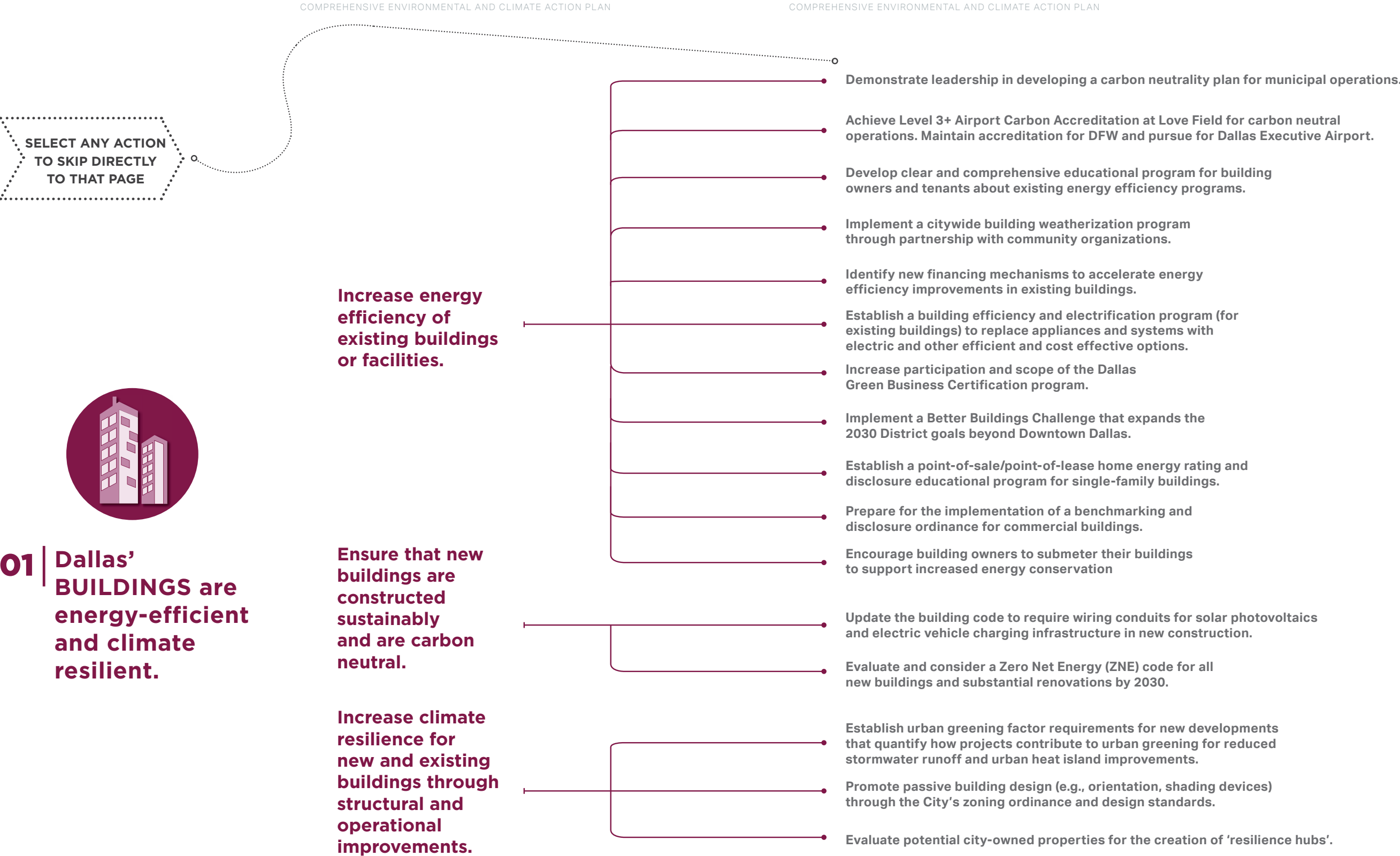


Businesses

- 01** Harness the **PACE financing program** to access low-cost loans for water conservation, energy efficiency, and/or renewable retrofits—available to owners of commercial, industrial, and multi-family residential properties (5 or more units).
- 02** Owners of multi-family properties (5 or more units) can access discounted interest rates to finance a variety of **energy and water efficiency upgrades** through the **Fannie Mae Green Initiative**.
- 03** Business owners can enroll in the **no-cost Commercial Solutions Program** to identify energy-saving opportunities and receive incentives for qualifying appliance upgrades or building retrofits.



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE



INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES

B1. DEMONSTRATE LEADERSHIP IN DEVELOPING A CARBON NEUTRALITY PLAN FOR MUNICIPAL OPERATIONS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost savings



Education

ACTION TYPE
Plan
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

Municipal emissions represent less than 3% of the citywide total emissions inventory.¹³ However, the City of Dallas will continue to lead by example with the development of a plan to achieve carbon neutrality in municipal operations by 2030. Nearly two-thirds of Dallas' municipal emissions come from energy use in buildings and facilities. The City will standardize its building energy audit practices to ensure all buildings and facilities are reviewed to identify retrofit opportunities, including retro-commissioning of major building equipment and systems.

Based on the audit results, the City will establish a set of energy reduction targets that lead to carbon neutrality in municipal buildings. The City will complement energy efficiency improvements with additional renewable energy development and storage capacity to help offset remaining emissions at municipal buildings and facilities, including opportunities for solar panels on parking garages at Love Field.

To implement building retrofit opportunities, the City can contract with an ESCO to provide financing, installation, and monitoring of cost-effective improvements. This action will also include an educational program with City employees that demonstrates how to reduce energy consumption in the workplace.



SELECT THE GOAL
ICON TO RETURN TO
THE SUMMARY PAGE

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES

B2. ACHIEVE LEVEL 3+ AIRPORT CARBON ACCREDITATION AT LOVE FIELD FOR CARBON NEUTRAL OPERATIONS, MAINTAIN ACCREDITATION FOR DFW AND PURSUE FOR DALLAS EXECUTIVE AIRPORT.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost savings

ACTION TYPE
Program, Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The Airport Carbon Accreditation program is an international reporting framework that supports airports in consistently and transparently reducing their operational emissions. Dallas has already achieved Level 2 accreditation at Love Field after developing an airport operational carbon footprint (Level 1), and then setting and achieving carbon reduction targets (Level 2).

The City will include emissions from third-party operators (e.g., retail tenants, catering companies) in their carbon footprint and engage with those operators to reduce their emissions.

The City will also incorporate solar panels on airport garages, as feasible, and then acquire carbon offsets for any remaining emissions sources over which the airport has control to achieve Level 3+ accreditation. Dallas Fort Worth Airport has already achieved a three-year Level 3+ accreditation through 2021, and the City will work with DFW to maintain this accreditation into the future.

The City will also pursue Airport Carbon Accreditation at Dallas Executive Airport.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



B3. DEVELOP CLEAR AND COMPREHENSIVE EDUCATIONAL PROGRAM FOR BUILDING OWNERS AND TENANTS ABOUT EXISTING ENERGY EFFICIENCY PROGRAMS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost Savings



Education



Inequality

ACTION TYPE
Program Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City will develop a building energy retrofit landing page on its website to share links to available financial resources (e.g., through Oncor, Dallas County Health and Human Services (DCHHS), the Texas LoanSTAR program, and the City's (PACE) financing program). It will also partner with community and neighborhood organizations to develop an outreach strategy that promotes these opportunities to all segments of the community. The engagement campaign will connect lower-income residents, the senior community, and non-native English households and businesses with technical assistance and tailored information on energy efficiency programs.

The City will also evaluate options to develop an Energy Resource Center, either through a City department or in partnership with an outside organization/agency. The center would help property owners find qualified contractors or service providers, understand the steps needed to achieve a high-efficiency building, and provide case studies and information on financial resources. The Energy Resource Center could also implement specific educational campaigns associated with the roll-out of various City programs, including residential building energy audits, commercial benchmarking, and zero-net energy development.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Household utility cost savings will benefit vulnerable residents, including low-income households who on average spend a higher proportion of their income on energy.
- Focused engagement with vulnerable populations can address barriers in access to financial and technical assistance programs due to income, education, age, English proficiency, etc.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



B4. IMPLEMENT A CITYWIDE BUILDING WEATHERIZATION PROGRAM THROUGH PARTNERSHIP WITH COMMUNITY ORGANIZATIONS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost savings



Education



Inequality



Public health

ACTION TYPE
Partnership; Educational
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

DCHHS currently implements a weatherization program for income-eligible households in the county.¹⁴ In partnership with Dallas County, the City will implement a weatherization program for the city's vulnerable residents to improve energy efficiency and reduce utility costs. The City will identify funding to support a direct-install program for weather stripping, caulking, insulation, window and door repair, solar screens, heating and cooling unit repair/retrofits, and duct work. The City will also identify partnership opportunities with community organizations to help recruit program participants and assist in program implementation.

The weatherization program will include development of engagement programs to reach lower-income residents and the senior community, including Dallas' non-native English households, to provide them with a clear understanding of participation benefits and financial or other resources available.



EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Weatherization will provide household utility cost savings that benefit low-income residents, who on average spend a higher proportion of their income on energy.
- Focused engagement with vulnerable populations can address barriers in program participation due to income, education, age, English proficiency, etc.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

B5. IDENTIFY NEW FINANCING MECHANISMS TO ACCELERATE ENERGY EFFICIENCY IMPROVEMENTS IN EXISTING BUILDINGS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost savings



Education



Inequality



The cost to implement building energy upgrades is the largest barrier to action and the demand for financial rebates and incentive programs for building energy retrofits often far exceeds available resources. Therefore, the City will explore alternative financing mechanisms or partnerships that will support accelerated retrofits in the existing building stock. Part of this effort will include expanding participation in the City's existing PACE financing program. This program provides long-term financing for non-residential and multi-family residential energy and water efficiency upgrades, allowing improvements to be paid for with lower operating costs.

The City will also identify seed funding resources or strategies to support the development of a building retrofit revolving loan fund that would be available to residential property owners, among others. The revolving loan fund could also potentially be used to reduce, or offset costs associated with building energy audits (see Action B8), which can help to increase property owners' understanding of cost-effective efficiency improvement opportunities; the loan fund could then help to finance the retrofit opportunities identified.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Household utility cost savings will benefit vulnerable residents, including low-income households who on average spend a higher proportion of their income on energy.
- Focused engagement with vulnerable populations can address barriers in access to financial and technical assistance programs due to income, education, age, English proficiency, etc.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

B6. ESTABLISH A BUILDING EFFICIENCY AND ELECTRIFICATION PROGRAM (FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS) TO REPLACE APPLIANCES AND SYSTEMS WITH ELECTRIC AND OTHER EFFICIENT AND COST EFFECTIVE OPTIONS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air Quality

The City will partner with electric utility companies to develop a building electrification program that helps residents and businesses to replace natural gas-powered equipment and appliances with high-efficiency electric options. The program will provide information, technical assistance, and financial incentives to replace equipment, such as boilers and furnaces, hot water heaters, and stoves with electric alternatives (which will help reduce emissions over time).

The City can also coordinate with building trade organizations to ensure local contractors are trained to provide high-quality installations of electric heating and cooling systems, such as air source heat pumps

The City will also work with the gas utility on an energy efficiency program to ensure that any replacement gas appliances (where an electric alternative is not technically or financially feasible) are as highly efficient as possible.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Focused engagement with disadvantaged populations can address barriers in access to financial and technical assistance programs due to income, education, age, English proficiency, etc.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



B7. INCREASE PARTICIPATION AND SCOPE OF THE DALLAS GREEN BUSINESS CERTIFICATION PROGRAM.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost savings



Education



Resource consumption

ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City's Green Business Certification Program recognizes local businesses that incorporate green practices into their operations to reduce waste, conserve energy, and save water. The City will partner with Dallas' various Chambers of Commerce to increase awareness of and participation in the program by their members. To increase program visibility, the City will develop and post short case studies of successes achieved by members' businesses on the City's website. The City will increase the scope of the certification program to include more sustainable practices. Additionally, the City can use this program as an opportunity to pilot other CECAP actions and evaluate the results before implementing strategies citywide.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



B8. IMPLEMENT A BETTER BUILDINGS CHALLENGE THAT EXPANDS THE 2030 DISTRICT GOALS BEYOND DOWNTOWN DALLAS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost savings

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The Dallas 2030 District initiative is designed to achieve high-performance building construction and operation in the downtown area, with goals to reduce energy and water use as well as transportation emissions. The City will expand this ambitious concept beyond downtown Dallas through collaboration with large commercial building operators, such as manufacturers, universities, and hospitals. The City will encourage participants to improve their building energy efficiency by at least 40% by 2030, and share resources on incentives, financing options and technical service providers. The City will also share success stories and feature participant profiles on the City's website.

As a step toward developing a commercial energy benchmarking and disclosure ordinance (see Action B10), the City will work with participants in the Better Buildings Challenge to pilot test different aspects of such a program, including how the program would apply to various building sizes and different reporting methods (e.g., directly to the City, through online programs such as ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager).

Participation in this pilot test would be voluntary and would help the City to refine its approach to energy benchmarking. During the pilot testing process, the City will convene meetings with stakeholder groups, including building owners/managers and real estate industry trade groups, to discuss the benefits of such a program and collect input on how to it can be successfully implemented citywide. This engagement process will help establish support for such a program now and in the future.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



B9. ESTABLISH A POINT-OF-SALE/POINT-OF-LEASE HOME ENERGY RATING AND DISCLOSURE EDUCATIONAL PROGRAM FOR SINGLE-FAMILY BUILDINGS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Education

ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will take a phased approach to reducing residential building emissions. Understanding a home's energy rating prior to purchase or lease allows consumers to consider energy efficiency and its impact on utility costs in their decision making.

As a first step, the City will work with the local real estate community to develop an educational program that provides information on building energy audits to new home buyers. The information will explain what an energy audit is, how they are conducted, how the results can inform cost-effective efficiency improvements, and where homebuyers can find information on certified audit professionals and possible rebates or incentives. Implementation of home energy audits can also contribute to local green job development and/or training programs to meet the new demand.

The second step will be implemented at a future date. The City will adopt an ordinance that requires home energy rating disclosure at the point of sale or lease for single-family buildings. Sellers would be required to have a Home Energy Rating System (HERS) evaluation prepared for their home and made available to interested buyers/tenants. The City would identify exemptions, alternative compliance strategies, or financial resources to reduce the burden on lower-income households. As with home energy audits, promotion of home energy ratings will also contribute to local green job opportunities.

As a third step, the City will adopt a Residential Energy Conservation Ordinance (RECO) that requires residential property owners to install energy conservation measures in their buildings at the point of property sale or lease. The City will establish RECO requirements that include either a building efficiency threshold that must be met through installation of building improvements chosen by the building owner or a checklist of mandatory installations. The City will also establish maximum expenditure limits for compliance and identify exemptions, alternative compliance strategies, or financial resources to reduce the burden on lower-income households. Requiring energy efficiency improvements in homes will also contribute to job growth among the building trades.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Information on home energy efficiency can help vulnerable populations to compare the utility cost savings potential of various housing options.
- Overall energy efficiency of existing housing stock will increase, leading to lower utility bills for occupants (step 3).
- At each step, the City will evaluate the cost implications of these revisions to low income households and consider subsidy programs or other financial support mechanisms to ensure affordability and equitable participation.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



B10. PREPARE FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF A BENCHMARKING AND DISCLOSURE ORDINANCE FOR COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Cost savings

ACTION TYPE
Educational; Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will take a phased approach to reducing commercial building emissions. Successful implementation of this action will require an education campaign for the real estate and property management community in Dallas, with emphasis on commercial landlords, to explain the purpose and benefits of benchmarking and the process of reporting results. The City can also leverage informational resources from similar programs in other cities, including Austin. As described in Action B8, implementation of this program will begin with a voluntary pilot program through the Better Buildings Challenge focused on the Central Business District. Participant and stakeholder feedback will help design the specifics of a citywide benchmarking and disclosure ordinance.

Following the initial information campaign and pilot test through the Better Buildings Challenge, Step 1 of this action will include adopting a commercial benchmarking and disclosure ordinance to establish a baseline understanding of buildings' energy efficiency relative to buildings of similar type and size. The City will define building size thresholds for participation that can be reduced over time to phase in implementation of this program. Initial implementation will begin with large commercial buildings to minimize impacts on small businesses.

Over time, the program can be modified to increase requirements. Step 2 will include developing a commercial building energy performance ordinance that requires energy audits or retro-commissioning for buildings. This will help to identify specific cost-effective improvements that building managers can take to reduce operational costs. Step 3 could include establishing energy use or emissions targets.

ENSURE THAT NEW BUILDINGS ARE CONSTRUCTED SUSTAINABLY AND ARE CARBON NEUTRAL.



B11. UPDATE THE BUILDING CODE TO REQUIRE WIRING CONDUITS FOR SOLAR PHOTOVOLTAICS AND ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING INFRASTRUCTURE IN NEW CONSTRUCTION.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS

ACTION TYPE
Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action



Mitigation



Adaptation



Designing solar-ready and EV-ready buildings is a low-cost strategy to encourage adoption of these technologies. Dallas already adopts and implements various building codes, including the IECC, to guide building construction and renovations. The 2018 IECC includes appendices that are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by cities, including Appendix CA Solar Ready Zone (commercial buildings) and RA Solar Ready Provisions (residential buildings). These appendices describe provisions to make buildings solar-ready, including accommodations for solar equipment, piping, and wiring, to encourage future installation of renewable energy systems. The City will adopt these appendices in the next building code update to support solar-ready construction. At the same time, the City will also include EV infrastructure requirements for new construction, including pre-wiring and electrical capacity, to accommodate future EV charging points.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Solar ready construction could reduce utility costs for vulnerable residents when paired with financial programs to support installation of rooftop solar.

ENSURE THAT NEW BUILDINGS ARE CONSTRUCTED SUSTAINABLY AND ARE CARBON NEUTRAL.



B12. EVALUATE AND CONSIDER A ZERO NET ENERGY (ZNE) CODE FOR ALL NEW BUILDINGS AND SUBSTANTIAL RENOVATIONS BY 2030.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action



Mitigation



Air Quality



Cost savings

Zero Net Energy (ZNE) buildings have a high-efficiency design that minimizes energy demand and produces as much energy as consumed over the course of a year. To guide energy efficiency in new construction and renovations, Dallas adopts and implements building codes, including the IECC.

The City will evaluate its options to adopt different building energy codes in the future, if IECC updates do not provide a pathway toward ZNE buildings. The City will consider alternative code options to achieve ZNE objectives, such as Architecture 2030's Zero Code. The City will aim to implement a ZNE building code starting in 2030 for new construction and will identify ways to incentivize, early voluntary achievement of this goal.

The City will also promote the concept of net zero neighborhoods to achieve the goals of this action on a larger scale. The City will work with developers and home builders to identify potential opportunities for pilot sites. For example, redevelopment of the Hensley Field Site can be considered an opportunity to develop a carbon neutral district where buildings are designed and constructed to achieve ZNE standards, including development of in-district renewable energy systems. This project could then serve as a best practice example of Dallas' leadership and innovation, and as a demonstration project for other Dallas area developments to highlight the feasibility and lessons learned.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- ZNE building requirements could increase the cost of new construction and pose a barrier to new affordable housing development. The City will evaluate the cost implications for these new low-income housing developments along with an estimate of the return on investment. While the up-front cost may be slightly higher than existing, the significantly reduced ongoing energy costs would benefit low-income residents.



ACTION TYPE
Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

INCREASE CLIMATE RESILIENCE FOR NEW AND EXISTING BUILDINGS THROUGH STRUCTURAL AND OPERATIONAL IMPROVEMENTS.

B13. ESTABLISH URBAN GREENING FACTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR NEW DEVELOPMENTS THAT QUANTIFY HOW PROJECTS CONTRIBUTE TO URBAN GREENING FOR REDUCED STORMWATER RUNOFF AND URBAN HEAT ISLAND IMPROVEMENTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions
Reduction



Adaptation



Air
Quality



Water
Quality



Public
Health



Cost
Savings

Vegetation and green space help to reduce and/or slow stormwater runoff (and therefore flooding) and can reduce urban heat islands, provide wildlife habitat, and provide other social and environmental benefits. The City will establish urban greening factor requirements for new developments around rainwater infiltration that will ensure a minimum level of runoff reduction and “greening” is achieved in the city. Guidance will be provided around the range of urban greening options are available, such as planting street trees, installing green roofs, or incorporating rain gardens; each has a different

greening factor based on its potential for rainwater infiltration. The City will partner with stakeholder groups, including neighborhood organizations and the development community, to define urban greening factor thresholds for different project types (e.g., residential, commercial).

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- If a pilot of this urban greening factor is required, a low-income community that is currently devoid of permeable surfaces or street greening will be prioritized as the pilot.

B14. PROMOTE PASSIVE BUILDING DESIGN (E.G., ORIENTATION, SHADING DEVICES) THROUGH THE CITY'S ZONING ORDINANCE AND DESIGN STANDARDS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Cost
Savings

Passive building design reduces energy consumption and improves occupant comfort by optimizing a building's heat gain and losses. The City will identify opportunities to reinforce passive design principles through its zoning ordinances and design standards, including use of building-integrated shading devices that block solar radiation in summer months while allowing it in winter months. The City will also partner with the

local green building industry to identify examples of effective passive building design in and around the Dallas region and share case studies on the City's website.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Household utility cost savings will benefit low-income residents, who on average spend a higher proportion of their income on energy.



ACTION TYPE
Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

INCREASE CLIMATE RESILIENCE FOR NEW AND EXISTING BUILDINGS THROUGH STRUCTURAL AND OPERATIONAL IMPROVEMENTS.

B15. EVALUATE POTENTIAL CITY-OWNED PROPERTIES FOR THE CREATION OF 'RESILIENCE HUBS'.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost
Savings



Inequality



Public
Health

Major storm events that disrupt electricity services in a community for a long period of time can present a safety challenge if power outages also impact the City's fire, police, and emergency response services. Resilience hubs are part of a strategy to disperse stormproof facilities across a community that can provide an independent source of power to serve multiple community needs.

Resilience hubs are designed to provide emergency heating and cooling services; support refrigeration of temperature-sensitive medications; or offer residents a place to recharge cell phones or computer batteries during a grid outage. Resiliency hubs can also serve as the base of operations for first responders or other critical service providers during power outages.

The City will identify potential resilience hub locations that can be developed to establish a citywide network that serves Dallas' various communities. Buildings identified as candidates should be fitted with solar photovoltaics and battery storage systems and/or connected to a microgrid to ensure reliable access to power during storm events.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Resilience hubs located in vulnerable communities can provide access to emergency services, including heating/cooling and electricity for phone charging, for residents who may not have backup generators for storm events.

INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY OF EXISTING BUILDINGS OR FACILITIES



ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

B16. ENCOURAGE BUILDING OWNERS TO SUBMETER THEIR BUILDINGS TO SUPPORT INCREASED ENERGY CONSERVATION.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost Savings



Education

Utility submetering allows property owners to bill tenants for their individually measured utility usage (e.g., electricity, gas, or water). Submetering can reduce costs by allowing commercial or multifamily properties to accurately bill units for consumption which drives energy-related behavioral change. Submetering enables the improved performance of new and existing buildings by providing the transparency needed to enable more efficient management of energy in operations and maintenance.

The City will provide an educational program for commercial and multifamily properties that explains what submetering is, its financial and environmental benefits, and how it could prepare them to meet future building code requirements. The program will also include resources on companies that provide submetering services. This program can be promoted through the proposed Energy Resource Center as outlined in Action B3.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Submetering properties could align utility costs more accurately with tenant usage and reduce usage and costs over time.





GOAL 2: DALLAS GENERATES AND USES RENEWABLE, RELIABLE, AND AFFORDABLE ENERGY.

Why Energy Matters	p. 69
Building on City Achievements	p. 71
What can I do?	p. 72
Actions	p. 73

TARGETS

739,000 MW AND 3,695,000 MW SOLAR POWER INSTALLED WITHIN THE CITY BY 2030 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.

20% AND 50% OF ALL DALLAS RESIDENTS AND BUSINESSES ENROLL IN RENEWABLE ELECTRICITY PLANS BY 2030 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.



WHY ENERGY MATTERS

Dallas' residents have witnessed the impacts of extreme weather on the grid. Severe storms can uproot trees and tear down power lines. Dallas experienced multiple events in 2019 that left residents and businesses without power for days, which can have significant economic, as well as public health implications. Dallas primarily relies on electricity that has been generated by fossil fuels (20% is generated from coal and 48% from natural gas) (**Figure 21**). Although Texas is the largest producer of wind in the country, renewable energy (solar, wind and other renewables) only provides 22% of the grid electricity mix. Due to the hot climate and use of air conditioning for many months of the year, air conditioning accounts for a much larger share of home energy use, than space heating when compared to the U.S. average (18% in Texas compared with 6% in the U.S.).¹⁵ Texas households consume an average of 77 million Btu per year, about 14% less than the U.S. average.¹⁶

The renewable energy market is growing globally, as technologies (particularly photovoltaic panels and batteries) become more affordable and adaptable. With an average of 234 days of sunshine per year, Dallas has the potential to take much more advantage of solar technologies. **Figure 22** illustrates the potential energy captured using roofs on existing buildings. Texas' unique energy market makes it difficult for cities to directly regulate this sector. In 1999, the Texas legislature de-regulated the retail electricity market, which led to Dallas being serviced by over 115 retail electricity providers. Some of these electricity providers allow customers

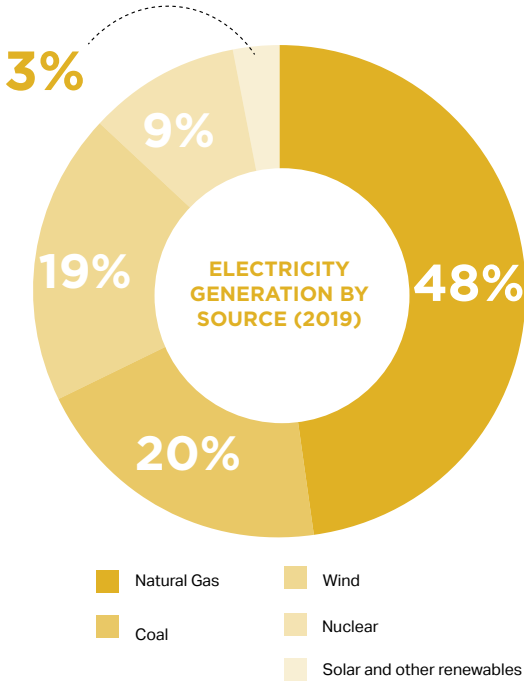


Figure 21: Electricity generation by source
Source: ERCOT 2019

to purchase 100% renewable electricity at rates competitive with other retailers, which provides an opportunity for the City to indirectly influence electricity sector emissions. While in the future ERCOT is likely to continue to change its energy generation sources to include a growing share of renewable energy, residents and businesses have the option to choose renewable energy sources today from their electricity provider, which can help to speed up decarbonization in the energy sector.

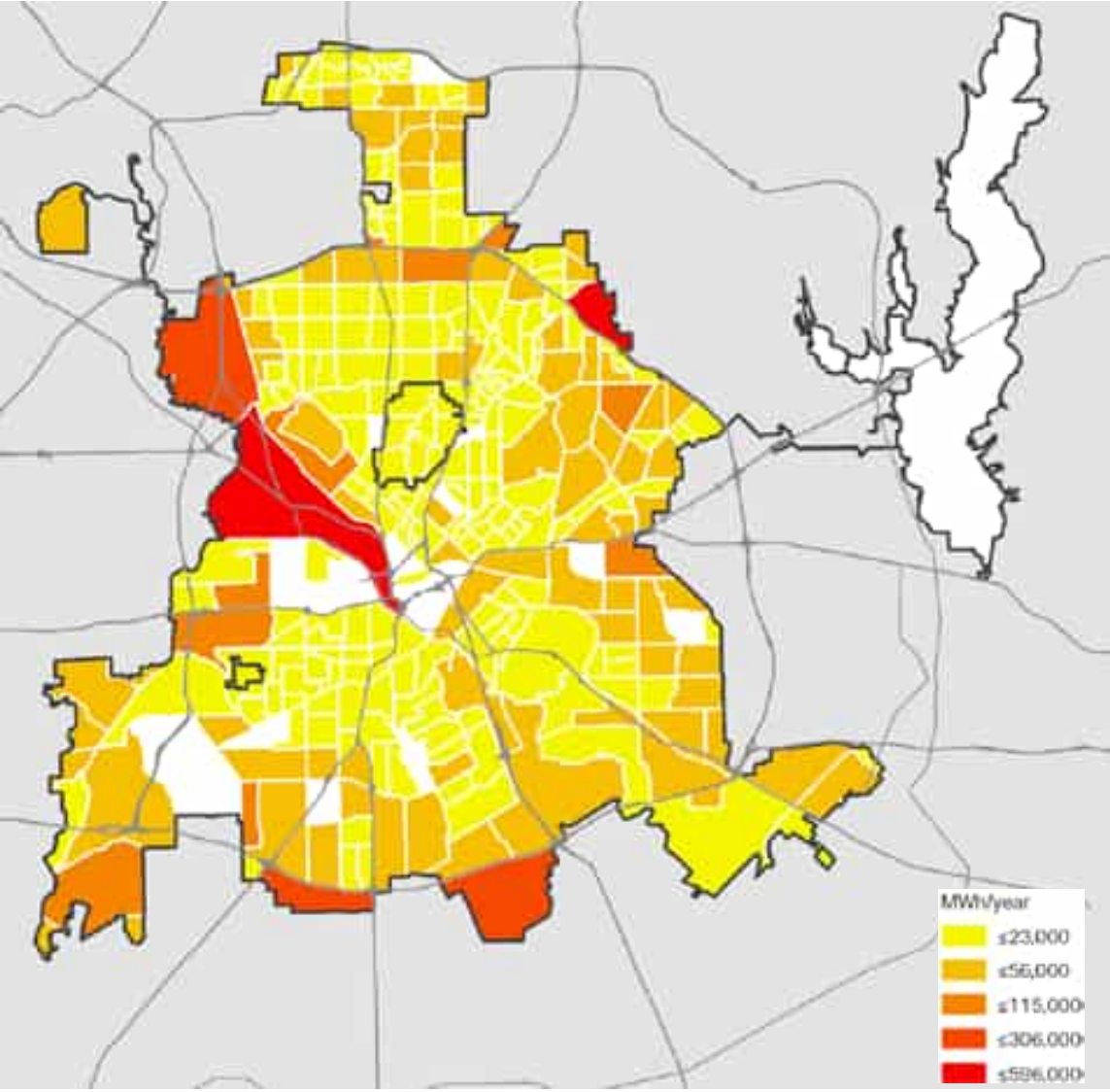


Figure 22: Citywide solar energy capture potential
Estimated solar installation potential based on rooftop area suitable for solar panels
Source: Data from Google's sunroof 2020

Solutions in the energy sector primarily focus on encouraging the use of, and investment in renewable energy through partnerships, incentives, educational programs and advocacy at the state and national levels.



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

The City of Dallas achieves 100% renewable electricity usage through the purchase of renewable energy credits (RECs). Dallas has had a de facto renewable energy policy in place since at least 2008 when the City began purchasing renewable energy offsets (offsetting 40% of its electricity usage). This increased to 50% in October 2015 and to 100% in January 2017. The City formally adopted the Dallas Green Energy Policy in April 2019. The City has also implemented solar energy at seven municipal facilities with about 586 KW in solar capacity.

The City ranked 2nd in EPA's Green Power Partnership Top 30 Local Government list in 2019. The list represents the largest green power users among local government partners. The City of Dallas ranks 17th in EPA's Green Power Partnership National Top 100 list.

The National Top 100 list represents the largest green power users within the Green Power Partnership.¹⁷ A Green Energy policy was implemented in May 2019 in alignment with the CECAP by formalizing the purchasing of RECs, guiding development of an energy management system and procurement strategy, and supporting the development of on- and off-site generation.

The Dallas Green Energy Policy:

The City of Dallas is committed to clean and efficient energy use and the commitment is embodied by our use of 100% renewable energy for municipal operations. The City of Dallas further recognizes the advantage presented by green energy produced by on- and off-site renewable energy projects. Accordingly, the City will seek to sustain and promote renewable energy projects and partnerships that reduce emissions and environmental impacts for the benefit of Dallas residents and the region.¹⁸

WHAT CAN I DO?



Residents

- 01** Homeowners within the Oncor service area can make use of the [Solar Residential Program](#) to help offset the initial cost of installing solar panels — once installed, you may even receive credit for excess generation your system produces!
- 02** Use the Texas Public Utility Commission's [Power to Choose](#) website to evaluate your electricity provider options and select a provider with a higher proportion of renewable energy (potentially at low or no extra cost).

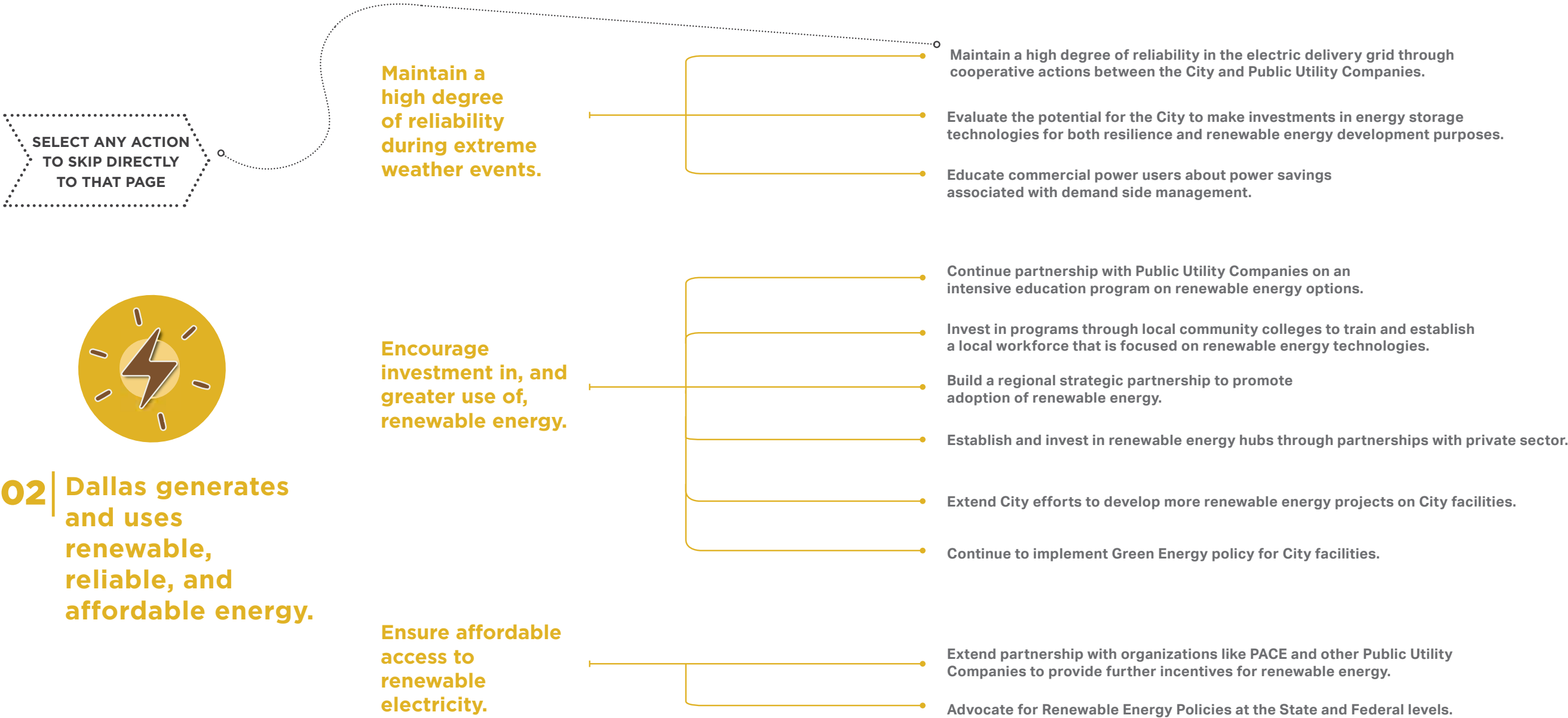


Businesses

- 01** Qualifying business and commercial property owners within the Oncor service area can use the [Basic Commercial Program](#) to help fund new solar panels.
- 02** Use the Texas Public Utility Commission's [Power to Choose](#) website to select a provider with a higher proportion of renewable energy and then notify customers of your commitment to clean energy.



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE



MAINTAIN A HIGH DEGREE OF RELIABILITY DURING EXTREME WEATHER EVENTS

ENCOURAGE INVESTMENT IN, AND GREATER USE OF, RENEWABLE ENERGY.



E1.

MAINTAIN A HIGH DEGREE OF RELIABILITY IN THE ELECTRIC DELIVERY GRID THROUGH COOPERATIVE ACTIONS BETWEEN THE CITY AND PUBLIC UTILITY COMPANIES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

One of the major impacts of climate change in the Dallas region is the potential for a greater number of more intense storms. Significant damage to the electric grid can occur under these circumstances. The City will work with public utility companies to assist them in making the necessary improvements

to the grid. One option is to bury electric lines, especially in areas that are highly susceptible to high winds and storms (heavily wooded areas), and/or carry out sensitive tree trimming.

E2.

EVALUATE THE POTENTIAL FOR THE CITY TO MAKE INVESTMENTS IN ENERGY STORAGE TECHNOLOGIES FOR BOTH RESILIENCE AND RENEWABLE ENERGY DEVELOPMENT PURPOSES.



Adaptation



Cost Savings



Emissions Reduction

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

Energy storage technologies such as batteries provide multiple benefits. They can be used to provide emergency electricity supply in the case of grid outage during major storm events for critical facilities. They can improve the cost benefit of renewable energy technologies through improving the continuity of service (for example for a solar powered system to provide power even when it is cloudy). Finally, major energy consumers can use storage to take advantage of time-of-day rates. Energy can be purchased at night when rates are low, then used during the day when rates are high.

Oncor has a demonstration project south of downtown Dallas called Oncor Electric Technology Demonstration & Education Center (TDEC). The

City will evaluate opportunities to duplicate the technology for energy storage and microgrid installation for critical buildings such as emergency service buildings (fire, police, hospitals, emergency management centers) or community facilities such as recreation centers that could act as community resilience hubs during a disaster. (See action B15.) The City will also consider expanding a storage program to include collaborative projects between the City and the private sector.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Pilot microgrids and resilience hubs should be prioritized to first serve neighborhoods with vulnerable communities.



E3.

CONTINUE PARTNERSHIP WITH PUBLIC UTILITY COMPANIES ON AN INTENSIVE EDUCATION PROGRAM ON RENEWABLE ENERGY OPTIONS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Employment



Cost Savings



Education

ACTION TYPE
Educational; Incentives; Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

There are significant changes taking place in the energy sector including opportunities for implementing small scale renewable energy systems and associated financing options. The changes affect both the residential and commercial sectors. Given that over two thirds of the energy consumed in the city is from the commercial, industrial and institutional sectors, the City will focus a significant part of its education program on this sector, highlighting the cost savings, demand side management practices and other benefits gained from installing on-site renewables and from purchasing a renewable energy electricity contract. The City will also partner with local utilities, the PACE program, educational institutions, and other stakeholders to participate in the public information program. The public information campaign would use multiple channels, including social media, to reach a wide range of audiences. Note that this program on renewable energy would complement energy efficiency emphasis in the buildings' education campaign.

In addition to promoting the existing incentive programs and financing options for renewable energy systems, the City and its partners will explore new financing opportunities such as grants and subsidies.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Ensure outreach campaigns and materials are available in multiple languages and are culturally appropriate.
- Focused engagement with vulnerable populations can address barriers in access to financial and technical assistance programs due to income, education, age, English proficiency, etc.

ENCOURAGE INVESTMENT IN, AND GREATER USE OF, RENEWABLE ENERGY.



E4. INVEST IN PROGRAMS THROUGH LOCAL COMMUNITY COLLEGES TO TRAIN AND ESTABLISH A LOCAL WORKFORCE THAT IS FOCUSED ON RENEWABLE ENERGY TECHNOLOGIES.

ACTION TYPE
Educational; Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Education

Recognizing that the development of renewable technologies represents a new opportunity for workforce development, the City will partner with local community colleges such as Dallas County Community College District and related non-profit organizations to train and place individuals in this industry. Local community colleges have already initiated sustainability programs including training in renewable energy technologies. The City will assist in creating a demand for careers in renewable energy and support the program by considering, for example, work placements on the installation and maintenance of renewable systems on city property.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This program could provide job opportunities for those currently underemployed in the workforce.
- The program should prioritize participants from low income communities when recruiting.



Credit: Kristian Buus (CC BY 2.0)

ENCOURAGE INVESTMENT IN, AND GREATER USE OF, RENEWABLE ENERGY.



E5. BUILD A REGIONAL STRATEGIC PARTNERSHIP TO PROMOTE ADOPTION OF RENEWABLE ENERGY.

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Education

The City will take the lead in setting up a regional strategic partnership with other public sector agencies including North Texas Counties, and school districts, as well as local universities, to increase investment in renewable energy projects (and associated energy conservation).

A technical advisory committee would facilitate the policy making process.

E6. ESTABLISH AND INVEST IN RENEWABLE ENERGY HUBS THROUGH PARTNERSHIPS WITH THE PRIVATE SECTOR.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Cost Savings



Adaptation

Building on Action E2 to evaluate the potential for energy storage and solar powered microgrids, the City will evaluate opportunities to establish "Renewable Energy hubs," that focus investments in renewable energy and energy storage through public-private partnerships.

The City will work with the business community to understand the institutional and contractual requirements to form such a partnership for the joint development of solar or other types of renewable projects. The project could serve as a model for larger scale investments in solar energy. The City will evaluate funding opportunities from organizations such as the State Energy Office and other agencies.

ENCOURAGE INVESTMENT IN, AND GREATER USE OF, RENEWABLE ENERGY.



ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

E7.

EXTEND CITY EFFORTS TO DEVELOP MORE RENEWABLE ENERGY PROJECTS AT CITY FACILITIES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Cost Savings

Aligned with Action B1 to develop a carbon neutrality plan, the City will identify further suitable locations for photovoltaic panel installations on its facilities. As a local demonstration project, the City will consider a solar energy project on suitable, under-utilized city-owned land that has little opportunity for future development, such as a brownfields site or closed landfills. The City of Houston's Sunnyside Energy project on a landfill is a good example of

a similar project). Other opportunities include expanding the existing City's Southside treatment facility and McCommas Bluff renewable energy projects.

The City will develop case studies outlining the cost-benefits gained from its own renewable energy projects to encourage other installations. This information could be used in the education campaign as part of Action E3.

E8.

CONTINUE TO IMPLEMENT GREEN ENERGY POLICY FOR CITY FACILITIES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Cost Savings

The City of Dallas began offsetting its electricity consumption through renewable energy credits in 2008. In January 2017, it increased its offsets for municipal facilities to 100%.¹⁹ The City will continue to implement the Green Energy Policy and identify further opportunities for partnerships that can facilitate implementation of on-site and off-site renewable energy projects.

ENSURE AFFORDABLE ACCESS TO RENEWABLE ELECTRICITY



ACTION TYPE
Incentive; Educational
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

E9.

EXTEND PARTNERSHIP WITH ORGANIZATIONS LIKE PACE AND OTHER PUBLIC UTILITY COMPANIES TO PROVIDE FURTHER INCENTIVES FOR RENEWABLE ENERGY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Employment



Education



Inequality



Cost Savings

The City will partner with local utilities, the State Energy Office, trusted community organizations (e.g., Habitat for Humanity) and financial institutions to provide financial resources for greater investment in renewable energy.

The City will explore opportunities to leverage existing programs such as financial incentives provided by public utility companies and PACE. The program should specifically look to new economic development opportunities for tying innovative energy solutions with future development projects. As part of this approach, traditional economic development incentives (such as local tax abatements) could be prioritized to projects that incorporate renewable energy resources as part of their development. Financial incentives for renewables should focus on low-income populations, after energy conservation measures have been implemented.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Partner with trusted allies in reaching out to low-income communities to ensure greater acceptance.
- Ensure outreach campaigns and materials are available in multiple languages and are culturally appropriate.

ENSURE AFFORDABLE ACCESS TO RENEWABLE ELECTRICITY



ACTION TYPE
Advocacy
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

E10. ADVOCATE FOR RENEWABLE ENERGY POLICIES AT THE STATE AND FEDERAL LEVELS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation

State and federal policies have had a significant impact on the development of wind and solar energy resources. This has been accomplished through tax policies at the federal level and through the Texas Renewable Energy Portfolio Standards. Federal production tax credits for wind will expire in 2020. Solar energy investment tax credits are 26% in 2020 but will decrease to 22% in 2021 and 10% in 2022.

Through U.S. Climate Mayors, the City will advocate for federal policies that facilitate decarbonizing the U.S. power sector. The City will work with other Texas mayors to advocate the state legislature to increase the Texas Renewable Portfolio Standard to 80% zero-carbon electricity by 2050.

These policies may include incentives provided by electric utilities; statewide building code standards making renewables more accessible; increases in the REPS (while maintaining a high degree of system reliability; and state and federal investments in renewable energy and energy storage technologies).

SELECT THE GOAL
ICON TO RETURN TO
THE SUMMARY PAGE

MAINTAIN A HIGH DEGREE OF RELIABILITY DURING EXTREME WEATHER EVENTS



ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

E11. EDUCATE COMMERCIAL POWER USERS ABOUT POWER SAVINGS ASSOCIATED WITH DEMAND SIDE MANAGEMENT.

PRIMARY BENEFIT CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Adaptation



Cost Savings

A demand response program encourages customers to reduce their electricity consumption in response to either high energy prices or system reliability risks. Such programs provide an incentive for building owners and tenants to help increase grid reliability and reduce system-wide energy costs.

Currently, commercial properties in Dallas can participate in Oncor's Commercial Load Management Program (CLM). This program is designed to cost-effectively reduce energy demand during the summer peak period while assisting in reaching the demand savings goal established by the Public Utility Commission of Texas (PUCT).

Program participation is limited to eligible commercial customers who register as a service provider and have demands greater than 50 kW. Other energy efficiency service providers can participate if they aggregate commercial customers for the purposes of demand reduction. If the participating customers reduce their summer on-peak energy demand at specific times, the service provider will be rewarded with a monetary incentive from Oncor. If the service provider is aggregating commercial loads, they may then pass on the incentive to their customers.

The City will develop an educational program that explains what demand response is, outlines its financial and environmental benefits, and presents ways to participate in the CLM program.

The City will create a list of large commercial properties or property types with high energy intensities it can target for this educational program. The program can also connect commercial properties to service providers who will be participating in the CLM program. This can be achieved through the proposed Energy Resource Center as outlined in Action B3.



GOAL 3: DALLAS' COMMUNITIES HAVE ACCESS TO SUSTAINABLE, AFFORDABLE, TRANSPORTATION OPTIONS.

Why Transportation Matters	p. 85
Building on City Achievements	p. 87
What can I do?	p. 88
Actions	p. 89



TARGETS

- INSTALL **1,500** EV CHARGING OUTLETS TO SUPPORT 39,000 VEHICLES THROUGHOUT THE CITY BY 2030.
- ALL NEW TRANSIT BUSES** AND LIGHT DUTY VEHICLES PURCHASED BY THE CITY, DALLAS SCHOOLS, AND DART AFTER 2030 TO BE FULLY ELECTRIFIED, AND THEN FULL FLEET TRANSITION BY 2040.
- SINGLE OCCUPANT VEHICLE TRAVEL MODE SHIFT FROM **88% TO 79% IN 2030 AND 88% TO 62% IN 2050.**



WHY TRANSPORTATION MATTERS

The transportation sector, which includes private and public vehicles, trains, and planes, contributes 34% of GHG emissions for the City of Dallas, of which 98% is attributed to on-road transportation. The cost of congestion at the regional level (based on productive hours lost to travel delay) reached an estimated \$12.1 billion in 2018.²⁰ The majority (76.8%) of Dallas residents drive to work alone and the remaining 23.2% carpool (11.1%), telework (4.87%), use public transit (3.8%), walk (1.9%) or bicycle (0.3%). Of the workforce in Dallas, almost 2% have “super commutes” in excess of 90 minutes.²¹ Despite having the longest light rail system in the nation, unsustainable land development patterns continue to promote the use of private vehicles. Only 18.7% of all residents are within a 10-minute walk of a transit stop, and residents in majority black neighborhoods have significantly less access to jobs using transit than residents in racially diverse neighborhoods (17 times less, based on a 30-minute transit commute).²²

Dallas County fails to meet federal air quality standards for ground level ozone, which is produced when nitrogen oxides (NOx) and volatile organic compounds (VOCs) combine with sunlight. This is a direct result of internal combustion engines, especially gasoline and diesel burning engines. Air quality will therefore worsen as temperature rises if overall vehicle miles continue to increase.

Infrastructure in the region is aging, and continued population growth adds further demand. **Figures 23 and 24** highlight critical roadway segments and railways in the 100-year floodplain in Dallas County. Extreme weather can cause delays across all modes of transportation and heat can compromise worker and public safety by causing vehicles to overheat and damage tires, roadway joints, and pavements.

Solutions are aimed at shifting the dominant commuting mode away from single-occupancy, gasoline-powered vehicles. These actions have high potential to reduce overall emissions, reduce rush hour congestion, and improve air quality. Improving access to jobs through changes to land use and transit-oriented development reduces the need to commute long distances and enhances quality of life. Using active and public transportation, transportation demand management (TDM), vehicle fuel-switching and vehicle efficiency, and increasing the overall share of electric vehicles are also encouraged.

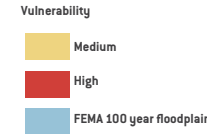


Figure 23: Critical roadway segments in the 100-year floodplain
(Dallas County in 2035)

Source: City of Dallas, FHWA, NCTCOG, & University of Texas- Arlington

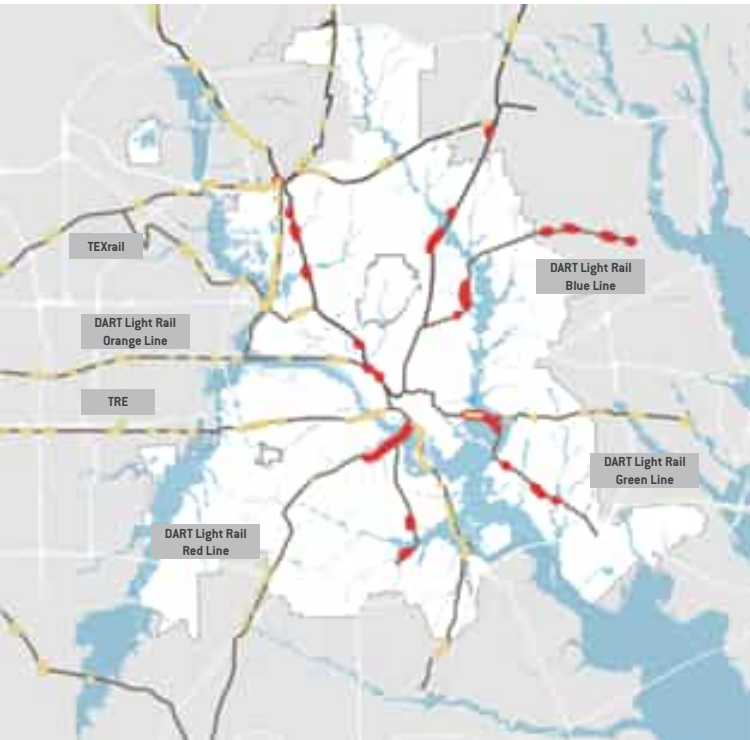
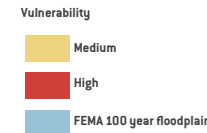


Figure 24: Critical railway segments in the 100-year floodplain
(Dallas County in 2035)

City of Dallas, FHWA, NCTCOG, & University of Texas- Arlington 2015



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

The City of Dallas' Clean Fleet Vehicle Policy helps to reduce fleet emissions, reduce overall fuel consumption, save money, and improve air quality for the entire region. The Fleet Maintenance Department manages approximately 5,300 units in its general fleet. Of these, 50% are Alternate Fuel Vehicles (AFVs). Dallas was an early adopter of AFVs and has nearly 2,000 in the general fleet. The City invested in Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) vehicles in the early 1990s, added hybrid-electrics to the fleet in 2001, began using biodiesel in 2007, and invested in full-electric vehicles in 2009.²³

In order to make DART more affordable, in Spring 2020, DART introduced a low-income pilot program between January 1st, 2020 through December 31st, 2021. The pilot program tests modifications to the existing programs and fares to assess outcomes. Discounted fares can help retain low-income riders and attract additional riders. It can reduce social and economic inequalities by making mobility financially feasible to more residents.²⁴

WHAT CAN I DO?



Residents

- 01** Commute for a whole month on the price of a tank of gas with the [DART Vanpool service](#), available to those commuting from an area not served by DART rail or bus. Riders are guaranteed a seat each day and up to two emergency rides home a quarter.
- 02** Join the [Try Parking It](#) app to find greener commute options like carpool, vanpool, and transit in north central Texas. Earn rewards from participating businesses for tracking your greener trips.
- 03** Check out [DART's Bike and Ride program](#). Bike & Ride commuting combines the cost-effectiveness of public transit with the health benefits of cycling.



Businesses

- 01** Encourage your employees to use the [DART Vanpool service](#) by offering pre-tax commuter benefits and/or offering a small subsidy. Vanpool riders get to skip the traffic by riding in the HOV lane and will show up to work less drained from their commutes.
- 02** Install **workplace charging stations** to support employees who drive electric vehicles. Contact [DFW Clean Cities](#) for more information.
- 03** Consider the [DART Employer Annual Pass program](#). Offering an annual DART pass to your employees can boost employee productivity and morale while also offering tangible benefits to your company's bottom line.



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE

SELECT ANY ACTION
TO SKIP DIRECTLY
TO THAT PAGE



03 | **Dallas' communities have access to sustainable, affordable TRANSPORTATION options.**

Shift the surface transportation system to move people and goods in fuel-efficient vehicles.

Reduce trips where people drive alone.

Synergize land use and housing with transportation infrastructure to increase access to walking and biking options, and public transit.

Ensure that walking, biking, public transit, vehicular transportation infrastructure is reliable and safe under all weather conditions.

- Work with City of Dallas, DISD, and DART to transition the bus and light duty fleet to 100% electric by 2040.
- Work with private and public intrastate transport operators to expand transit services between major super commuting cities.
- Create an incentives/fee program in which shared mobility services can increase their fleet size and operating footprint if their fleets are increasingly electrified.
- Establish a comprehensive incentives package to help accelerate Electric Vehicle use.
- Encourage businesses, commercial entities and institutions to electrify fleet, including, but not limited to local and regional delivery trucks and other heavier vehicles.
- Support and expand recommended Transportation Demand Management strategies identified within the Strategic Mobility Plan.
- Work with DART to expand the GoPass platform application as a comprehensive 'Mobility as a Service' (MaaS) provider to unify and streamline connectivity between public and private multi-modal networks.
- Secure resources to implement the existing bicycle network masterplan.
- Evaluate infrastructure to enable City policy on micromobility services to be distributed equitably.
- Increase bus service across the City by adding new routes, shortening headways, and overall increasing service reliability and customer experience.
- Adopt a target corridor, district, or city-wide mode split goals to help reinforce policies aimed at reducing single-occupancy vehicle use.
- Develop a new comprehensive land use strategy in the upcoming Comprehensive plan update to pair with the Strategic Mobility Plan and CECAP goals, adopt policy to reduce transportation related GHG emissions.
- Expand upon the DART Transit Oriented Development (TOD) guidelines to collaborate on a new proactive TOD and housing strategy with DART.
- Work with DART to roll out a sustainable transport "Mobility Hub" infrastructure program.
- Adopt a revised parking ordinance strategy that supports new mode split goals and land use strategy that minimizes available parking in transit-oriented districts.
- Implement green infrastructure programs that sets specific design and performance standards that treat the Right of way (ROW) as both a mobility and green infrastructure asset.
- Convert all traffic lights and streetlights to LEDs.
- Work with DART to improve bus station shelter amenities that reduce the impact of weather on rider comfort and usability.
- Develop and implement the Climate Change and Extreme Weather Vulnerability and Risk Assessment for Transportation Infrastructure

SHIFT THE SURFACE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM TO MOVE PEOPLE AND GOODS IN FUEL-EFFICIENT VEHICLES.



T1. WORK WITH CITY OF DALLAS, DISD, AND DART TO TRANSITION THE BUS AND LIGHT DUTY FLEET TO 100% ELECTRIC BY 2040.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Cost
Savings

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City and DART will continue shifting the regional bus and light duty vehicle fleets to 100% EV, transitioning the fleet through new procurement policies and retrofitting older infrastructure and assets to accommodate charging stations on route. The City will work with partners to ensure all new transit buses and light duty vehicles purchased after 2030 will be fully electrified, and then full fleet transition by 2040.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This action provides the potential for improved air quality and noise reduction in neighborhoods and communities with more dense and frequent transit service.

T2. WORK WITH PRIVATE AND PUBLIC INTRASTATE TRANSPORT OPERATORS TO EXPAND TRANSIT SERVICES BETWEEN MAJOR SUPER COMMUTING CITIES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City and DART will work together to incentivize and expand the current offerings in the city for transit commuting services like the existing Vonlane and Greyhound or high-speed rail efforts that shift short-haul air travel or single occupancy commutes onto higher capacity, efficient, hybrid, or electric vehicles. The City and DART will work with the Dallas Regional Chamber of Commerce and the Office of Economic Development to identify businesses that heavily utilize short-haul air travel for super

commutes and work with transit commuting services to provide benefits like reduced fare group purchasing, subscription passes, and increased awareness campaigns.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Work with transit operators to ensure that super commuting options expand but continue to provide affordable options for interstate travel.

SHIFT THE SURFACE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM TO MOVE PEOPLE AND GOODS IN FUEL-EFFICIENT VEHICLES.



T3. CREATE AN INCENTIVES/FEE PROGRAM IN WHICH SHARED MOBILITY SERVICES CAN INCREASE THEIR FLEET SIZE AND OPERATING FOOTPRINT IF THEIR FLEETS ARE INCREASINGLY ELECTRIFIED.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality

ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

Cities around the country have Transportation Network Company (TNC) caps in place, which limit their fleet size. Similarly, Dallas can deploy a TNC cap unless certain conditions are met, such as the electrification of their contractor fleet. The City will encourage the rapid electrification of ridesharing fleets by working with TNC's to deploy or expand their company vehicle leasing program by offering incentive programs to new contractors to utilize an electric vehicle.

Examples of similar initiatives are occurring in several cities including Austin - where Uber is piloting an EV Champions Initiative to encourage the adoption of more EVs. The initiative provides access to EV education and resources for drivers and in-app features built for EV drivers to locate the nearest charging stations. Over the long term, the City will transition to electrification mandates for ride-share fleets.

T4. ESTABLISH A COMPREHENSIVE INCENTIVES PACKAGE TO HELP ACCELERATE ELECTRIC VEHICLE USE.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health



Cost
Savings

ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The overall strategy to increase EV charging infrastructure is to provide financial support for retrofitting existing developments, while mandating it for new construction. The City will leverage potential grants and other funding sources to help fund EV charging infrastructure for existing developments, with a focus on communities that lack the capital to fund the improvements themselves. Requirements for new development can be adopted as part of the site planning approval process in the zoning ordinance or the building code.

Various incentives could also help extend the federal tax credits for EV purchases as they drop off over time, specifically focusing on low-income populations.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- A comprehensive EV package would need to address retrofitting low-income neighborhoods to prevent inequities related to early technology options. Incentives could be provided to those who would not ordinarily be able to pay for the retrofit/upgrade/installation.

SHIFT THE SURFACE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM TO MOVE PEOPLE AND GOODS IN FUEL-EFFICIENT VEHICLES.



T5. SUPPORT AND EXPAND RECOMMENDED TRANSPORTATION DEMAND MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES IDENTIFIED WITHIN THE STRATEGIC MOBILITY PLAN.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health



Cost
Savings

ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will work with major employers and businesses in the region to comprehensively educate them about the benefits of TDM strategies such as work from home programs, alternative shifts and commutes, and shorter work weeks, and others identified in the Strategic Mobility Plan.

The City can work with the Dallas Regional Chamber of Commerce to identify businesses with large commuting workforces and provide marketing materials that educate the company leadership on the various strategies available, benefits for their employees. and best practices in implementation.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Often TDM strategies focus on people that work in white-collar jobs who have the flexibility to work from home or work alternate shifts. Other strategies such as subsidized transit passes lower the cost of commuting while taking single occupancy vehicles off the road. Strategies should be tailored to a wide range of employers and industries to support low wage, shift-based jobs.



Credit: San milu92 (CC BY SA 2.0)

REDUCE TRIPS WHERE PEOPLE DRIVE ALONE.



T6. WORK WITH DART TO EXPAND THE GOPASS PLATFORM APPLICATION AS A COMPREHENSIVE 'MOBILITY AS A SERVICE' (MAAS) PROVIDER TO UNIFY AND STREAMLINE CONNECTIVITY BETWEEN PUBLIC AND PRIVATE MULTI-MODAL NETWORKS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Employment

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

To maximize the efficiency and capacity of the network and to better facilitate multi-modal transport and connectivity, the City will work with DART and other the regional governments and partner cities to expand the DART GoPass Mobility as a Service (MaaS) platform/application. Improvements should facilitate utilizing multiple modes including DART bus and rail services, agencies, and technologies while offering a single payment or subscription service through a phone. This MaaS subscription service could be discounted for families below a certain AMI. Examples of similar service include WHIM in Helsinki, and the expanded subscription offerings of Uber and Lyft in San Francisco and New York.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- MaaS systems are typically operated using a smartphone that has an associated digital payment system. In order for this technology to be accessible to a broader population, the City should explore complementary analogue alternatives.
- The MaaS subscription service could be discounted for families below a certain AMI.

T7. SECURE RESOURCES TO IMPLEMENT THE EXISTING BICYCLE NETWORK MASTERPLAN.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air Quality



Employment



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Personnel
ACTION SOURCE
Existing Action

The existing bicycle masterplan (Dallas Bike Plan (2011) has not been fully implemented due to a lack of resources and no dedicated manager. Hiring an in-house bicycle advocate and coordinator to update the bicycle masterplan and working through the existing implementation hurdles is key to rolling out the approved plan. New leadership should focus on network implementation in areas of highest priority, such as major live/work corridors and neighborhoods that lack bicycle infrastructure and struggle with

existing connectivity. The plan should also be updated to accommodate additional micro-mobility technologies (i.e. scooters) in addition to cycling.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- A criterion for early implementation will be neighborhoods that lack infrastructure and connectivity, which are often low-income communities of color.

REDUCE TRIPS WHERE PEOPLE DRIVE ALONE.



ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

T8.

EVALUATE INFRASTRUCTURE TO ENABLE CITY POLICY ON MICRO MOBILITY SERVICES TO BE DISTRIBUTED EQUITABLY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Public
Health



Inequality

Micro-mobility services heavily skew towards more affluent neighborhoods despite public policy dictating otherwise. Infrastructure including sidewalks that support the safe deployment of micro-mobility services are lacking or substandard in lower income neighborhoods. The City will evaluate infrastructure to enable micro-mobility services to be deployed alongside general ROW improvements (such as sidewalk and streetlight improvements) to ensure equitable and safe outcomes.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Under-served neighborhoods will be consulted about how best to provide appropriate access to micro-mobility schemes.

T9.

INCREASE BUS SERVICE ACROSS THE CITY BY ADDING NEW ROUTES, SHORTENING HEADWAYS, AND OVERALL INCREASING SERVICE RELIABILITY AND CUSTOMER EXPERIENCE.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air Quality



Employment



Inequality

The City will work with DART to prioritize investment in the bus system. The investments will include expanding service area coverage with additional bus routes, but also decreasing the headways, increasing frequencies, and increasing reliability and on-time performance. DART will also update their app to improve live-tracking of their bus fleet so that riders have accurate, real-time schedule information for the next bus arrival. These investments into the bus service will be focused the most vulnerable and transit dependent

neighborhoods. Special emphasis should be placed on improving the transit system's ability to connect people to major employment centers, such as the inland port and medical district.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Service improvements should be focused on transit dependent neighborhoods, thereby reducing reliance on automobiles, and reducing household costs for transportation.

REDUCE TRIPS WHERE PEOPLE DRIVE ALONE.



ACTION TYPE
Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

T10.

ADOPT A TARGET CORRIDOR, DISTRICT, OR CITY-WIDE MODE SPLIT GOALS TO HELP REINFORCE POLICIES AIMED AT REDUCING SINGLE-OCCUPANCY VEHICLE USE.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air Quality



Employment



Public
Health



Cost Savings

The City will develop scenarios and goals to be incorporated into the Strategic Mobility Plan (SMP) that specify aggressive mode split goals tied to land use and transit improvement recommendations along a corridor or travel shed. The City will evaluate these scenarios in the SMP and apply coordinated land use, urban design, and transportation investments along corridors that match the intended long-term modal priority. These targets could take the form of corridor specific goals, district or nodal goals, or city-wide goals.

Mode split goals should help meet and exceed the proposed targets of:

- 10%-15% by 2030 and 30-35% by 2050 of new housing in TOD locations.
- SOV travel mode shift from 88% to 79% in and from 88% to 62% in 2050 (switches to bus and light rail).

The coordinated land use, urban design, and transportation investments that match the mode split targets should reflect policies such as:

- Revised parking standards/maximum parking standards for corridors or neighborhoods that have high transit connectivity
- Increased sidewalk connectivity, wider sidewalk connectivity
- On-street, elevated, separated bicycle lanes
- Land use patterns that reflect more dense, walkable, transit connected neighborhoods

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Vulnerable communities will benefit indirectly from this action, for example if mode shifts took place within vulnerable communities (improving air quality).
- Creating a mode split goal can help encourage a shift in fiscal and design policy between the City and DART to de-emphasize auto-oriented travel, thereby helping diversify multi-modal options, reduce dependency on car ownership, and drive down the cost of transportation.

SYNERGIZE LAND USE AND HOUSING WITH TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE TO INCREASE ACCESS TO WALKING AND BIKING OPTIONS, AND PUBLIC TRANSIT.



T11. DEVELOP A NEW COMPREHENSIVE LAND USE STRATEGY IN THE UPCOMING COMPREHENSIVE PLAN UPDATE TO PAIR WITH THE SMP + CECAP GOALS, ADOPT POLICY TO REDUCE TRANSPORTATION RELATED GHG EMISSIONS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air quality



Employment



Public Health



Cost Savings

ACTION TYPE
Plan
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will develop a public facing land use strategy in a holistic and comprehensive manner that aligns mixed-income housing and jobs around transit and is coordinated with DART's long-range transit plan and the TOD plan in Action T12. While the TOD plan is specifically related to development directly adjacent to existing and future DART stations, the land use strategy will exist within the Comprehensive Plan and should address the City's broader land use strategy and its relationship with the bus system, regional job growth, and density. The strategy should support better job-housing balance throughout the city and shorter trips and alternative modes even in areas that do not have great transit access. It should also address other mobility related issues such as access to schools,

daycare, healthcare and groceries etc. The land use strategy has direct linkages to other relevant plans, such as the 'Transportation Strategic Mobility Plan (ongoing)' , 'Strategic Economic Development Plan (2019)' and 'Comprehensive Housing Policy (2018)'.

As site plans and development cases come through the development review process, conformity with the land use strategy will be required for staff approval before Planning and Zoning Commission. Non-conformity approval must demonstrate how the City or developer intends to mitigate any negative impacts of the project.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This action will serve as the primary policy mechanism that manages growth in an equitable manner for transit dependent populations and encourage increased density and a variety of more affordable, mixed-income housing stock.

SYNERGIZE LAND USE AND HOUSING WITH TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE TO INCREASE ACCESS TO WALKING AND BIKING OPTIONS, AND PUBLIC TRANSIT.



T12. EXPAND UPON THE DART TRANSIT ORIENTED DEVELOPMENT (TOD) GUIDELINES TO COLLABORATE ON A NEW PROACTIVE TOD AND HOUSING STRATEGY WITH DART.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air quality



Employment



Inequality



Public Health



Cost Savings

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will work with DART to expand upon their existing standards and policies to create a comprehensive housing and TOD strategy with a goal to increase transit ridership and reduce car ownership by increasing affordable and mixed income housing stock and low-wage job opportunities near rail stations and Bus Rapid Transit/ Express bus routes. The City will facilitate the development of comprehensive TOD area plans, target financial incentives for TOD and will proactively facilitate development on catalytic TOD sites (including DART parking lots and other city or publicly owned land).

Moreover, this strategy will align with mode split goals (Action T10), transit connectivity strategies, last mile infrastructure and economic development strategies for job growth.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Emphasis on incremental development and a slow transition to higher densities will help reduce the negative impacts of redevelopment while also ensuring that new TOD's are strongly linked to centers of employment not only for higher paying white-collar jobs but lower wage-shift jobs and everyone in-between.



SYNERGIZE LAND USE AND HOUSING WITH TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE TO INCREASE ACCESS TO WALKING AND BIKING OPTIONS, AND PUBLIC TRANSIT.



T13. WORK WITH DART TO ROLL OUT A SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT “MOBILITY HUB” INFRASTRUCTURE PROGRAM.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Employment



Inequality



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE

Program

ACTION SOURCE

New Action

The City will work with DART to fund and construct a series of mobility hubs throughout the city that provide sustainable transportation options such as electrified TNCs, EV charging using solar generation, public transport, micro-transit and micro-mobility. The City will partner with private companies such as TNC's, e-scooter companies, and carshare services to fund and provide services at these hubs.

Southern Dallas neighborhoods will be considered for the initial hubs, so that underserved residents will be able to access a variety of sustainable transport options that connect them to major places of employment. The hubs will be implemented alongside general right-of-way improvements (such as sidewalk and streetlight improvements) to ensure equitable and safe outcomes.

Once deployed, the hubs will be integrated within the Mobility as a Service' (MaaS) platform that streamlines connectivity between multi-modal networks, including DART bus and rail service (Action T6).

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Neighborhoods that are currently poorly served by public transit options will be identified for the first mobility hubs.



Credit: Dallas Area Rapid Transit

SYNERGIZE LAND USE AND HOUSING WITH TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE TO INCREASE ACCESS TO WALKING AND BIKING OPTIONS, AND PUBLIC TRANSIT.



T14. ADOPT A REVISED PARKING ORDINANCE STRATEGY THAT SUPPORTS NEW MODE SPLIT GOALS AND LAND USE STRATEGY THAT MINIMIZES AVAILABLE PARKING IN TRANSIT-ORIENTED DISTRICTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Cost
Savings

ACTION TYPE

Mandate

ACTION SOURCE

New Action

As part of a comprehensive effort to revisit land use and urban design standards based on the Strategic Mobility Plan and through the Comprehensive Plan Update, parking maximums will be introduced in areas with mature transit infrastructure to “level the playing field” between SOV and transit convenience. Where appropriate, parking management districts will be introduced (rather than parking standards) per development to begin shifting to a shared parking model for major nodes of activity. Parking management districts are often deployed by a local entity, such as a Public Improvement District (PID), to regulate supply and demand for parking through a combination of strategies aimed at reducing the number of parking spots for each parcel. Strategies

can include shared parking, dynamic pricing, establishing maximum parking ratios, allowing off-site parking, or modifications to parking minimums. The parking management district will help balance the needs of developers who want to minimize expensive parking spots for walkability reasons and those who require more parking in short bursts for their businesses.

A parking district standard can be piloted in one of Dallas' Public Improvement Districts such as Deep Ellum PID or Downtown Improvement District. Parking management districts should also adopt design guidance to retrofit surface lots with green infrastructure best practices, such as permeable surfaces or bioswales for water conveyance.



Credit: Dallas Area Rapid Transit

ENSURE THAT WALKING, BIKING, PUBLIC TRANSIT, VEHICULAR TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE IS RELIABLE AND SAFE UNDER ALL WEATHER CONDITIONS.



T15. IMPLEMENT GREEN INFRASTRUCTURE PROGRAMS THAT SPECIFY DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE STANDARDS THAT TREAT THE RIGHT-OF-WAY AS BOTH A MOBILITY AND GREEN INFRASTRUCTURE ASSET.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Air
Quality



Public
Health



Water
quality



Adaptation

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will leverage the success of ‘the Loop’ to build a city-wide network of urban trails that link neighborhoods with transportation hubs and economic centers. This network would be built upon trails, green space, and green infrastructure that also serve as critical mobility assets that connect neighborhoods to places of employment without the need for single occupancy vehicles. The network also doubles as a mechanism to address water quality and storage, heat island mitigation, and lack of open space and parks. The ‘Drainage Design Manual (2019)’ and the ‘Complete Streets Design Manual (2013)’ provide

design guidelines. The City will implement ROW upgrades through the long-term Capital Improvement Plan incorporating these guidelines.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The green infrastructure and mobility network will be prioritized in neighborhoods that are in most need of mobility improvements and additional parks and trails, which tend to be lower income neighborhoods.

T16. CONVERT ALL TRAFFIC LIGHTS AND STREETLIGHTS TO LEDS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Mitigation



Cost
Savings

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City will implement a comprehensive traffic and streetlight retrofit program and explore traffic signal system technologies to reduce energy use, operating costs and reduce lighting outages during weather events. LED lights require significantly less energy and have longer lifespans than high-pressure sodium bulbs or other options commonly used in streetlights. The City can contract with an

ESCO to perform lighting energy audits and identify the best available retrofit improvements. In most cases, the ESCO pays up-front costs associated with retrofit installation, further reducing financial. The City will also update its streetlight standards to require energy-efficient streetlights for new and replacement installations.

ENSURE THAT WALKING, BIKING, PUBLIC TRANSIT, VEHICULAR TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE IS RELIABLE AND SAFE UNDER ALL WEATHER CONDITIONS.



T17. WORK WITH DART TO IMPROVE BUS STATION SHELTER AMENITIES THAT REDUCE THE IMPACT OF WEATHER ON RIDER COMFORT AND USABILITY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City will work with DART to fund, construct, and improve existing and new bus shelters. The City will help fund improvements in the right-of-way while DART funds improvements to the physical shelters themselves. The improvements can include amenities such as trees for shade, water fountains, larger shelters and covered areas, and other items that also double as co-benefits in reducing the impacts of climate on ridership comfort.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Improvements to shelters should be focused on vulnerable and transit dependent populations first, before being rolled out to the wider city.

T18. DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT THE CLIMATE CHANGE AND EXTREME WEATHER VULNERABILITY AND RISK ASSESSMENT FOR TRANSPORTATION INFRASTRUCTURE

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE
Program; Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The ‘Climate Change/Extreme Weather Vulnerability and Risk Assessment for Transportation Infrastructure in Dallas and Tarrant Counties’ (2015) study, identified segments of regional highways and rail routes that are vulnerable to climate change, specifically focusing on issues related to flooding and extreme heat. The City, TxDOT and

DART will move towards developing projects that address those vulnerabilities identified in the study, incorporating them into local and regional capital improvement plans for funding and implementation.



ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN

SHIFT THE SURFACE TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM TO MOVE PEOPLE AND GOODS IN FUEL-EFFICIENT VEHICLES.

T19.

ENCOURAGE BUSINESSES, COMMERCIAL ENTITIES AND INSTITUTIONS TO ELECTRIFY FLEET, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOCAL AND REGIONAL DELIVERY TRUCKS AND OTHER HEAVIER VEHICLES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health



Cost
Savings

The City will aim to help local businesses electrify delivery trucks and other heavier vehicles to 100% EV through education, outreach, and partnerships.

The City will partner with the Dallas Regional Chamber of Commerce and others in order to encourage local businesses to electrify their fleets. Through this partnership, the City and Regional Chamber could provide resources and educational materials to businesses on fleet electrification. The partnership could identify businesses with large fleets or frequent travel who would experience a higher financial benefit from electrification. The City and Regional Chamber could host joint events and provide educational opportunities that would highlight the benefits of fleet electrification while connecting businesses to the proper rebates and incentives.





GOAL 4: DALLAS IS A ZERO WASTE COMMUNITY.

Why Waste Matters	p. 107
Building on City Achievements	p. 109
What can I do?	p. 110
Actions	p. 111



TARGETS

DIVERT **35%** AND **80%** OF ORGANIC WASTE BY 2030 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.

DIVERT **60%** AND **90%** OF PAPER WASTE BY 2030 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.

35% AND **45%** REDUCTION IN WASTE DIVERTED FROM LANDFILLS IN 2030 AND 2040, RESPECTIVELY.



WHY WASTE MATTERS

Climate change will impact both the operations and infrastructure assets in the waste sector. Increased temperatures can impact the health and safety of waste collection workers. Extreme weather events may lead to the unexpected need to deal with the collection and disposal of large amounts of debris. Municipal solid waste represents a small percentage (less than 1%) of GHG emissions in Dallas. However, from a broader environmental sustainability perspective, waste-based emissions are an important area for local action. Reducing the amount of waste sent to landfills can provide a variety of environmental benefits, including GHG emissions reductions. The City is responsible for collecting waste, recyclables, brush and bulky waste from all single family households (approximately 240,000 tonnes) of which 23% is recycled. **Figure 26** provides a breakdown of this waste stream by material type; these data illustrate a good potential for recycling, dependent on market conditions.

Approximately two-thirds of the waste generated in Dallas is from the commercial, institutional, and industrial sectors. **Figure 25** provides an estimated breakdown of generated waste by source. Currently the City's landfill has approximately 30 years remaining capacity. In less than 3 years, the DFW landfill located in Lewisville is scheduled to close. This facility accepts over 1 million tons of waste per year (10% of the total waste disposed in the NCTCOG region). It is possible that a significant percentage of this material will be disposed at the McCommas Bluff Landfill following closure of DFW.

City policies and programs regarding the acceptance of more waste at the landfill will impact site life, revenue generation, and future GHG emissions. The City currently has an aggressive landfill gas-to-energy program, where methane is captured and used for energy recovery. The landfill gas-to-energy program means that many materials that would be considered compostable are being accepted by the landfill to support gas generation. Landfills and transfer stations are often located near low-income communities, which can result in health and safety risks such as poor air quality, noise pollution, and traffic (**Figure 27**).

Solutions in this sector draw on the principles of the 5Rs of Zero Waste: refuse, reduce, reuse (including repair!), recycle, and rot. Refusing and reducing mean saying no to disposables, avoiding single use plastics and packaging, and saying no to participating in unsustainable practices. Reusing and repairing mean using goods more than once, buying secondhand, reupholstering your sofa. Materials should only be recycled or composted (rotted) as the final steps in the hierarchy. Additionally, actions in this sector identify opportunities for GHG emission reductions through waste collection operations and continuing to capture landfill-generated gas.

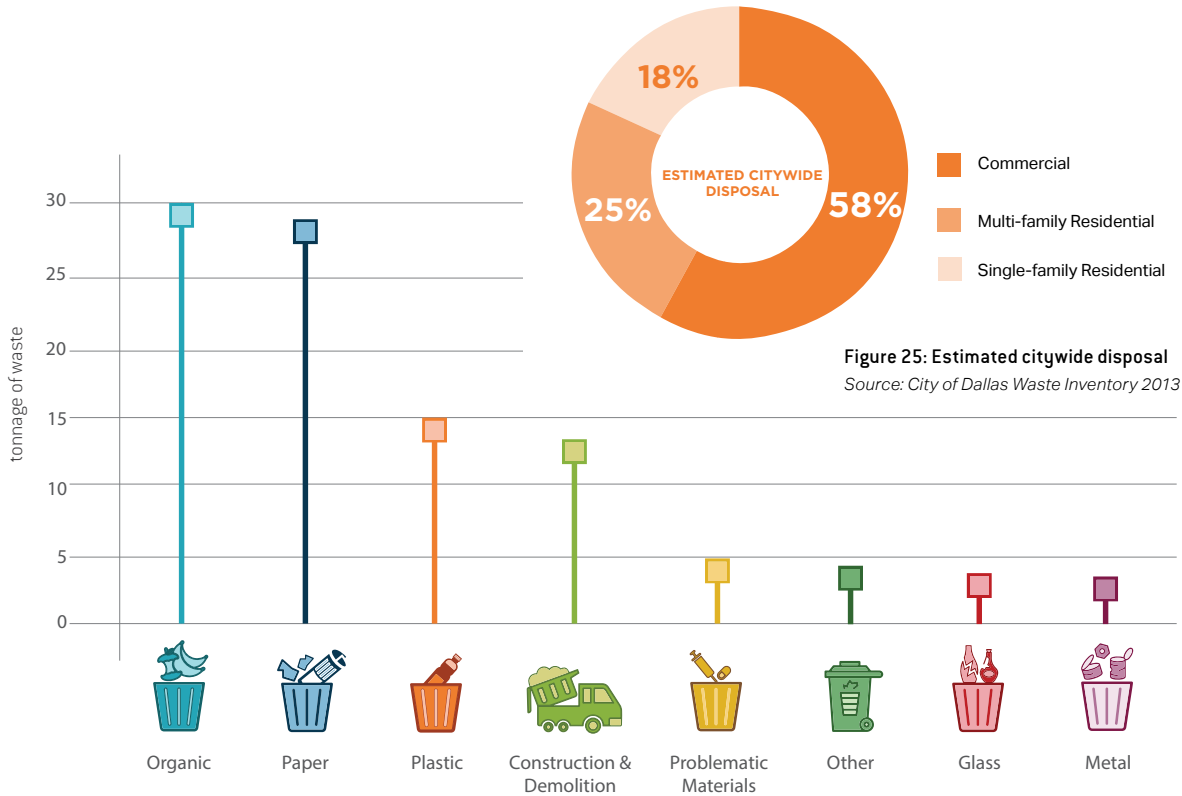
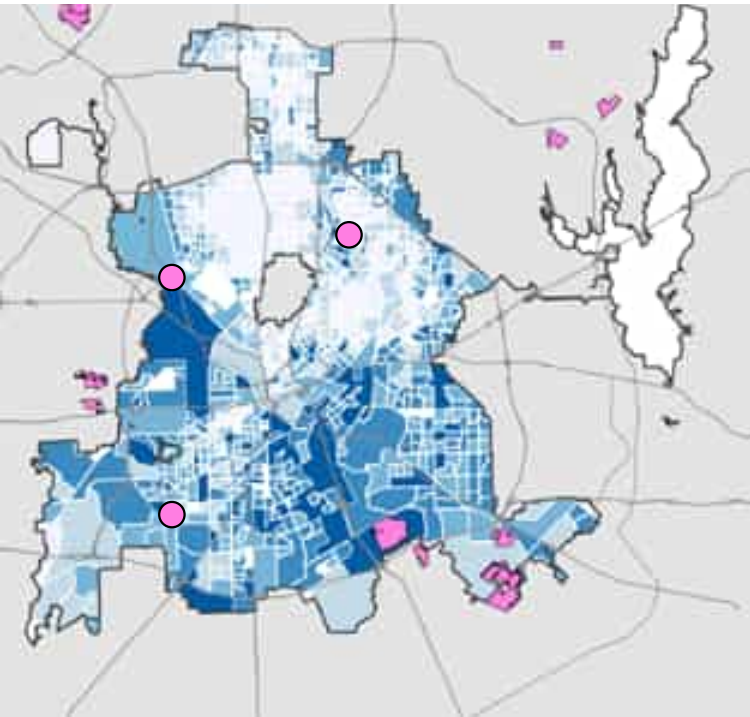


Figure 26: Types of waste in Dallas' landfills
Source: City of Dallas Waste Inventory 2013

Figure 27: Landfills and transfer stations relative to low income areas.
[Median annual household income by census block versus landfills and solid waste transfer stations]
Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018 and City of Dallas 2019



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

Adopted by Council in February 2013, the Long-Range Solid Waste Master Plan, also known as the Zero Waste Management Plan is the beginning of a long-range systematic effort, with incremental goals to strive for sustainability, reduce waste volumes, maximize diversion through reuse and recycling efforts, and demonstrate that economic growth, environmental stewardship, and fiscal responsibility are not mutually exclusive. The plan sets increasing diversion goals/percentages of 60% diversion by 2030, and maximum diversion by 2040. Proposed initiatives include voluntary programs (short-range), accessibility mandates, disposal bans and a review of advanced waste technologies.

Programs target residential, multi-family and commercial sectors.²⁵ The City is currently updating this plan to reflect changes to the market and other local waste management considerations. The Multi-family Recycling Ordinance was unanimously approved by the Dallas City Council on June 13, 2018. Starting on January 1, 2020, apartment complexes with eight or more units must provide residents with recycling containers within visible distance of garbage containers. Since approximately 50-55% of the population in Dallas lives in multi-family units, ensuring that these residents have access to recycling is an important part of the City's overall waste diversion goals and the Zero Waste Management Plan.²⁶

WHAT CAN I DO?



Residents

- 01** Check out the [Dallas Resident's Guide to Recycling](#) to make sure you are recycling properly. Did you know not to bag your recyclables, or that just a quick rinse is enough to wash your recyclable containers?
- 02** Find out where you can recycle e-waste, such as computers, TVs, printers, microwaves, and other appliances at the [Dallas Electronic Recycling program](#).
- 03** Enter your zip code into the Find a Recycle Center tool to find a location to [recycle your plastic bags](#). First, re-use them as much as possible.

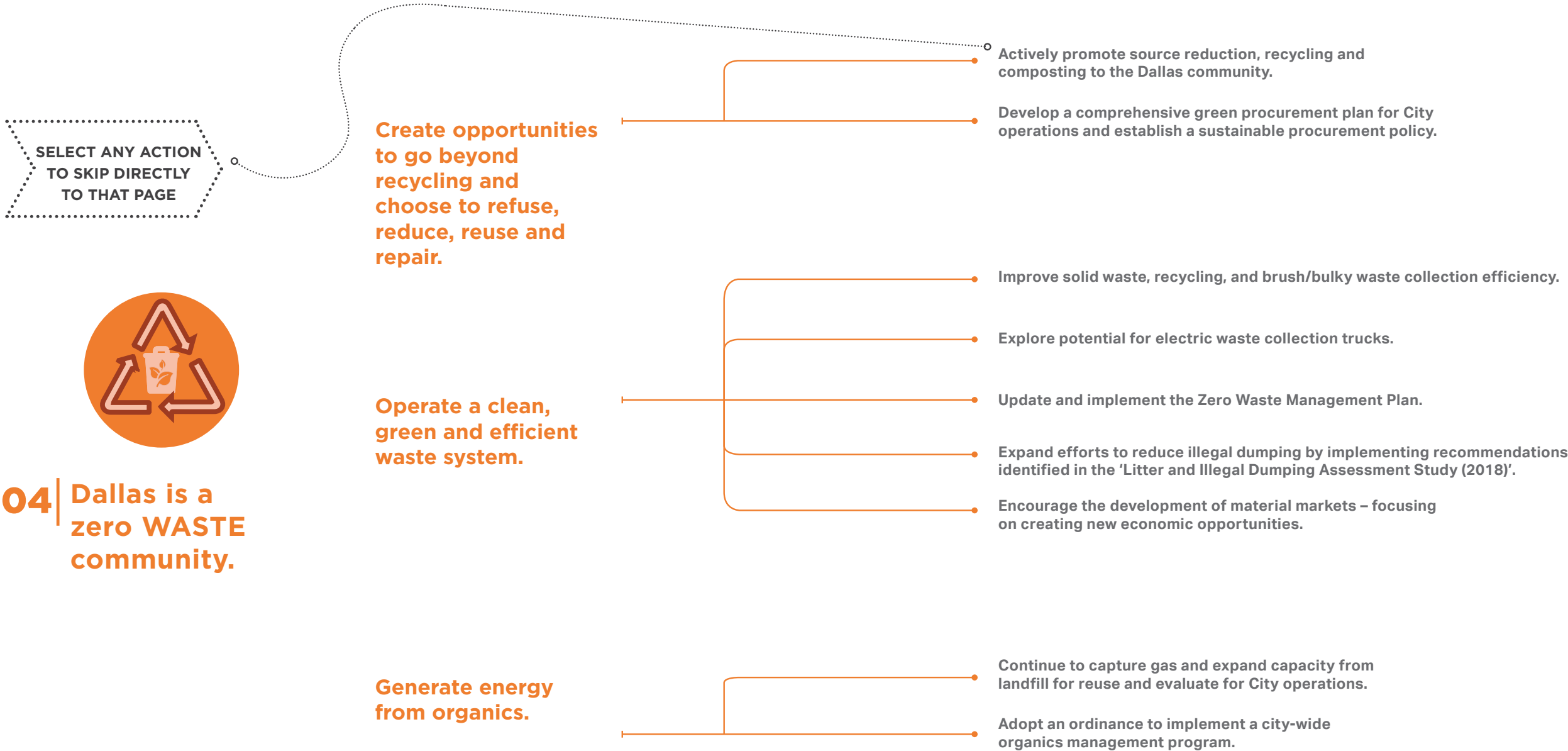


Businesses

- 01** Become [Green Business Certified](#) to promote your eco-friendly business practices and receive recognition for your efforts to reduce waste and increase recycling.
- 02** Volunteer for the [Adopt-a-Park Program](#) that promotes partnerships between community members, groups, and businesses to assist the Parks staff with routine maintenance, clean up, and beautification of parks, open spaces, and trails, creating a beautiful, clean environment for all to enjoy.



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE



CREATE OPPORTUNITIES TO GO BEYOND RECYCLING AND CHOOSE TO REFUSE, REDUCE, REUSE AND REPAIR



SW1. ACTIVELY PROMOTE SOURCE REDUCTION, RECYCLING AND COMPOSTING TO THE DALLAS COMMUNITY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Resource
Consumption



Emissions
Reduction



Employment

ACTION TYPE
Educational; Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action
Ongoing Action

The Dallas community, including residents and businesses generate approximately 2.8 million tons of municipal solid waste annually.²⁷ To achieve the goals of the City's Long Range Solid Waste Management Plan (Zero Waste Plan) and reduce the GHG associated with landfilling waste, the City will increase current education efforts to inform residents and business owners of their options to refuse, reduce, reuse and recycle. The public information program should prioritize waste reduction in the commercial sector and identify opportunities to reduce single use products.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Ensure that recycling education campaigns are tailored to meet the needs and culture of each community.
- The action may provide potential employment opportunities at new businesses. Given that a majority of recycled and waste businesses are in the southern sector of the city, City efforts to promote market development should be focused here.



CREATE OPPORTUNITIES TO GO BEYOND RECYCLING AND CHOOSE TO REFUSE, REDUCE, REUSE AND REPAIR



SW2. DEVELOP A COMPREHENSIVE GREEN PROCUREMENT PLAN FOR CITY OPERATIONS AND ESTABLISH A SUSTAINABLE PROCUREMENT POLICY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Resource
Consumption



Resource
Conservation



Emission
Reduction



Employment



Cost
savings

ACTION TYPE
Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

Sustainable procurement practices can leverage the City of Dallas' purchasing power and ability to acquire more sustainable products and services, while contributing to the City's social responsibility and increasing natural resource conservation. This plan and policy will also provide a framework for the other actions in the plan which are demonstrating the City's leadership around environmental and climate action. A training program will be rolled out by Procurement Services to ensure that all City staff responsible for purchasing goods and services on behalf of the City understand the new requirements.

The plan would include criteria for products or service selection, performance metrics, best practices and suppliers and incorporate the following principles:

- High recycled content of products
- Preference for biodegradable items
- Requirements for low toxicity content in products (e.g. low VOC paints, cleaning products etc.)
- Consideration for life cycle costs
- Locally sourced foods at City sponsored events (see action FA9)
- Preference for renewable fuel types (see actions T1-T4; SW4)
- Energy efficiency and water conservation (see actions B6-B12; WR1-WR6)
- Preference for suppliers that have achieved the City's Green Business Certification or equivalent

OPERATE A CLEAN, GREEN AND EFFICIENT WASTE SYSTEM.



SW3. IMPROVE SOLID WASTE, RECYCLING, AND BRUSH/BULKY WASTE COLLECTION EFFICIENCY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost Savings



Air Quality

ACTION TYPE
Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

As the city continues to grow and waste generation and recycling patterns change, the City should assess and modify service frequency, number of trips and route optimization on an annual basis. The City will evaluate benchmarks for service frequency and its collection routes to improve efficiency and reduce the number of trips required. As Dallas' transportation system becomes more congested, it may also be necessary to add transfer stations. The use of these facilities will reduce the number of miles driven by collection vehicles by consolidating waste streams into larger transfer vehicles.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The location of future new transfer stations should not negatively impact already vulnerable communities.

SW4. EXPLORE POTENTIAL FOR ELECTRIC WASTE COLLECTION TRUCKS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Air Quality

ACTION TYPE
Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City has an extensive fleet of vehicles that provide waste collection services, and primarily rely on diesel fuel. The City is already in the process of converting some of the fleet to CNG to reduce GHG

emissions.²⁸ The City should evaluate opportunities for replacing the short-range vehicles with electric vehicles over time as part of a fleet replacement program.

OPERATE A CLEAN, GREEN AND EFFICIENT WASTE SYSTEM.



SW5. UPDATE AND IMPLEMENT THE ZERO WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Mitigation

CO-BENEFITS



Resource Consumption



Air Quality

ACTION TYPE
Mandate; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City is in the process of developing an update to the Long Range Solid Waste Master Plan (Zero Waste Plan). The City defines 'Zero Waste' as no waste going to landfill due to reuse, recycling and composting programs. The plan will identify policies that are designed to reduce the amounts of waste requiring disposal through source reduction, recycling and composting programs to achieve the zero-waste goal by 2040.

Key components of the Zero Waste Management Plan should prioritize the following initiatives. For each, a phased approach will be undertaken, beginning with incentives, moving towards mandates.

Universal Recycling Ordinance for the commercial sector. Adoption of a Universal Recycling Ordinance involves requiring affected property owners to ensure that tenants and employees have access to convenient recycling. The program will be implemented through the City's franchised haulers by requiring that they provide recycling services for reasonable rates. The ordinance does not require business to have a recycling program, however, it will incentivize businesses to recycle due to increased costs of standard collection.

Adopt Green Building Code. This code is related to the management of construction and demolition debris. As part of building construction permits, it would require developers and builders to present a solid waste management plan that incorporates efforts to reduce or recycle building materials. In order to implement this ordinance, it would require a significant public information program focusing on builders to initiate voluntary recycling. The City should support by assisting in developing markets for materials that could be recycled (See action SW3). The City can also initiate a recognition program or provide grants for projects that include significant recovery of materials from either demolition or incorporation of recycled materials in new building construction.

Evaluate advances in technology to convert waste to energy. Most waste generated by the City is disposed of at the McCommas Bluff Landfill. There are technologies being developed that may result in an environmentally acceptable alternative. Most of these technologies are currently at the demonstration scale and are significantly more expensive to manage than the City's landfill. As landfill capacity decreases, and technologies advance, the increased cost of disposal may make technologies such as pyrolysis or gasification more feasible for Dallas. The City will periodically monitor and evaluate waste to energy alternatives.

OPERATE A CLEAN, GREEN AND EFFICIENT WASTE SYSTEM.

GENERATE ENERGY FROM ORGANICS.



SW6. EXPAND EFFORTS TO REDUCE ILLEGAL DUMPING BY IMPLEMENTING RECOMMENDATIONS IDENTIFIED IN THE 'LITTER AND ILLEGAL DUMPING ASSESSMENT STUDY'.

ACTION TYPE
Program; Educational
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action



The City carried out an assessment of efforts to reduce illegal dumping in Dallas and presented its findings in the 'Litter and Illegal Dumping Assessment Study (2018)'. The study identified measures designed to reduce illegal dumping. These include education and outreach programs, enforcement of regulations, and an increase in community engagement in litter collection. The City will implement the recommendations identified through this study.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Often, illegal dump sites are in locations in proximity to low-income communities. An aggressive clean-up program would enhance the quality of life for these communities.

SW7. ENCOURAGE THE DEVELOPMENT OF MATERIAL MARKETS – FOCUSING ON CREATING NEW ECONOMIC OPPORTUNITIES.

ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action



The Circular Economy concept describes a process whereby pollution and waste are designed out, and materials and products are recovered and brought back into the marketplace. To achieve this, markets must be developed to accept recycled materials and manufacture them into useful products. Recent global trends such as China no longer accepting US recyclable materials, have closed several markets for recycling materials so the need (and potential) to develop new ones has increased. The City can encourage the development of new markets as part of an economic development program or through other incentives.

The City of Houston's 'Reuse warehouse' project collects reusable building materials and redistributes them freely to non-profits, educational institutions and government agencies. To date, the program has diverted 4,500 tonnes of materials.²⁹

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The action may provide potential employment opportunities at new businesses. Given that a majority of recycled and waste businesses are in Southern city, City efforts to promote market development should occur in this sector as well.



SW8. CONTINUE TO CAPTURE GAS AND EXPAND CAPACITY FROM LANDFILL FOR REUSE AND EVALUATE FOR CITY OPERATIONS.

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action



The City of Dallas has a public-private partnership with a contractor who manages and operates the Landfill Gas System at McCommas Bluff Landfill. As waste decomposes in the landfill, it creates methane gas – which has a greater impact on climate change than other greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide. The landfill has a landfill gas recovery program that collects the methane

gas generated and converts it to a useful fuel. As the landfill develops and accepts more waste, the system will periodically be expanded to increase recovery of methane gases from the landfill. The gas is currently being upgraded to pipeline quality gas. The City's options for this gas include marketing it as a "renewable resource" or using the gas for City fleet needs or other energy needs.

SW9. ADOPT AN ORDINANCE TO IMPLEMENT A CITY-WIDE ORGANICS MANAGEMENT PROGRAM.

ACTION TYPE
Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action



Organic materials such as tree waste, brush, yard waste, food waste and biosolids represent a significant percentage of the overall waste stream. The City's landfill is currently permitted for composting and a composting operation for brush, yard waste, biosolids and food waste from large commercial establishments is under consideration. The City will adopt a new commercial waste ordinance (or expand requirements of another ordinance) that prevents food enterprises including restaurants, and supermarkets that prepare, process or serve food from sending organic waste to the landfill. The City will identify potential markets

(such as composters) and evaluate the potential for energy generation from food waste and biosolids. The City will evaluate the feasibility of a residential organics management program that includes curbside pickup for yard and food waste.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This action may result in air quality and odor issues related to the operation of the compost facility depending on the technology and where it is sited. Ensure this is factored in and mitigated such that it does not negatively affect surrounding communities.



Credit: Frank Richards

GOAL 5: DALLAS PROTECTS ITS WATER RESOURCES AND ITS COMMUNITIES FROM FLOODING AND DROUGHT.

Why Water Resources Matter	p. 121
Building on City Achievements	p. 123
What can I do?	p. 124
Actions	p. 125

TARGETS

1% DECREASE IN PER-CAPITA ANNUAL WATER CONSUMPTION.

5%, AND 10% OF WATER FOR INDIRECT REUSE IMPLEMENTATION BY 2030 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.

30%, 60% AND 100% REDUCTION IN NUMBER OF IMPAIRED WATERBODIES LISTED IN THE WATERSHED BY 2030, 2040 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.

45% AND 100% REDUCTION IN GHG EMISSIONS FROM TREATMENT FACILITIES BY 2035 AND 2050, RESPECTIVELY.



WHY WATER RESOURCES MATTER

The water and wastewater sectors together contribute to less than 1% of Dallas’ GHG emissions; however, access to clean water is foundational to public health and quality of life. The CECAP considers multiple aspects of water resources management: long range planning, water supply, water treatment, water delivery and quality, wastewater collection, wastewater treatment, stormwater management, flood management, water conservation and drought management.

Between 2020 and 2070, Dallas’ existing water reserves are expected to decrease due to sedimentation and increased evaporation of reservoirs. This is a result of anticipated temperature increases.³⁰ Since 2001, the City’s broad-based water efficiency measures have saved approximately 316 billion gallons or 62 million gallons per day (MGD) and reduced per capita-daily (GPCD) use by 26%. Annual surveys indicate that customer awareness of the watering ordinance has increased from 60% to 76% and that customers’ positive water conservation behaviors are up from 46% to more than 71%. The City removed a total of 38,947 cubic yards of debris and floatables from sumps, storm sewers, levees, trash racks, creeks, and retention/detention basins. A total of 91,872 gallons of debris was removed from stormwater interceptors.³¹

By 2050, periods of low precipitation will be disrupted by single storm events stronger in intensity than what is experienced currently. By 2100, there will be as many as 40% more days with severe thunderstorms per year. There is an associated increased flood risk in low-lying areas adjacent to the floodplain (**Figure 28**).

Droughts could exacerbate extreme heat and the urban heat island effect. The projected proportion of economic expected losses from natural disasters is modeled to be 58% from severe thunderstorms and 38% from flooding. These projections will have a significant impact on the community. The potential impacts include increases in water bills and property damage due to flooding.

For the City to protect water resources and plan for the future, actions have to be taken by private entities, residents and businesses, and the City itself. Continuing collaboration with other water agencies will be essential for long-term water resource planning to prepare for the future and to share costs of major capital improvement projects that bring new water resources to the DFW metro area.

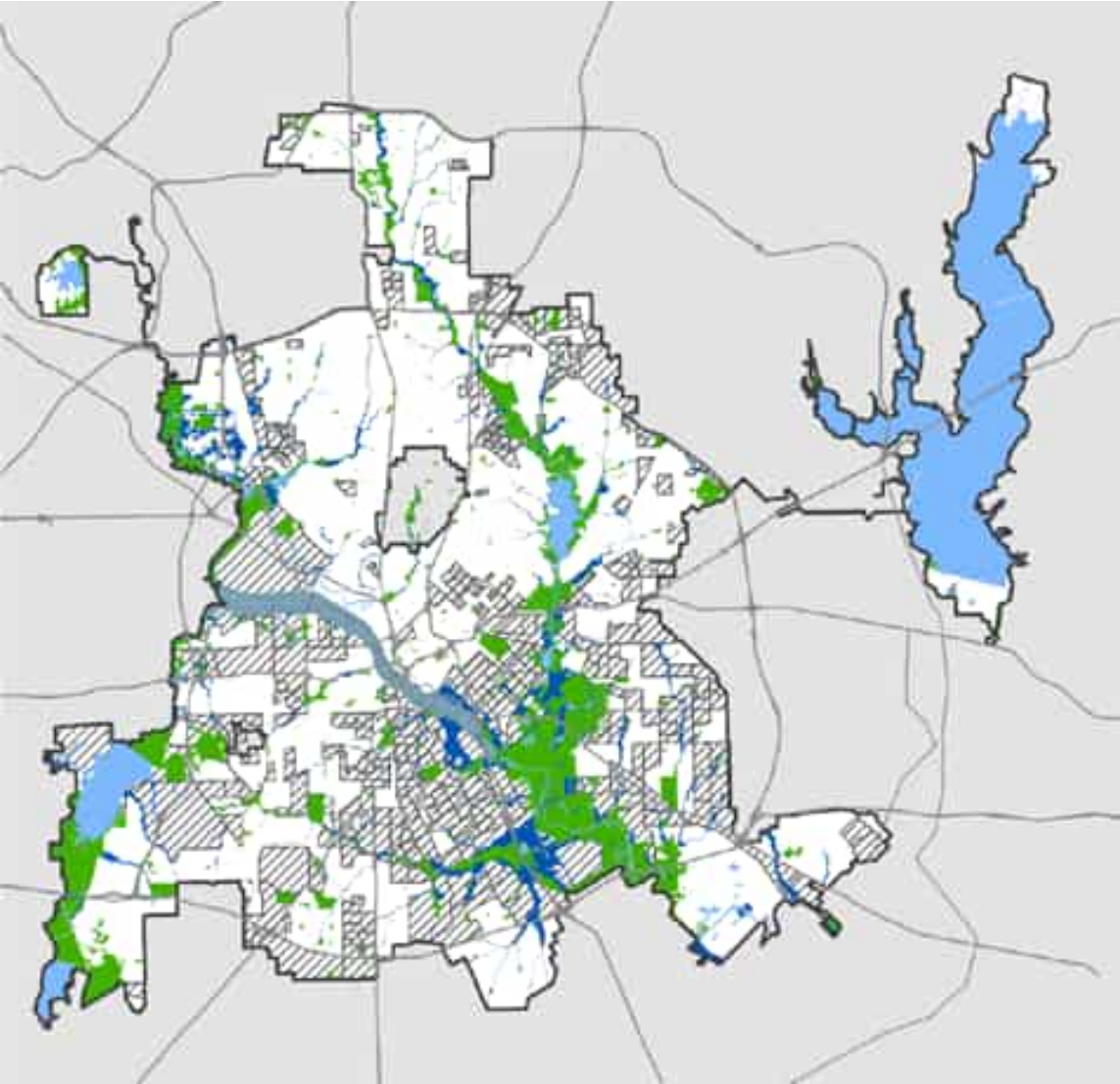


Figure 28: Flood risk relative to low income areas
(FEMA 100-year flood zone overlaid with open space land uses vs low income census blocks)
Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018 and U.S. Federal Emergency Management Agency 2018.



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

In 2006, Dallas Water Utilities (DWU) expanded its school education programs with an online tool and in-classroom program called Environmental Education Initiative (EEI) to provide programs for grades kindergarten through twelve. This is an important resource for teachers

with links to videos on outdoor water use, indoor water use, watersheds, the power of conserving, and surface-groundwater interactions. To date, the EEI program has reached more than 140,000 students, 376,000 City of Dallas citizens and trained more than 12,000 teachers, in a total of 272 schools.³²

WHAT CAN I DO?



Residents

- 01 Schedule a free irrigation system evaluation** by a licensed landscape irrigation specialist and potentially save hundreds of dollars per year on your water bill.
- 02 Use the Water Conservation Checklist** to quickly identify easy ways to reduce water consumption, from food prep, personal care, and household cleaning to plumbing improvements.
- 03 Get free plumbing assistance** or water efficiency upgrades to reduce water bills through the **Minor Plumbing Repair Program**, which is available to low income homeowners who are customers of Dallas Water Utilities.



Businesses

- 01 Schedule a free, no obligation water efficiency assessment** for your industrial, commercial, or institutional facility and potentially receive up to \$100,000 in rebates towards the cost of new equipment and processes that conserve water at existing facilities.
- 02 Consider using reclaimed water** for flushing toilets and landscape irrigation.



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE

SELECT ANY ACTION
TO SKIP DIRECTLY
TO THAT PAGE



05 | Dallas protests
its **WATER**
resources and
its communities
from flooding
and drought.

**Conserve and
protect our water
resources through
community
stewardship,
educational
programs and
best management
practices.**

**Protect
neighborhoods
from flooding and
prepare them for
droughts.**

**Be a regional leader
in water resilience
by leveraging
innovative
approaches,
strategies and
technologies.**

- Continue investment in public awareness campaigns to increase knowledge of the value of water and importance of conservation.
- Continue investment in leak detection and expand programs to reduce overall water loss through the conveyance systems.
- Evaluate potential opportunities and financial feasibility for reusing water for non-drinking purposes.
- Encourage businesses and residents to plant drought-tolerant and native vegetation or xeriscape to reduce irrigation water use.
- Continue to monitor and protect water quality and implement improvement projects in the watershed.
- Continue to protect and monitor water quality by tracking emerging contaminants that may impact public health.
- Expand efforts to reduce illegal dumping by implementing recommendations identified in the 'Litter and Illegal Dumping Assessment Study (2018)'.
- Use FEMA Community Rating System to educate and protect communities from flooding.
- Complete the implementation of major planned and ongoing drainage infrastructure projects to improve community resilience to flooding.
- Initiate a comprehensive storm drainage system assessment and planning process.
- Evaluate policies affecting drainage and erosion to ensure sustainable development and mitigate adverse impacts.
- Continue monitoring, evaluating and updating the Drought Contingency Plan.
- Continue contingency planning to protect and maintain service of key water infrastructure facilities from extreme weather events.
- Evaluate new technologies to lower nutrient releases into the Trinity Watershed from wastewater treatment plants and incorporate as appropriate.
- Evaluate new or improved operational strategies and technologies to optimize the use of chemicals and reduce energy usage at water and wastewater treatment facilities.
- Continue investment in sewer collection system to reduce Inflow/ Infiltration to improve water quality and reduce energy usage.

CONSERVE AND PROTECT OUR WATER RESOURCES THROUGH COMMUNITY STEWARDSHIP, EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS AND BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES.



WR1. CONTINUE INVESTMENT IN PUBLIC AWARENESS CAMPAIGNS TO INCREASE KNOWLEDGE OF THE VALUE OF WATER AND IMPORTANCE OF CONSERVATION.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Stewardship



Education



Resource
Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Education; Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City will continue to offer rebate and incentive-based programs, and other educational campaigns to promote water conservation, and reduce costs associated with water supply and wastewater to the residential and commercial sectors (including for large water consumers such industrial, commercial, institutional and medical campuses).

The City will continue its public awareness campaigns such as the 'Save Water, Nothing Can Replace It' campaign and collaborate with other regional water providers and agencies to increase awareness of the value of water and promote ways to conserve it.

Additionally, the City will continue its Defend Your Drains public awareness campaign. This program is part of the City's Sanitary Sewer Overflow initiative to reduce wastewater overflows, further protecting the environment.

The City will continue partnering with other regional water providers for a North Texas Region unified education and outreach campaign and share costs. It will continue the ongoing 'Wholesale Customer Outreach Program' to support wholesale customer cities to promote similar public campaigns within their jurisdictions (wholesale customers comprise of about 38% of DWUs' total treated water demand).³³



EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Cost savings from water bills will benefit vulnerable residents, including low-income households who on average spend a higher proportion of their income on utilities.

CONSERVE AND PROTECT OUR WATER RESOURCES THROUGH COMMUNITY STEWARDSHIP, EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS AND BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES.



WR2. CONTINUE INVESTMENT IN LEAK DETECTION AND EXPAND PROGRAMS TO REDUCE OVERALL WATER LOSS THROUGH THE CONVEYANCE SYSTEMS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Stewardship



Education

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action
Ongoing Action

The City will continue to invest in and expand leak detection programs that reduce water loss in the conveyance system, including the evaluation of additional stringent requirements for allowable leakage for new and large diameter pipes. DWU has an extensive leak detection and repair program and is committed to maintaining a rate of less than 10 % for unaccounted water losses in its water system.³⁴

Wholesale customers comprise about 38% of DWU's total treated water demand.³⁵ The City will encourage customer cities served by DWU to follow similar stringent water loss guidelines. DWU will work with customer cities to establish an annual reduction target over the next 10-years to reduce water loss through the conveyance system.

WR3. EVALUATE POTENTIAL OPPORTUNITIES AND FINANCIAL FEASIBILITY FOR REUSING WATER FOR NON-DRINKING PURPOSES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions
Reduction



Stewardship



Water
Quality

ACTION TYPE
Incentive; Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

DWU will evaluate additional opportunities to recycle water for non-potable purposes. This may include for example, selling to large water users such as golf courses for irrigation, or large medical or education campuses. A significant amount of energy may be conserved by using recycled water in place of drinking water for non-potable purposes without compromising public health.

DWU will continue to identify and partner with potential customers to evaluate the financial feasibility of supplying recycled water from wastewater treatment facilities. Sharing the cost for the necessary infrastructure between wastewater facilities and customers will be explored as a potential financing mechanism.



CONSERVE AND PROTECT OUR WATER RESOURCES THROUGH COMMUNITY STEWARDSHIP, EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS AND BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES.

WR4. ENCOURAGE BUSINESSES AND RESIDENTS TO PLANT DROUGHT-TOLERANT AND NATIVE VEGETATION OR XERISCAPE TO REDUCE IRRIGATION WATER USE.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Stewardship



Resource Consumption



Emissions Reduction



Cost Savings

ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
New Action
Ongoing Action

The City will evaluate financial incentives to encourage businesses and residences to shift from green lawns to more drought-tolerant and native vegetation or xeriscape.

In the first phase, the City will continue to offer free irrigation system assessments and develop additional incentives and educational resources to promote reducing outdoor irrigation. Options include but are not limited to the use of smart water technologies such as automated sprinkler systems, turf replacement, and water wise plant selections.

The City will continue ongoing education and outreach programs such as the WaterWise Landscape Tour to promote and recognize landscape design that reduces water consumption for irrigation. In the second phase, the City will take additional steps and further incentivize the transition to native and drought tolerate plant palettes for properties with landscape areas above a certain size.

WR5. CONTINUE TO MONITOR AND PROTECT WATER QUALITY AND IMPLEMENT IMPROVEMENT PROJECTS IN THE WATERSHED.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Water Quality



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action
Ongoing Action

The City will continue its active participation and collaboration with other agencies within the Trinity Watershed to protect water quality. The City will work with other cities in the watershed towards maintaining regulatory water quality standards in creeks and rivers.

The City will expand its current Stormwater Quality Monitoring Program for streams and creeks to develop methods to include other surface water bodies and expand upon the parameters monitored. The City will implement improvement projects to improve quality as needed.

The City will consider creating a Watershed Protection Plan for White Rock Creek to protect public health. (This creek is currently listed as 'impaired' for bacteria).



CONSERVE AND PROTECT OUR WATER RESOURCES THROUGH COMMUNITY STEWARDSHIP, EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS AND BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES.

WR6. CONTINUE TO PROTECT AND MONITOR WATER QUALITY BY TRACKING EMERGING CONTAMINANTS THAT MAY IMPACT PUBLIC HEALTH.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

DWU will enhance its monitoring plan for emerging contaminants that can compromise water quality or public health including, but not limited to Per- and polyfluoroalkyl substances (PFAS) as these substances are carcinogens.

DWU will develop a plan to further educate and support its customers in regulatory driven programs for lead and copper monitoring within schools, childcare centers and public spaces.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Contaminants such as lead, that can result from aging infrastructure typically affect communities in neighborhoods that have historically lacked reinvestment. Monitoring water quality in community centers and schools can reduce health risks for all, but especially benefit communities more exposed to these hazards.

WR7. USE FEMA COMMUNITY RATING SYSTEM TO EDUCATE AND PROTECT COMMUNITIES FROM FLOODING.



Adaptation



Cost Savings

ACTION TYPE
Incentive
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The Community Rating System (CRS) is a voluntary program for National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) participating communities. The goal of the rating system is to reduce flood damages to insurable property through a comprehensive approach to floodplain management. The program provides incentives in the form of premium discounts for communities based on the rating it achieves. The program rates communities from Class 1 to Class 10. For CRS participating communities, flood insurance premium rates are discounted in increments of 5% (i.e., a Class 1 community would receive a 45% premium discount, while a Class 9 community would receive a 5% discount).

Credit points are allotted based upon completion of 19 possible initiatives identified by the program. The City of Dallas currently has a Class 5 Rating and is evaluating the financial feasibility for undertaking additional initiatives to qualify for a Class 4 rating. The rating system is utilized as a tool to educate and protect communities from flooding.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This program increases the affordability of insurance for property owners located within the floodplain.

PROTECT NEIGHBORHOODS FROM FLOODING AND PREPARE THEM FOR DROUGHTS.



WR8. COMPLETE THE IMPLEMENTATION OF MAJOR PLANNED AND ONGOING DRAINAGE INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS TO IMPROVE COMMUNITY RESILIENCE TO FLOODING.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Cost Savings

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City will continue to fund and implement ongoing drainage infrastructure projects such as the Mill Creek Drainage Relief Tunnel, and Dallas Floodway/Dallas Floodway Extension. The Mill Creek Drainage Relief Tunnel is a five-mile-long underground tunnel that is currently under construction and will provide flood relief to a large portion of east Dallas. The Dallas Floodway/Dallas Floodway Extension projects are along the Trinity River and the City of Dallas is currently partnering with the United States Army Corps of Engineers

(USACE) for implementation (including through use of USACE federal funds). The completion of these projects will improve resilience for flood prone communities.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This project will reduce the risk of flooding for all communities, however, vulnerable communities are more likely to be in or near floodplains.

WR9. INITIATE A COMPREHENSIVE STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEM ASSESSMENT AND PLANNING PROCESS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

DWU will initiate a comprehensive storm drainage system assessment by evaluating the existing storm drainage system and identifying critical improvements and funding necessary for implementation. The assessment will identify measures and priorities to reduce flooding now and under future climate conditions to protect lives and property.

This assessment will help the City identify critical projects to be funded through the long-term Capital Improvement Plan. The City will evaluate other funding mechanisms such as low interest loans and State grants through the Texas Water Development Board (TWDB) flood program to implement critical projects.

PROTECT NEIGHBORHOODS FROM FLOODING AND PREPARE THEM FOR DROUGHTS.



WR10. EVALUATE POLICIES AFFECTING DRAINAGE AND EROSION TO ENSURE SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND MITIGATE ADVERSE IMPACTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Water Quality



Public Health



Resource Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will evaluate policies that affect erosion and suggest measures to mitigate its impacts. A decrease in water quality and property impacts due to soil erosion in streams within the watershed is a concern. The City will also evaluate guidelines for riparian buffers and design guidelines along streams to minimize erosion, protect property, and protect water quality.

Finally, the City will evaluate policies affecting drainage particularly in communities prone to localized flooding and identify measures to reduce its impact. Measures can include modification of building design to protect from water damage, opportunities to incorporate green infrastructure solutions, and installation of flood protection measures.

WR11. CONTINUE MONITORING, EVALUATING AND UPDATING THE DROUGHT CONTINGENCY PLAN.

PRIMARY BENEFIT

CO-BENEFITS



Adaptation



Public Health



Resource Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Plan
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The Drought Contingency Plan describes the conditions that require short-term water demand management and establishes policies and procedures that offer strategies for a timely and effective response. In general, such a response would be needed when water use in the area served by DWU approaches the system's supply, treatment, or delivery capacity. The plan is implemented only during these situations. Examples include

drought conditions, unusually high-water demands, unforeseen equipment or system failure, or contamination of a water supply source. The plan identifies different restrictions for all users based on the drought stage (1, 2, or 3) and methods to enforce these. The City will continue to monitor and evaluate the effectiveness of the Plan and update it as necessary.

BE A REGIONAL LEADER IN WATER RESILIENCE BY LEVERAGING INNOVATIVE APPROACHES, STRATEGIES AND TECHNOLOGIES



WR12. CONTINUE CONTINGENCY PLANNING TO PROTECT AND MAINTAIN SERVICE OF KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE FACILITIES FROM EXTREME WEATHER EVENTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Cost Savings



Emissions Reduction

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

As part of the ongoing Risk and Resilience Assessment of the DWU water system, the vulnerability of drinking water facilities to extreme weather events will be assessed and strategies will be identified to mitigate their impacts. Parameters such as road access to facilities, capacity of facilities during extreme weather events and energy sources to power these facilities will be assessed. In addition to drinking water treatment

DWU plans to conduct a similar assessment for wastewater and stormwater facilities in the future and recommendations from these assessments will be evaluated for implementation. DWU will evaluate the potential to install secondary power sources including but not limited to solar panels, battery storage and generators for critical infrastructure to provide resilience during potential future grid outages.

WR13. EVALUATE NEW TECHNOLOGIES TO LOWER NUTRIENT RELEASES INTO THE TRINITY WATERSHED FROM WASTEWATER TREATMENT PLANTS AND INCORPORATE AS APPROPRIATE.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

DWU will evaluate implementation of Biological Nutrient Removal processes at the Central and Southside wastewater treatment plants. These are processes that will improve water quality by removing additional nitrogen and phosphorus from

wastewater before it is discharged into the Trinity River. DWU will evaluate the financial feasibility of implementing these nutrient recovery projects and implement them as appropriate and in accordance with regulatory requirements.

BE A REGIONAL LEADER IN WATER RESILIENCE BY LEVERAGING INNOVATIVE APPROACHES, STRATEGIES AND TECHNOLOGIES



WR14. EVALUATE NEW OR IMPROVED OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES AND TECHNOLOGIES TO OPTIMIZE THE USE OF CHEMICALS AND REDUCE ENERGY USAGE AT WATER AND WASTEWATER TREATMENT FACILITIES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Public Health



Cost Savings



Emissions Reduction

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action
Ongoing Action

As part of the ongoing 'Water Production Facilities Strategic Master Plan' and the upcoming 'Wastewater Facilities Strategic Master Plan Update', DWU will evaluate opportunities to optimize current operations by reducing the overall use of chemicals and energy consumption. DWU will evaluate strategies and new technologies to increase efficiency and shift water and wastewater treatment plants to energy-neutral or

reduced energy facilities, including the addition of photovoltaic panels.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The City of Dallas follows EPA affordability guidelines to ensure the cost of service is affordable to all customers.

WR15. CONTINUE INVESTMENT IN SEWER COLLECTION SYSTEM TO REDUCE INFLOW/INFILTRATION TO IMPROVE WATER QUALITY AND REDUCE ENERGY USAGE.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Public Health

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The City will continue to invest in its collection system to reduce the overall I/I. Inflow refers to the amount of stormwater conveyed via illegal connections or non-sealed access points and infiltration refers to the amount of water that seeps into these pipes during storm events. The reduction of I/I will reduce wet weather sanitary sewer overflows and help improve the resilience of wastewater treatment plants, lift stations, and the overall collection system during major storm events. The investment can be in the form of

sanitary sewer evaluation studies, point repairs and pipe replacement, and closed-circuit television (CCTV) inspection of large diameter pipes along major waterways.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Improvements made to the collection system will help to prevent vulnerable communities with aging and undersized infrastructure from experiencing sanitary sewer overflows.

GOAL 6: DALLAS PROTECTS AND ENHANCES ITS ECOSYSTEMS, TREES AND GREEN SPACES THAT IN TURN IMPROVE PUBLIC HEALTH.

Why Ecosystems Matter	p. 137
Building on City Achievements	p. 141
What can I do?	p. 142
Actions	p. 143



TARGETS

33%, 37% AND 40% OR MORE
CANOPY COVER CITYWIDE
BY 2030, 2040, 2050,
RESPECTIVELY.

20%, 50% AND 75%
REDUCTION IN URBAN HEAT
ISLAND INDEX BY 2030, 2040,
2050, RESPECTIVELY.

80%, 90% AND 95% OF THE
POPULATION LIVES WITHIN
MILE WALK TO A PARK OR
TRAIL BY 2030, 2040, 2050,
RESPECTIVELY.



WHY ECOSYSTEMS MATTER

In Dallas, there are 388 parks totaling 27,038 acres, plus the roughly 6000-acre Great Trinity Forest. These green spaces are not evenly distributed and only 60% of Dallas residents have access to a park within a half-mile walk of their homes. This is relatively low when compared to peer cities such as Chicago (97%), Seattle (94%) and Denver (84%).³⁶

Increased temperatures and droughts have dire impacts on urban ecosystems, trees, and green spaces. In 2011, the drought killed approximately 5.6 million trees in urban areas across the state.³⁷ Since much of Texas is covered in clay-rich soils that expand and contract when soil moisture is lost, it also resulted in schools and recreation centers closing more than two dozen athletic fields due to cracks in the soil of up to two feet deep.

Figures 29 and 30 compare tree canopy cover with average temperature, illustrating the impact trees have on ambient temperature. Open spaces including parks, urban forests, and prairies can deliver multiple benefits including reducing the urban heat island effect, sequestering carbon, managing flooding, as well as providing benefits to urban and migrating species in the form of habitat protection and biodiversity.

Ecosystem health, in turn, protects human health by providing benefits such as opportunities for activity that reduce stress, and increase overall mental and physical wellness.

Figures 31 and 32 on the following page, show existing open space and underutilized land (such as vacant properties) compared with areas prone to flooding (higher risk shown in pink). Areas with a higher risk of flooding already overlap with much of the City's green infrastructure, but there are further opportunities to expand the network to mitigate flooding.

Solutions in this section build upon and strengthen ongoing initiatives to increase tree canopy, improve and increase park spaces, and promote community stewardship in partnership with other organizations. Dallas can significantly reduce the urban heat island effect by preserving and expanding the urban forest, in combination with increased use of light-colored materials in the urban realm.

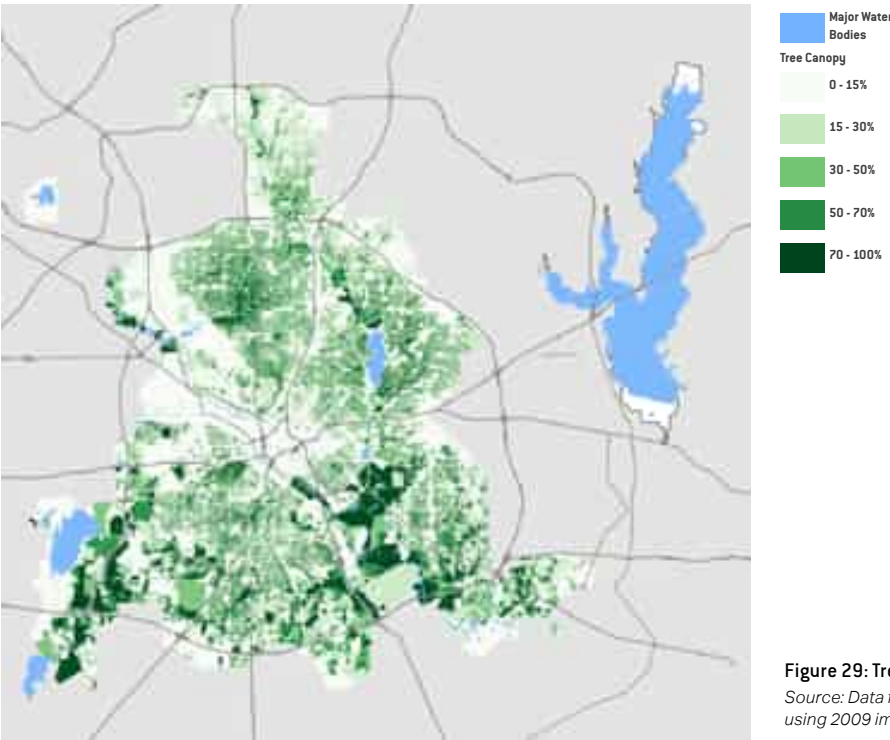


Figure 29: Tree canopy in Dallas
Source: Data from Texas Trees Foundation using 2009 imagery

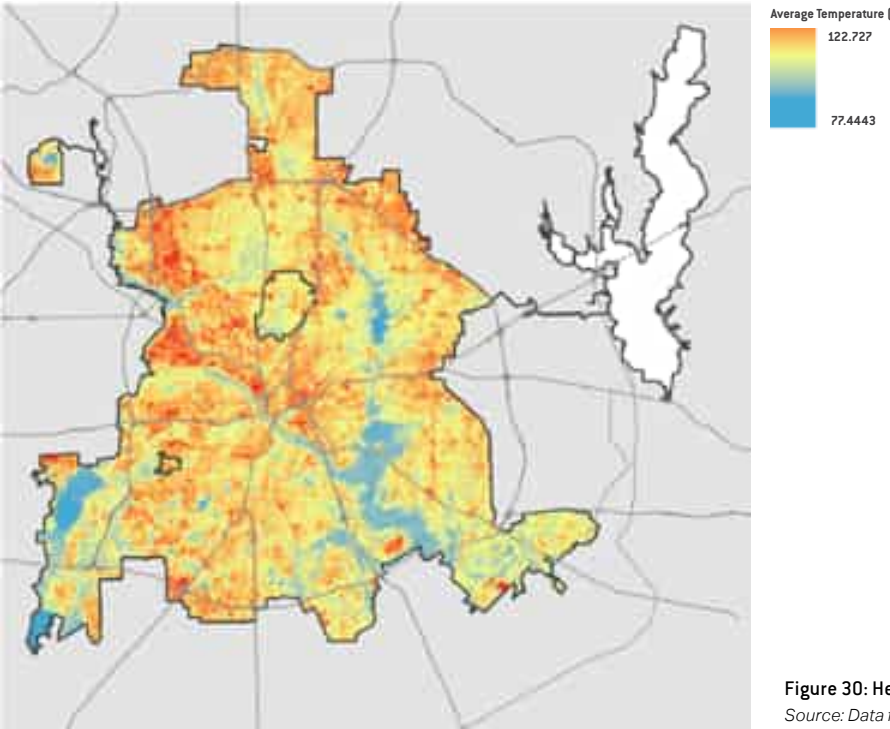


Figure 30: Heat island in Dallas
Source: Data from NASA 2016

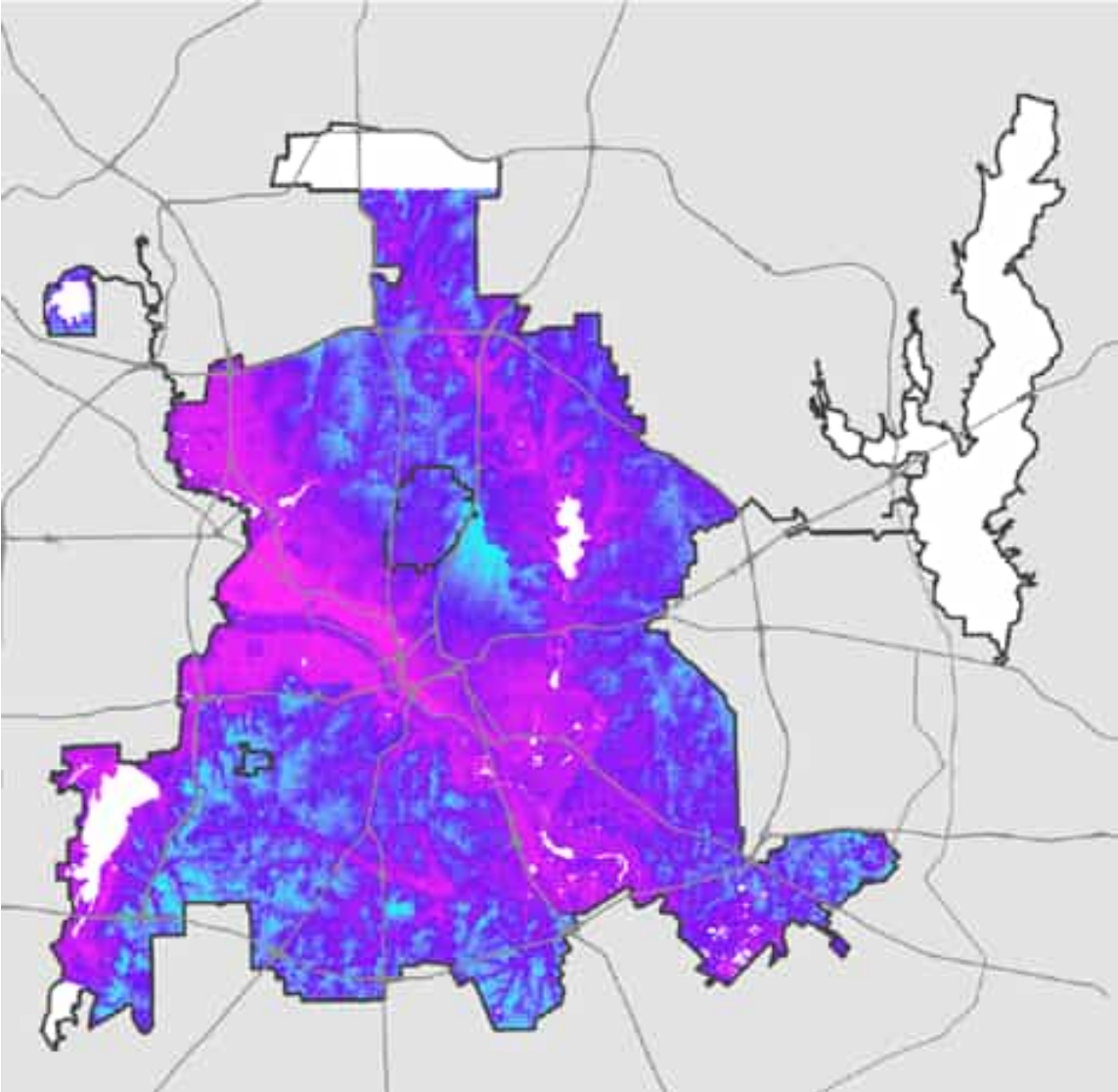


Figure 31: Flood risk index
[Composite index based on soil infiltration capacity, land cover, slope, topographic wetness index, height above nearest drainage and height above the watershed outlet]

Source: Data from SMU, modelled by Rivera, S. 2018

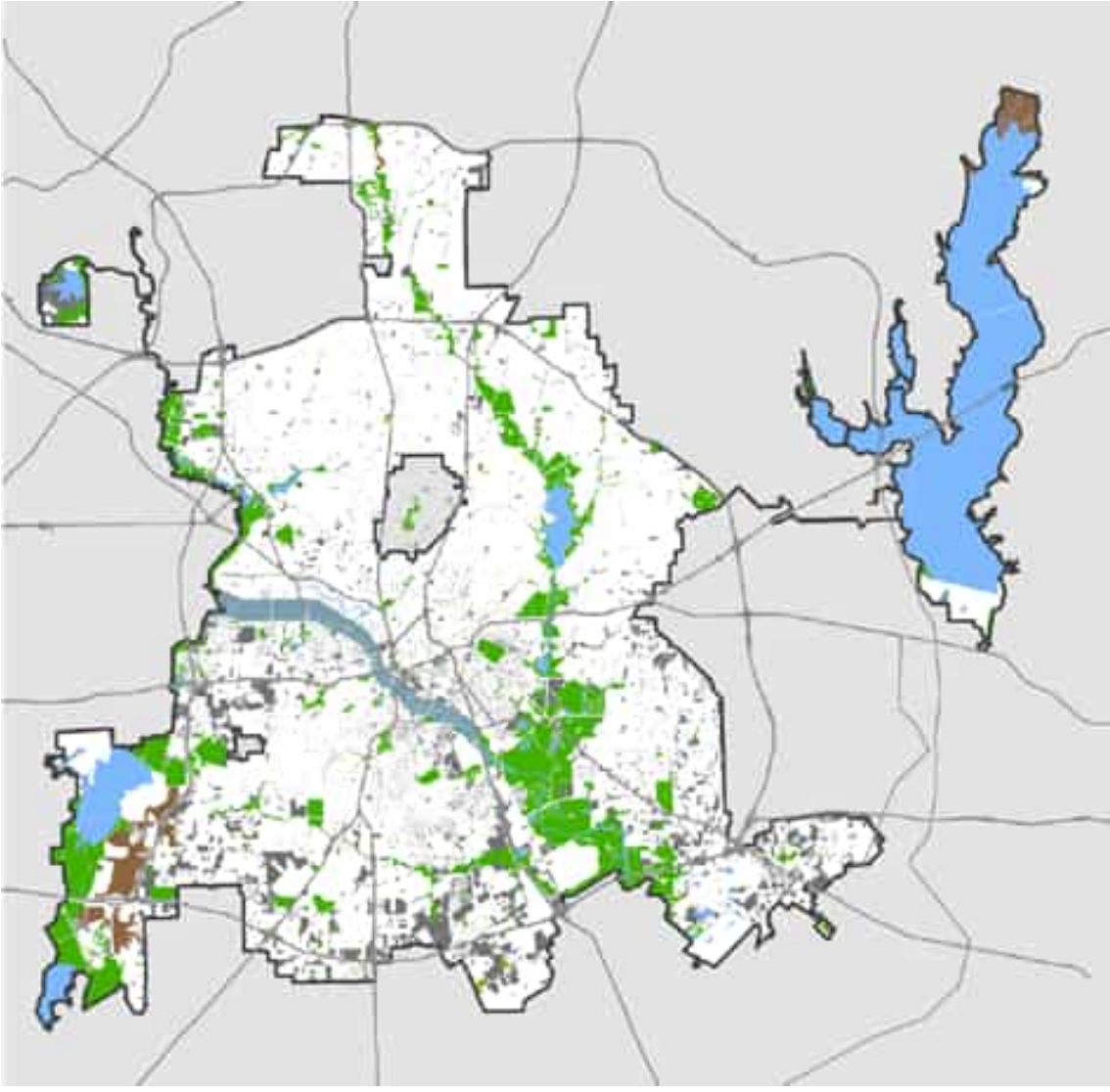


Figure 32: Green infrastructure opportunities
[Undeveloped land uses by parcel]

Source: City of Dallas 2019



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

The Branch Out Dallas program is a tree sapling giveaway program for residents. Close to 5,000 saplings are distributed each year.

It was started in 2018 as an effort to reduce the heat island effect and to increase the overall tree canopy in the city. Each tree planted helps get closer to meeting these goals.

WHAT CAN I DO?



Residents

- 01** Help combat urban heat and help the City increase its urban tree canopy by **planting a free tree** provided by [Branch Out Dallas](#).
- 02** Want to learn more? **Join the WaterWise Landscape Tour** to visit community gardens and learn how your neighbors grow native plants, compost their food waste, grow pollinator gardens, and use stones to create cool landscapes among other things.
- 03** Use the [TexasSmartScape tool](#) to design and **plant your own pollinator garden** to attract butterflies, bees, and hummingbirds.
- 04** **Join the Citizen Forester program** to help restore our urban forest. Learn about the benefits of trees and skills such as tree identification, planting and pruning. Upon graduation, citizen foresters can become the eyes, ears and hands for the City Arborists and support public safety.

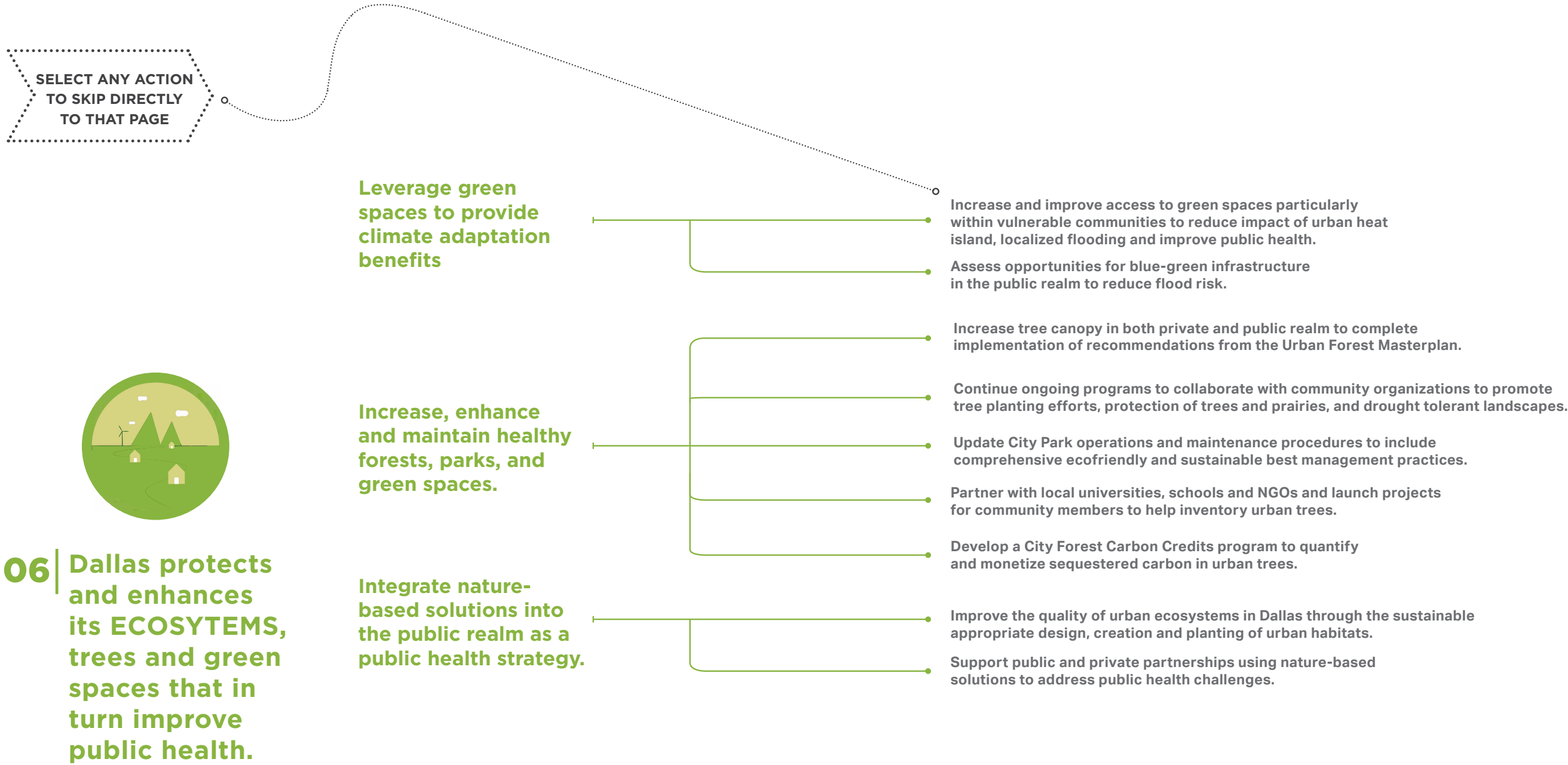


Businesses

- 01** Volunteer your time with [Texas Trees Foundation](#) to plant trees and help **keep your community cool**.
- 02** Increase planting, green areas and trees **on your property!**



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE



LEVERAGE GREEN SPACES TO PROVIDE CLIMATE ADAPTATION BENEFITS



EG1. INCREASE AND IMPROVE ACCESS TO GREEN SPACES PARTICULARLY WITHIN VULNERABLE COMMUNITIES TO REDUCE IMPACT OF URBAN HEAT ISLAND, LOCALIZED FLOODING AND IMPROVE PUBLIC HEALTH.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions Reduction



Air Quality



Water Quality



Public Health



Inequality



Resource Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The Smart Growth for Dallas mapping study identified locations in the city where open space is needed to reduce the urban heat island effect, flooding and to provide recreational opportunities. The City will identify city-owned vacant properties within these areas, prioritizing underserved neighborhoods, that can be transformed into pocket parks or pocket prairies (which require less maintenance compared to more traditional parks).

The City will evaluate city-owned properties and identify opportunities to convert under-utilized areas such as public parking lots, space under freeways rooftops, etc. into gardens, parklets, vertical green walls or other public green spaces. If there isn't adequate city owned space within priority neighborhoods, the City should identify other vacant properties that could be leveraged. At the city-wide scale, neighborhood-based targets will be adopted for reducing urban heat and

stormwater run-off in a way that can inform land development decision making. Currently decisions are made on a site-specific case by case basis for new development. Building upon The 'Urban Heat Island Management Study (2017)' and Smart Growth for Dallas mapping study, the Comprehensive Plan update will adopt neighborhood level targets for greening, cooling and stormwater runoff reduction strategies.

To maintain the ecosystem services and floodproofing function that the Great Trinity Forest provides the City will update the Great Trinity Forest Management Plan and implement its recommendations. This includes assessing species diversity, planting targets, and canopy health management suitable for the changing climate and other best practices.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This action will increase access to greenspaces for vulnerable communities and property values may rise as a result. Robust affordability and neighborhood stabilization strategies should be considered to prevent the displacement of existing residents.

LEVERAGE GREEN SPACES TO PROVIDE CLIMATE ADAPTATION BENEFITS



EG2. ASSESS OPPORTUNITIES FOR BLUE-GREEN INFRASTRUCTURE IN THE PUBLIC REALM TO REDUCE FLOOD RISK.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions Reduction



Air Quality



Water Quality



Public Health



Resource Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will identify areas prone to flood risk (now and from future flood events) such as neighborhoods located on floodplains along the Trinity River and evaluate whether green infrastructure may be a solution in that area to mitigate flood impact. This will include city parks as potential flood retention areas. The 'Drainage Design Manual (2019)' and the 'Complete Streets Design Manual (2013)' provide design guidelines.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The installation of the green-blue infrastructure will be prioritized in communities most vulnerable to flooding, and currently least able to deal with the consequences.



IIINCREASE, ENHANCE AND MAINTAIN HEALTHY FORESTS, PARKS, AND GREEN SPACES.



EG3. INCREASE TREE CANOPY IN BOTH PRIVATE AND PUBLIC REALM TO COMPLETE IMPLEMENTATION OF RECOMMENDATIONS FROM THE URBAN FOREST MASTERPLAN.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions
Reduction



Air
Quality



Water
Quality



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will implement the actions in the Dallas Urban Forest Master Plan, which aims to unite urban forestry efforts and provides strategies to mitigate the urban heat island effect. The 'Dallas Urban Heat Island Management Study (2017)' recommends planting approximately 250,000 trees across the city to achieve significant cooling and health benefits. The benefits of greening strategies can be as high as 15°F of cooling in some areas on hot summer days (Texas Trees Foundation 2017).

The City will actively manage the long-term health of Dallas' urban forest by removing invasive species, establishing protocols for assessing canopy loss, managing debris, replanting and monitoring, and prioritizing tree planting after storms and droughts in areas that suffer canopy cover loss. Vulnerable neighborhoods most impacted by the heat island effect, streets without sidewalk trees and corridors with high pedestrian traffic will be prioritized for tree planting to improve walkability and pedestrian comfort.



EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Planting efforts in vulnerable communities increase the adaptive capacity to extreme heat.
- Residents in vulnerable areas may not be able to maintain any new trees planted or pay for irrigation, so support should be provided to maintain any new trees planted in these neighborhoods.
- This action will increase access to greenspaces for vulnerable communities and property values may rise as a result. Therefore robust affordability and neighborhood stabilization strategies should be considered to prevent the displacement of existing residents.

IIINCREASE, ENHANCE AND MAINTAIN HEALTHY FORESTS, PARKS, AND GREEN SPACES.



EG4. CONTINUE ONGOING PROGRAMS TO COLLABORATE WITH COMMUNITY ORGANIZATIONS TO PROMOTE TREE PLANTING EFFORTS, PROTECTION OF TREES AND PRAIRIES, AND DROUGHT TOLERANT LANDSCAPES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions
Reduction



Air
Quality



Water
Quality



Public
Health



Employment

ACTION TYPE
Educational; Program
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

In addition to implementing the Urban Forest Masterplan described in Action EG2, the City will work with community-based organizations on existing and new land stewardship programs that educate residents and businesses about the benefits of tree planting and native, drought tolerant landscapes in North Texas. In addition, the City will provide educational resources on best practices

for maintaining mature trees. The City will support partnerships and initiatives that protect and expand the native Blackland Prairies. The City will continue to support ongoing efforts such as Branch out Dallas and City of Dallas Reforestation Program to offer resources, technical assistance and volunteer labor and encourage private property owners to plant trees on their property.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Planting efforts in vulnerable communities increase the capacity to adapt to extreme heat.
- This action will increase access to greenspaces for vulnerable communities and property values may rise as a result. Therefore, robust affordability and neighborhood stabilization strategies should be considered to prevent the displacement of existing residents.

EG5. UPDATE CITY PARK OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES TO INCLUDE COMPREHENSIVE ECOFRIENDLY AND SUSTAINABLE BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES PRACTICES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Education



Air
Quality

ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will update its park operations and maintenance procedures to include comprehensive ecofriendly and sustainable practices. This will build on the current efforts and practices established by the Department of Parks and Recreation and include strategies such as using reclaimed water to irrigate City parks, using integrated pest management and organic pesticides and fertilizers, composting

organic waste collected in the park premises, contracting International Society of Arboriculture (ISA) certified companies for tree maintenance, and transitioning from gasoline to electric leaf blowers and lawn mowers. To ensure implementation of the new practices, City parks maintenance staff will be trained on the updated sustainable practices.

INCREASE, ENHANCE AND MAINTAIN HEALTHY FORESTS, PARKS, AND GREEN SPACES.



EG6. PARTNER WITH LOCAL UNIVERSITIES, SCHOOLS AND NGOS AND LAUNCH PROJECTS FOR COMMUNITY MEMBERS TO HELP INVENTORY URBAN TREES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Stewardship



Education



Resource
Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

A City-wide tree inventory will help monitor the health and diversity of trees in the public and private realm and estimate carbon sequestered. The City will partner with organizations who initiate and maintain programs to capture data on urban trees in North Texas. Existing inventories such as 'Downtown Dallas Tree Inventory & Ecosystem Services Benefits Report (2015)' and 'University of North Texas at Dallas Campus Tree Inventory &

Ecosystem Service Benefits Report (2016)' will be compiled on one platform. The City will coordinate with local organizations to encourage consistent methods. Existing tools like 'inaturalist' enable community members to record observations and learn about local flora and fauna in their bioregion. The City should utilize this data to inform decisions about urban ecosystems and forest management.

EG7. DEVELOP A CITY FOREST CARBON CREDITS PROGRAM TO QUANTIFY AND MONETIZE SEQUESTERED CARBON IN URBAN TREES.

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action



Mitigation



Resource
Conservation

The City will evaluate the potential to set up a carbon credits program. The program would quantify the carbon sequestered through urban trees. These credits may be used as a potential way to fund CECAP implementation; additionally carbon credit programs require measures to maintain, preserve and protect the urban canopy in areas subject to the carbon credit program, and so can serve to help ensure appropriate care of this resource.

Each credit can potentially monetize:

- Metric tons of CO₂
- Rainfall interception in cubic meters/year
- Air quality benefits in tons/year
- Energy savings in kWh/yr

A similar program called 'City Forest Carbon Program' is being piloted by the City of Austin, and several other U.S. cities.

INTEGRATE NATURE-BASED SOLUTIONS INTO THE PUBLIC REALM AS A PUBLIC HEALTH STRATEGY.



EG8. IMPROVE THE QUALITY OF URBAN ECOSYSTEMS IN DALLAS THROUGH THE SUSTAINABLE APPROPRIATE DESIGN, CREATION AND PLANTING OF URBAN HABITATS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Education



Resource
Conservation

ACTION TYPE
Education
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will evaluate locations for potential wildlife corridors to create contiguous habitats across the city. A comprehensive assessment will be conducted to identify potential wildlife corridors. The study will also identify policies and implementation mechanisms for creating these corridors (for example through the Comprehensive Plan update).

In addition, education programs will be developed on creating urban habitats, pollinator gardens and bee keeping. Guidance for developers will be provided on urban design-based strategies for the creation of bird-friendly developments, buildings, and structures.

EG9. SUPPORT PUBLIC AND PRIVATE PARTNERSHIPS USING NATURE-BASED SOLUTIONS TO ADDRESS PUBLIC HEALTH CHALLENGES.

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action



Environmental
Justice



Education



Public
Health



Employment

The City will support and encourage public and private partnerships for initiatives using nature-based solutions to address public health challenges. The City will encourage partnerships, provide technical assistance with grant writing, informational resources on funding opportunities and other creative financing options to nonprofits that are working on initiatives or programs that aim to address public health challenges using nature-based solutions.

A successful example of this is the 'Southwestern Medical District Urban Streetscape Master Plan (2016)'. This is an ongoing district wide streetscape

project that emphasizes and supports public health through nature-based solutions in a neighborhood that has only 7% tree canopy and is a major urban heat island. The project is a result of a partnership between Southwestern Medical District and Texas Trees Foundation with support from City of Dallas and other stakeholders.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The City will prioritize environmental justice programs that alleviate burdens in vulnerable communities.



GOAL 7: ALL DALLAS' COMMUNITIES HAVE ACCESS TO HEALTHY, LOCAL FOOD.

Why Food and Urban Agriculture Matters	p. 153
Building on City Achievements	p. 155
What can I do?	p. 156
Actions	p. 157

TARGETS

50%, 75%, 100% OF THE POPULATION LIVES HAS ACCESS TO HEALTHY, AFFORDABLE FOOD BY 2030, 2040, AND 2050.*

INCREASE BY 20%, 50%, 75% THE ACREAGE OF URBAN GARDENS PRODUCING FOOD BY 2030, 2040, AND 2050.**

INCREASE BY 10%, 25%, 50% OR MORE RESTAURANTS, FARM STANDS, OR MARKETS SOURCING FROM LOCAL PRODUCERS BY 2030, 2040, AND 2050.

*within 1/2 mile walk or 10-minute drive
**for community distribution, local markets or restaurants



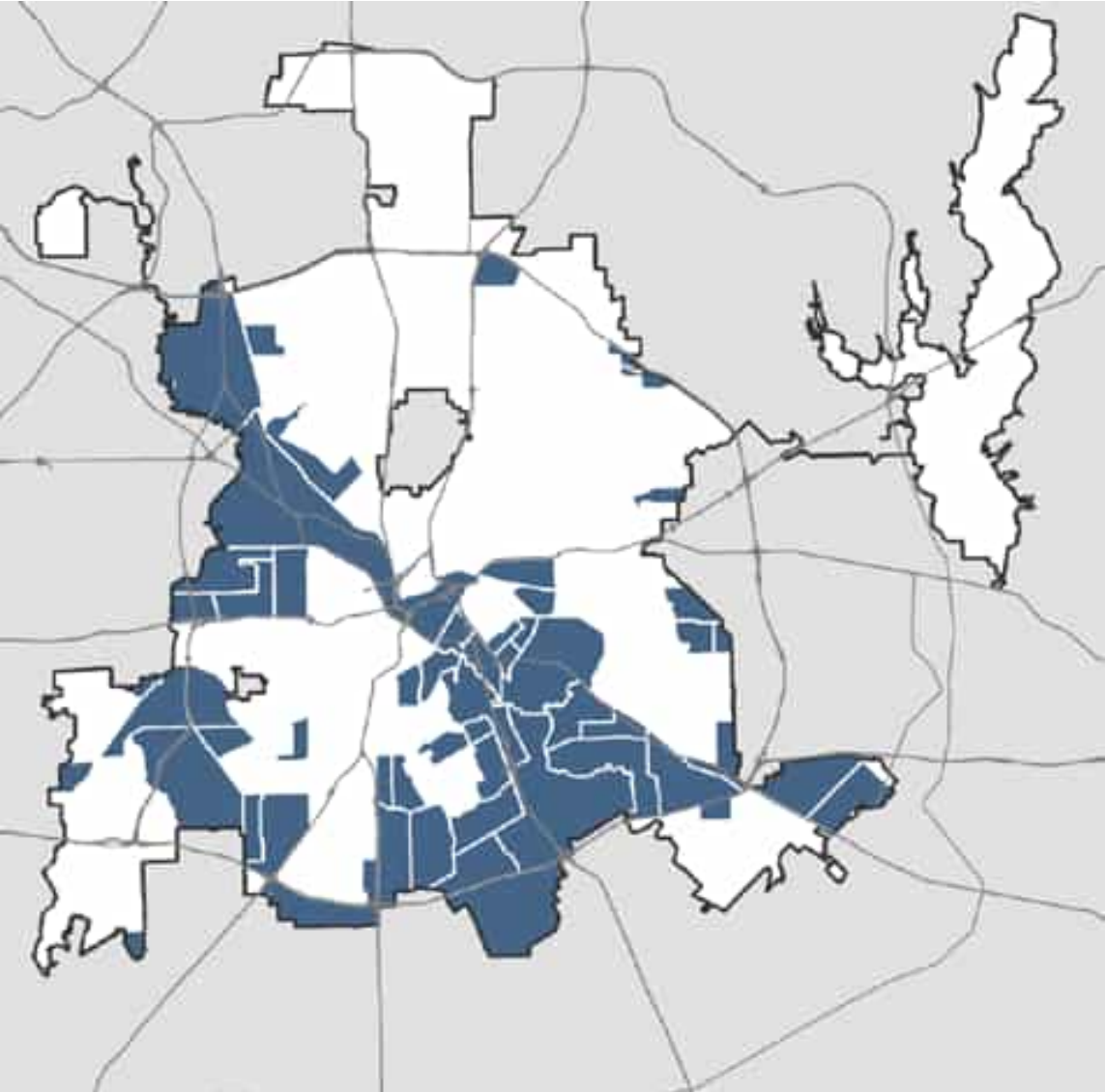
WHY FOOD AND URBAN AGRICULTURE MATTERS

Access to healthy food for vulnerable communities in southern and western Dallas is a significant challenge—36% of Dallas’ residents live in census tracts defined as food deserts. The USDA defines food deserts as low-income areas with low access to vehicles and with no grocers within one mile. Lack of access to food is also complicated by other issues such as income, education and race. This leads to additional public health challenges for a population also dealing with respiratory illness related to poor air quality. **Figure 33** shows census tracts with low food access.

Food production, distribution and land use accounts for 30% of global GHG emissions. In the U.S., 4% of the food sold is beef, which accounts for 36% of food-related emissions. Rising temperatures, changing precipitation patterns, and more frequent droughts may result in losses to crops and livestock across the nation and globe and could lead to increased food prices. The region’s food is heavily dependent on food suppliers from outside of Texas and the United States. Extreme weather events can lead to power outages, and damage to transportation infrastructure, which may lead to supply chain vulnerability and food spoilage. Communities who already face food insecurity become more vulnerable to the above-mentioned impacts. Food security is defined as ‘a condition in which all community residents obtain a safe, culturally appropriate, nutritionally sound diet through an economically and environmentally sustainable food system that promotes community self-reliance and social justice’. ³⁸

There are inextricable links between food and urban agriculture and other sectors. Sustainable methods of agriculture support healthy ecosystems and play a role in carbon sequestration. Local food production reduces emissions related to ‘food miles’ and stimulates local economic development and green jobs. For the purpose of food-related efforts in Dallas, ‘local’ will be defined as food grown within the State of Texas. Green jobs are defined as ‘jobs in businesses that produce goods or provide services that benefit the environment or conserve natural resources or jobs in which workers’ duties involve making their establishment’s production processes more environmentally friendly or use fewer natural resources.’³⁹

The 2015 greenhouse gas inventory is a conventional sector-based inventory. This means that the benefit of local actions related to food may not be accounted for directly in the City’s future inventory updates (unless the City decides to do a consumption-based inventory) but will still make an impact at the global scale. Solutions in this sector target emissions reductions at each stage of the food supply chain; however, most actions focus on equity and address issues such as food access and food security.



Low Income and Low Access
Census Tracts

**Figure 33: Census tracts with Low Income
And Low Access (1 Mile) to Grocery Stores**
Source: USDA 2015



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

The City of Dallas Office of Innovation, in partnership with the Communities Foundation of Texas, conducted a 'Food Innovation Challenge' to crowd source creative ideas to increase access to local, nutritious and affordable food options for all Dallas residents.

The challenge gives Dallas residents the opportunity to submit ideas and solutions on how the to solve food inequities in their communities. Ultimately, it will aid the City's efforts in having better food access, healthier food choices, more locally-grown food and reduce food waste.

Residents

01 Find and [join a local CSA](#) (Community Supported Agriculture), which is a membership to a small farm, that provides fresh, local produce each week.

02 [Join Bonton Farms](#), a community-based urban farm or shop for local produce and other goods at their market.

03 Help improve food security in your community by contributing food, donating to, or [volunteering for the North Texas Food Bank](#).

04 [Learn about how you can grow your own produce](#) at home from the Dallas County Master Gardener Association.

Businesses

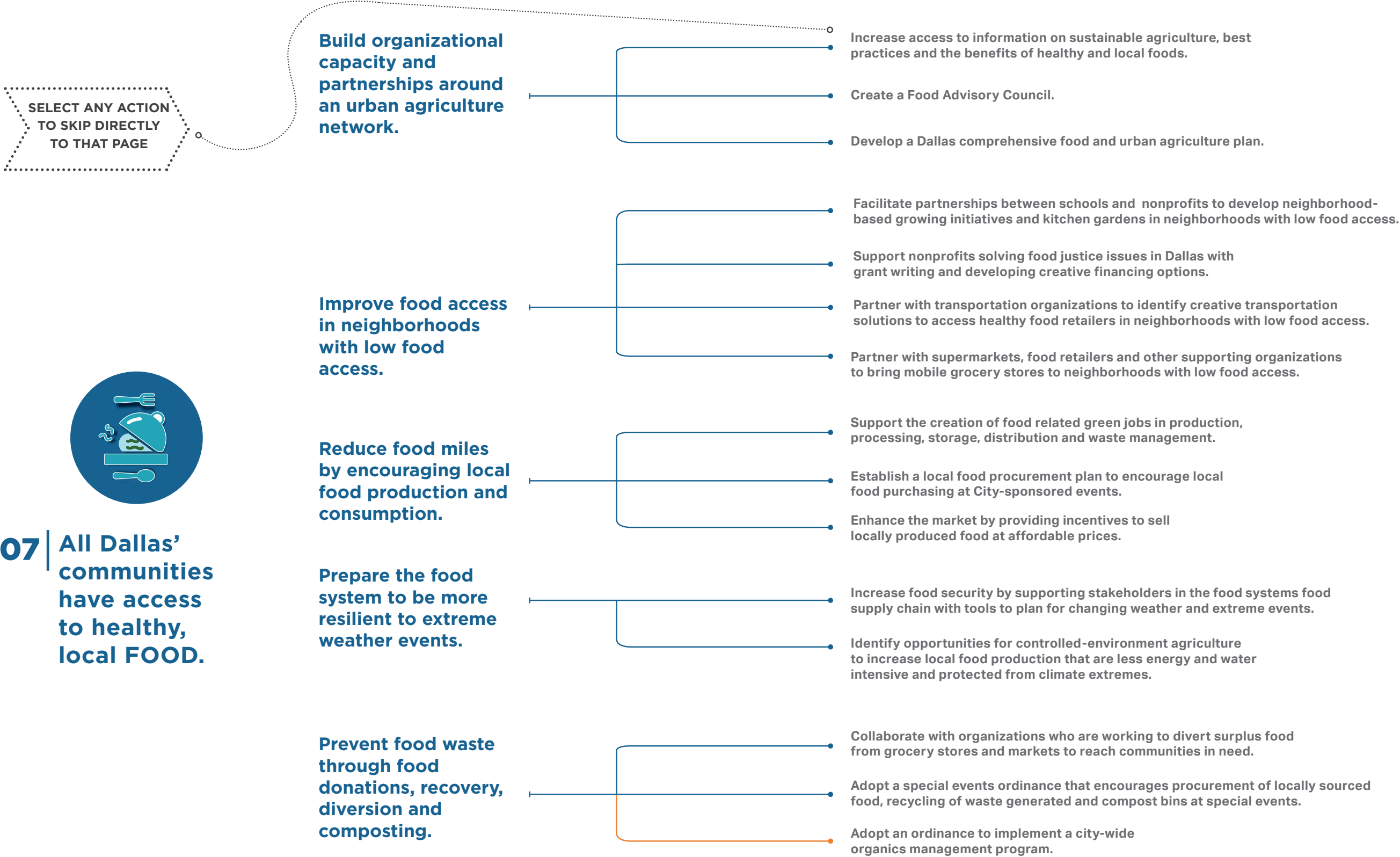
01 [Donate surplus food](#) to the North Texas Food Bank, which provides 200,000 meals per day to residents facing hunger.

02 Foodsource DFW helps businesses facilitate large donations of surplus foods and resources that would otherwise go to waste to those in need. [Schedule a free tax-deductible pickup](#) and Foodsource DFW will distribute the food to a network of regional food banks.

03 All food services businesses, but especially full-service hotels, can use the [Hotel Kitchen Toolkit](#) to identify ways they can reduce food waste. Participating hotels have seen reductions in food waste of 10-38% in just 12 weeks.



SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE



07 | All Dallas' communities have access to healthy, local FOOD.



ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

BUILD ORGANIZATIONAL CAPACITY AND PARTNERSHIPS AROUND AN URBAN AGRICULTURE NETWORK

FA1. INCREASE ACCESS TO INFORMATION ON SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE, BEST PRACTICES AND THE BENEFITS OF HEALTHY AND LOCAL FOODS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT	CO-BENEFITS
 Adaptation	 Public Health Cost savings Education

The City will create a multi-faceted campaign aimed at a range of audiences to share informational resources on sustainable agriculture, locally sourced goods, edible landscapes and low carbon diets.

The City will provide technical assistance on urban farming in North Texas to residents, HOAs, and restaurants interested in initiating their own projects. This may include sustainable growing methods such as permaculture, restorative farming, rewilding, hydroponics, aquaponics, etc., sharing seeds and starters, and tool giveaways.

The City will identify opportunities to increase consumer awareness of food origins and share the impacts of food products grown/raised in tropical locations that might use slash-and-burn deforestation practices. The campaign will be launched with a “Meat-Free Mondays” program by partnering with local restaurants to encourage plant-based options; based on locally-produced and/or seasonal foods, as possible.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Ensure outreach campaigns and materials are available in multiple languages and are culturally appropriate.

FA2. CREATE A FOOD ADVISORY COUNCIL.

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

PRIMARY BENEFIT	CO-BENEFITS
 Environmental Quality	 Stewardship Education Resource Consumption Emissions Reduction Adaptation

The City will bring a diverse group of food stakeholders together to work towards common goals and shape food policy for the region. Stakeholders will include farmers, advocates, nonprofits, restaurants, chefs, public health experts and community members.

This council should guide the development of a comprehensive food and urban agriculture plan for the city, and subsequent policy related to local food systems, food security and food access.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Food access is a key issue to be addressed by this council so at least one council member should be able to speak on behalf of vulnerable communities.



ACTION TYPE
Plan; Assessment
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

BUILD ORGANIZATIONAL CAPACITY AND PARTNERSHIPS AROUND AN URBAN AGRICULTURE NETWORK

FA3. DEVELOP A DALLAS COMPREHENSIVE FOOD AND URBAN AGRICULTURE PLAN.

PRIMARY BENEFIT	CO-BENEFITS
 Environmental Quality	 Water Quality Employment Education Public health Resource consumption

The City will comprehensively assess baseline conditions and identify opportunities and strategies to enhance regional food systems. Following the assessment, the City will develop programs and policies to build on the CECAP actions related to food security, food access, and strengthening the local food economy. As part of the plan the City will:

- Perform a comprehensive review of policy and regulatory barriers to growing local food for personal consumption or economic development and plan to remove barriers.

- Evaluate demographic and community specific needs.
- Work with the Food Advisory Council that represents stakeholders from across the food system.
- Identify incentives to support agriculture that provides carbon sequestration benefits.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Policies developed within the plan will focus on improving food access for under-served neighborhoods.

FA4. FACILITATE PARTNERSHIPS BETWEEN SCHOOLS + NONPROFITS TO DEVELOP NEIGHBORHOOD-BASED GROWING INITIATIVES + KITCHEN GARDENS IN NEIGHBORHOODS WITH LOW FOOD ACCESS.

ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

PRIMARY BENEFIT	CO-BENEFITS
 Environmental Justice	 Emissions Reduction Stewardship Inequality Public health Education

Several neighborhood based growing initiatives already collaborate with churches and social services in Dallas County to share the food they grow with communities in need. The City will expand this initiative in neighborhoods with low food access and create a program to match neighborhood-based growing initiatives with schools and churches; recruit potential partners from food insecure neighborhoods, and work with social services to divert an agreed percentage of produce to families in need.

The City can also identify city owned land to for neighborhood urban agriculture projects, edible gardens and fruit trees and provide small grants through programs such as the Dallas Neighborhood Vitality Grant Program for Dallas residents to participate in the initiation and maintenance of community gardens.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The program will be focused on communities with low food access, which in Dallas are primarily low-income communities of color.

IMPROVE FOOD ACCESS IN NEIGHBORHOODS WITH LOW FOOD ACCESS



FA5.

SUPPORT NONPROFITS SOLVING FOOD JUSTICE ISSUES IN DALLAS WITH GRANT WRITING AND DEVELOPING CREATIVE FINANCING OPTIONS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Education



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE

Program

ACTION SOURCE

New Action

The City will provide technical assistance with grant writing, and informational resources on funding opportunities and other creative financing options to nonprofits who are working on initiatives related to food security, child or senior hunger, or other food justice issues.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Programs supporting food justice will specifically benefit vulnerable communities.

FA6.

PARTNER WITH TRANSPORTATION ORGANIZATIONS TO IDENTIFY CREATIVE TRANSPORTATION SOLUTIONS TO ACCESS HEALTHY FOOD RETAILERS IN NEIGHBORHOODS WITH LOW FOOD ACCESS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Public
Health



Cost
Savings

ACTION TYPE

Partnership

ACTION SOURCE

New Action

The City will work with organizations including DART and TNCs to identify creative transportation solutions for communities in neighborhoods with low food access to get to food retailers with healthy food options. This may include on-demand shuttle services to retailers with healthy food options.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The shuttle services will support vulnerable communities to help address their lack of access to healthy food.

IMPROVE FOOD ACCESS IN NEIGHBORHOODS WITH LOW FOOD ACCESS



FA7.

PARTNER WITH SUPERMARKETS, FOOD RETAILERS AND OTHER SUPPORTING ORGANIZATIONS TO BRING MOBILE GROCERY STORES TO NEIGHBORHOODS WITH LOW FOOD ACCESS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Public
Health



Cost
Savings



Adaptation



Inequality

ACTION TYPE

Partnership

ACTION SOURCE

New Action

To overcome the financial barriers that grocery retailers face in setting up new stores in lower income neighborhoods, the City will partner with them to bring mobile stores to communities with low food access. The City will support retailers with suggested locations, routes, and other barriers they may face to initiate this program. Kroger (one of the largest supermarket chains in North Texas) has already implemented a similar program in Louisville, KY and Milwaukee, WI.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The mobile grocery will specifically provide services to vulnerable communities to address their food inequities.

FA8.

SUPPORT THE CREATION OF FOOD RELATED GREEN JOBS IN PRODUCTION, PROCESSING, STORAGE, DISTRIBUTION AND WASTE MANAGEMENT.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions
Reduction



Employment



Education



Resource
consumption



Inequality

ACTION TYPE

Assessment

ACTION SOURCE

New Action

In the first phase, the City will assess the economic impacts of local food related businesses to inform broader economic development strategies. In the second phase, the City will build partnerships to provide workforce training and development and connect trainees with employers. In addition, opportunities for food incubators, or a food hub for the assembly, storage, and distribution of food from local farms and the processing and development of local food products will be considered.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Where possible/appropriate, the workforce training and development will focus on recruiting participants from areas of under-employment.



ACTION TYPE
Plan
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

REDUCE FOOD MILES BY ENCOURAGING LOCAL FOOD PRODUCTION AND CONSUMPTION.

FA9. ESTABLISH A LOCAL FOOD PROCUREMENT PLAN TO ENCOURAGE LOCAL FOOD PURCHASING AT CITY-SPONSORED EVENTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Public
Health



Adaptation

The City will adopt a food procurement policy that emphasizes healthy and local food and would set geographic and nutritional standards for all City sponsored events.

The City can lead, and work with others to influence food procurement to improve community health benefits and strengthen the markets for local producers.

FA10. ENHANCE THE MARKET BY PROVIDING INCENTIVES TO SELL LOCALLY PRODUCED FOOD AT AFFORDABLE PRICES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Employment



Public
Health



Cost
Saving



Inequality

The City will identify opportunities to support the regional food system by incentivizing the production, sale, and consumption of local produce. Strategies may include:

- Identifying regulatory and financial barriers for farmers markets and small pop-up markets, and supporting their expansion across the city.
- Incentivizing the sale of locally produced goods for vulnerable communities by supplementing SNAP programs using federal or philanthropic funding. An example might include matching funds to purchase SNAP-eligible food items in farmers markets. Similar programs have been implemented in Michigan, Washington and Kansas.

- Encouraging large employers to partner with community supported agriculture programs (CSAs) to sign up, coordinate deliveries, and enable employees to receive regular fresh produce. As a pilot, the City can launch an internal 'wellness challenge' with its own employees.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Local produce is often more expensive than large supermarket chains. The programs and subsidies will supplement access to healthy food by working with existing SNAP and WIC programs.



ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

PREPARE THE FOOD SYSTEM TO BE MORE RESILIENT TO EXTREME WEATHER EVENTS

FA11. INCREASE FOOD SECURITY BY SUPPORTING STAKEHOLDERS IN THE FOOD SYSTEMS FOOD SUPPLY CHAIN WITH TOOLS TO PLAN FOR CHANGING WEATHER AND EXTREME EVENTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Adaptation

CO-BENEFITS



Education



Cost saving



Public health

The City will partner with stakeholders engaged in food production and distribution to identify strategies to prepare for disruptions from extreme weather events. In addition, the City will initiate an education program to encourage residents to store necessary food supplies in case of an emergency. On the production side, strategies may include the adoption of revised land management practices.

On the distribution side, the City will partner with food retailers and Texas trade retailers to prepare for disruptions from extreme weather events by having a business continuity plan in place. The City can provide training and sample plans to help stakeholders understand and prepare for climate-related risks.

FA12. IDENTIFY OPPORTUNITIES FOR CONTROLLED-ENVIRONMENT AGRICULTURE TO INCREASE LOCAL FOOD PRODUCTION THAT ARE LESS ENERGY AND WATER INTENSIVE AND PROTECTED FROM CLIMATE EXTREMES.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Education



Employment



Adaptation



Resource
consumption

ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
Ongoing Action

The Food Advisory Council (see action FA2), will launch a second food idea innovation challenge on the topic of controlled environments for urban agriculture, which may include hydroponics, aquaculture, vermiculture etc. and encourage industry and academic partners to participate (The current Food Innovation challenge is based on food inequities). The City will identify funding to convene a civic/food hacking event and a pilot innovative food project.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Once identified, the winning idea can potentially be piloted in communities with low food access.

PREVENT FOOD WASTE THROUGH FOOD DONATIONS, RECOVERY, DIVERSION AND COMPOSTING.



ACTION TYPE
Partnership
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

FA13. COLLABORATE WITH ORGANIZATIONS THAT ARE WORKING TO DIVERT SURPLUS FOOD FROM GROCERY STORES AND MARKETS TO REACH COMMUNITIES IN NEED.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Emissions
Reduction



Public
Health



Inequality



Resource
Consumption

The City will partner with organizations to address regulatory, informational, or other barriers that hinder the allocation and diversion of surplus food from food retailers to communities in need. The City will also assist in providing guidance for large-scale food composting for food that cannot be recovered.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- This action directly benefits vulnerable communities and increases access to food.

FA14. ADOPT A SPECIAL EVENTS ORDINANCE THAT ENCOURAGES PROCUREMENT OF LOCALLY SOURCED FOOD, RECYCLING OF WASTE GENERATED AND COMPOST BINS AT SPECIAL EVENTS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Public health



Stewardship

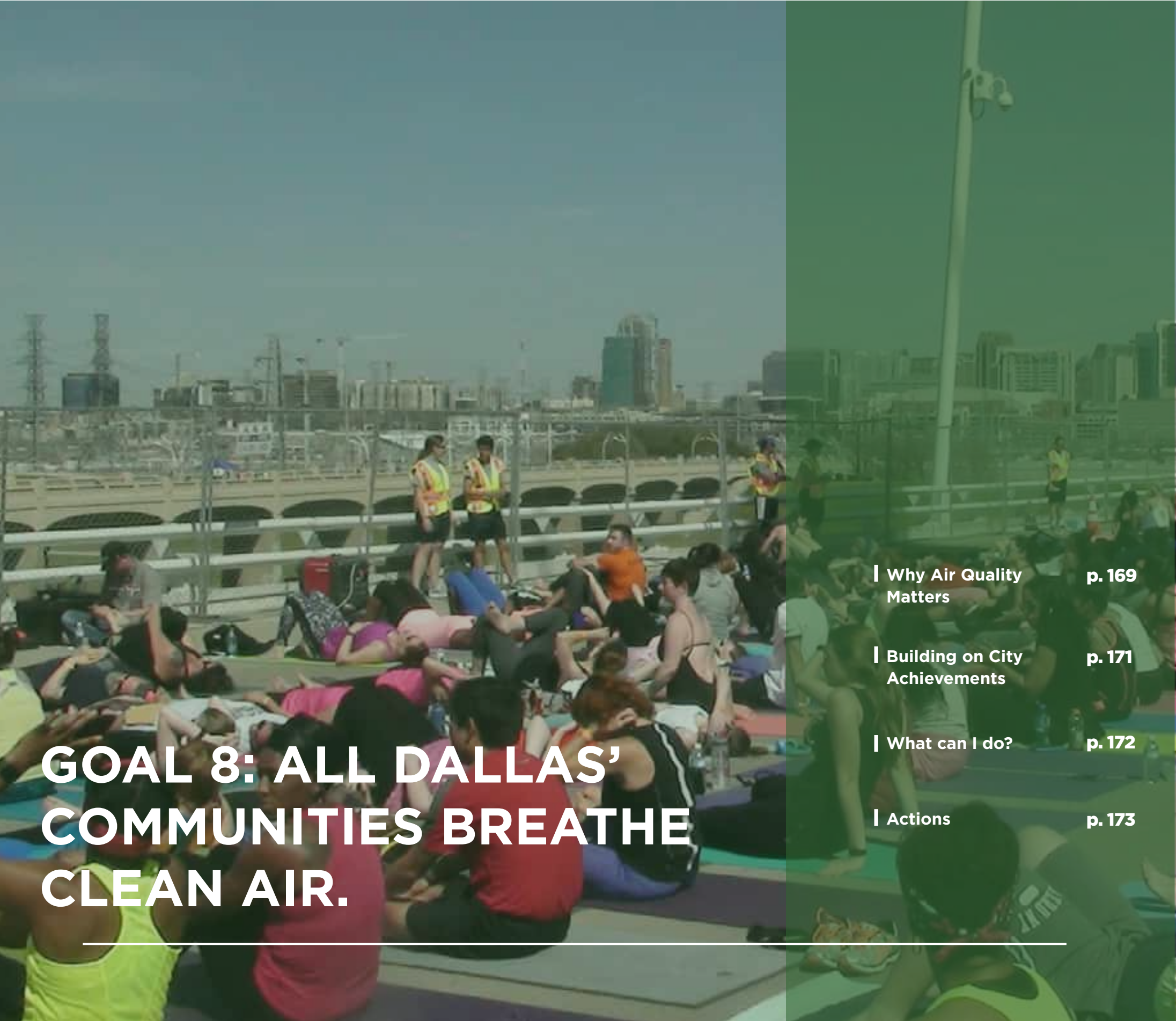


Education

The City will create and adopt an ordinance for special events that requires multiple waste management options including recycling and organics. The City will provide informational resources to help organizers understand the

purpose of the ordinance, and to prepare for their event and will offer a rebate to help event organizers donate surplus food, compost and recycle organics.





GOAL 8: ALL DALLAS' COMMUNITIES BREATHE CLEAN AIR.

Why Air Quality Matters	p. 169
Building on City Achievements	p. 171
What can I do?	p. 172
Actions	p. 173



TARGETS

MEET GROUND LEVEL OZONE ATTAINMENT STANDARD AS DESIGNATED BY NATIONAL AMBIENT AIR QUALITY STANDARDS (NAAQS) BY 2030 AND MAINTAIN STATUS THROUGH 2050.

MAINTAIN ATTAINMENT STATUS AS DESIGNATED BY NAAQS FOR LEAD, CARBON MONOXIDE, NITROGEN DIOXIDE, PARTICULATE MATTER (PM10), PARTICULATE MATTER (PM2.5) AND SULFUR DIOXIDE THROUGH 2050.



WHY AIR QUALITY MATTERS

While air quality in North Texas is generally improving, in north Texas, ten counties including Dallas consistently do not meet the 2008 Federal air quality criteria for ground-level ozone. In addition, nine counties consistently do not meet the updated 2015 federal standard for ground-level ozone.⁴⁰ In 2018, Dallas-Fort Worth was ranked 16th in the American Lung Association's 25 Most Ozone-Polluted Cities. The report estimates 159,749 cases of pediatric asthma, 432,736 cases of adult asthma, 273,449 cases of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) and 4,058 of cardio vascular deceases.⁴¹ In the U.S., black children are twice as likely as white children to have asthma and with greater severity—experiencing higher-than-average rates of hospitalization, emergency room visits and deaths from asthma.⁴² **Figures 34 and 35** illustrate the number of pediatric and adult asthma hospitalizations, which are concentrated in the southern and western parts of the city. Increases in temperature exacerbate poor air quality, putting vulnerable population further at risk.

Improvements to air quality can come from several sectors in the CECAP.

.....

Reducing pollutants from fossil fuel powered vehicles is likely to have the most impact on poor air quality in Dallas.

.....

Actions from the ecosystems sector, related to expanding the urban forest or planting more trees can reduce heat, and absorb pollutants, which will also improve air quality, as can actions that remove natural gas from buildings, and actions that move trips to transit, biking and walking, reduce trips altogether and/or use lower carbon fuels. Specific actions to monitor air quality at the neighborhood level, and that prevent the exposure of communities to sources of air pollution, are included in this sector.

Actions that also improve air quality as a co-benefit are listed on p.173-174 but are described in other sector chapters.

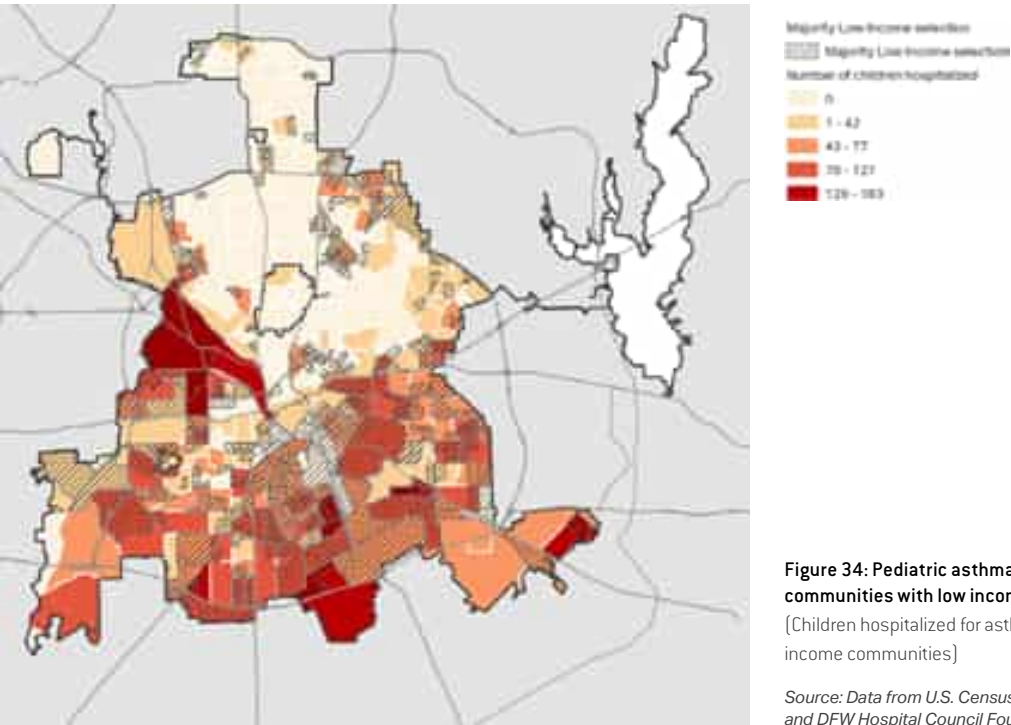


Figure 34: Pediatric asthma in communities with low income
[Children hospitalized for asthma vs low income communities]

Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018 and DFW Hospital Council Foundation

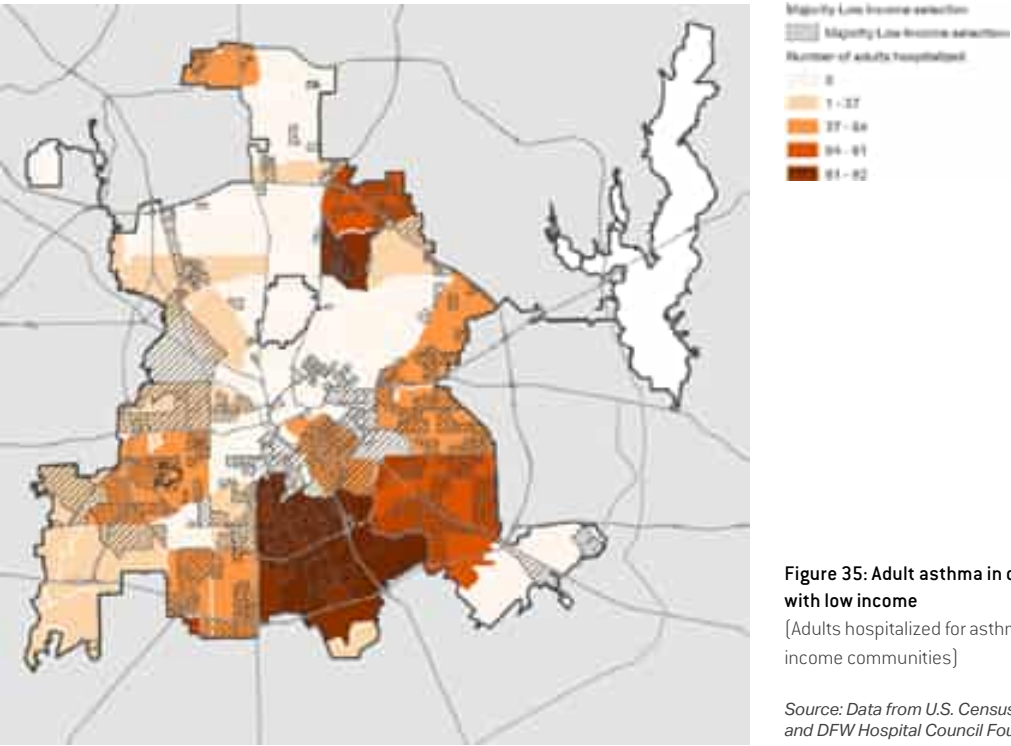


Figure 35: Adult asthma in communities with low income
[Adults hospitalized for asthma vs low income communities]

Source: Data from U.S. Census Bureau 2018 and DFW Hospital Council Foundation



BUILDING ON CITY ACHIEVEMENTS

Breathe Easy Dallas brings together City of Dallas, The Nature Conservancy (TNC), Dallas schools, Texas A&M Transportation Institute (TTI), and public health and other community leaders to improve health, educational, and social outcomes for Dallas children at high risk for asthma-related absenteeism. The project is studying the impact of selected interventions such as reduced vehicle idling, school-based health initiatives, and tree plantings on air quality and asthma-related absenteeism at select schools. In Phase I – nine schools will be monitored to correlate absenteeism with air pollution events and in Phase II –absenteeism will be mitigated using passive and direct intervention.⁴³

Air North Texas is a regional public awareness campaign and partnership that seeks to improve air quality in North Texas. The campaign was formed by NCTCOG with support of a task force made up of government agencies, nonprofit organizations, transportation authorities and others. Ten counties in North Texas fall under nonattainment of emissions standards for the pollutant

ozone, according to the EPA. North Texas must meet ozone emissions standards as set by the EPA or face federal sanctions. The Air North Texas campaign was created to help alleviate the air quality problem in our region. Air North Texas offers all North Texans, including individuals, businesses and governments, resources related to improving air quality. Clean Air Action Day is the campaign's annual event, during which North Texans are asked to do at least one thing to help improve air quality.⁴⁴

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) operates an ambient air monitoring network that routinely collects data from stationary monitors around the Dallas- Fort Worth area. The monitors measure compliance with National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) for six key pollutants including ozone, lead, carbon monoxide, nitrogen dioxide, particulate matter and sulfur dioxide. Currently there are seven monitors within the City of Dallas. TCEQ is considering increasing the number of monitors to collect more localized and accurate data.⁴⁵

WHAT CAN I DO?

Residents

01

Participate in [Clean Air Action Day](#) by doing at least one thing to help improve air quality!

02

[Sign up to receive alerts](#) when air quality is predicted to be in the unhealthy range or higher for sensitive groups in parts of or the entire North Texas nonattainment region.

03

Support the [Engine Off North Texas](#). By being aware and reducing your own idling, you're improving your community's air quality while setting a great example for others.

04

Drive less! Consider [alternate ways](#) of reaching the places around you instead of driving alone. This can include taking the train or bus, biking, walking, carpooling, working from home among other things.

Businesses

01

[Air North Texas](#) is a regional public awareness campaign and partnership that seeks to improve air quality in North Texas. **Become a partner to access to air quality informational materials** and outreach items and be eligible to receive Air North Texas partner awards each fall.

02

Offer rewards and coupons to customers tracking their greener commute trips using the [Try Parking It app](#).

03

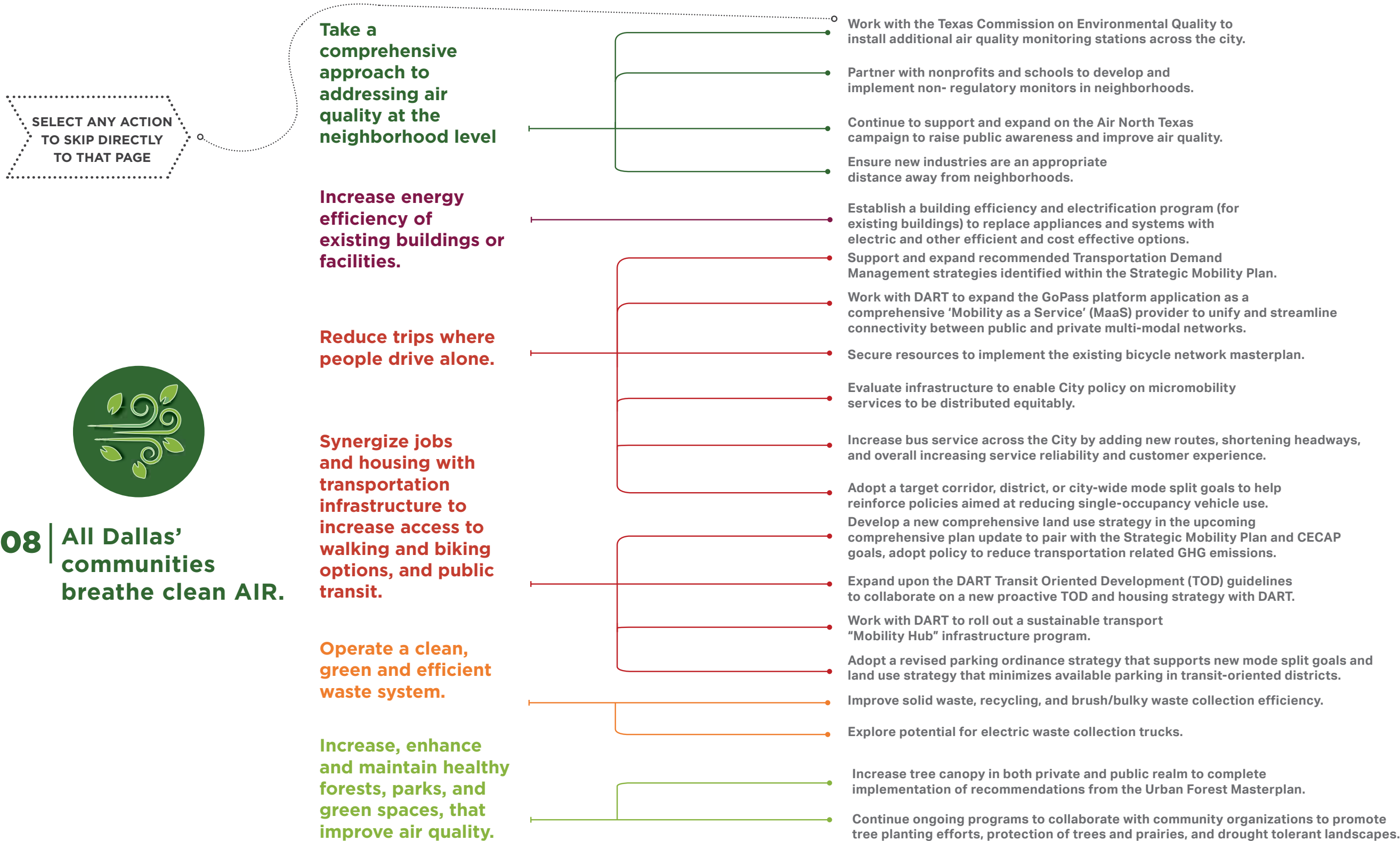
Offer flexible telecommuting options to reduce office space needed and to reduce commute-related transportation emissions. (See action T5.)

SELECT ANY
INITIATIVE TO VISIT
THE WEBSITE

172

Attachment G Item 3

Page 1044



08 | All Dallas' communities breathe clean AIR.

TAKE A COMPREHENSIVE APPROACH TO ADDRESSING AIR QUALITY AT THE NEIGHBORHOOD LEVEL



AQ1. WORK WITH THE TEXAS COMMISSION ON ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY TO INSTALL ADDITIONAL AIR QUALITY MONITORING STATIONS ACROSS THE CITY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City of Dallas operates and maintains a number of regulatory air quality monitoring stations in the region on behalf of, and under grants from the TCEQ. Additional monitoring locations may provide data for critical areas on a closer-to-neighborhood basis. Such neighborhood level data could be utilized to track progress for both non-attainment and air quality improvements. It is anticipated several actions and strategic initiatives in the CECAP, and the upcoming Strategic Mobility

Plan and Comprehensive Planning efforts will help improve air quality. Through this action the City will work with TCEQ to identify locations for installation of new air quality monitoring stations.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Additional air monitoring stations will be prioritized in neighborhoods suffering from the most severe air quality issues and those near major point source emissions.

AQ2. PARTNER WITH NONPROFITS AND SCHOOLS TO DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT NON-REGULATORY MONITORS IN NEIGHBORHOODS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE
Program
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City currently operates a small number of air quality monitoring stations in the region on behalf of the TCEQ. This system does not provide detailed data on the neighborhood scale. The City will help create a network of trained volunteers and supportive partners working together to gather information on local air quality. The City will work with nonprofits and schools to install equipment and monitor air quality at the neighborhood level for non-regulatory purposes, and to raise awareness about public health and air quality. Location selection for these air monitors will be conducted in coordination with stakeholders and concerns will be addressed at that time.

This neighborhood level data could be utilized to track progress for air quality improvements based on strategic initiatives deployed in CECAP, the Strategic Mobility Plan and the updated Comprehensive Land Plan.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Additional air monitoring stations will be prioritized in neighborhoods suffering from the most severe air quality issues and those near major point source emissions.

TAKE A COMPREHENSIVE APPROACH TO ADDRESSING AIR QUALITY AT THE NEIGHBORHOOD LEVEL



AQ3. CONTINUE TO SUPPORT AND EXPAND ON THE AIR NORTH TEXAS CAMPAIGN TO RAISE PUBLIC AWARENESS AND IMPROVE AIR QUALITY.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Quality

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health



Education

ACTION TYPE
Educational
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

Continue to support and expand on the Air North Texas campaign. This is a regional public awareness campaign and partnership that seeks to improve air quality in North Texas to meet ozone emission standards set by the EPA. The campaign was formed by the NCTCOG with support of a task force made up of government agencies, nonprofit organizations, transportation authorities and others.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- The City will tailor the communication to suit the needs of each community.

AQ4. ENSURE NEW INDUSTRIES ARE AN APPROPRIATE DISTANCE AWAY FROM NEIGHBORHOODS.

PRIMARY BENEFIT



Environmental
Justice

CO-BENEFITS



Air
Quality



Public
Health

ACTION TYPE
Mandate
ACTION SOURCE
New Action

The City will review and potentially amend its zoning standards to separate residential and industrial uses. In addition, it may also consider buffer zones between industrial uses and residential or recreational areas to protect residents from harmful emissions and hazardous industrial activities. The City should evaluate the appropriate buffer distances for air quality and industry types.

EQUITY CONSIDERATIONS

- Protecting neighborhoods most impacted by poor air quality due to industrial uses will benefit vulnerable communities, since industry tends to locate on cheaper land, and therefore is adjacent to lower income communities.

Credit: Timothy Hursley



03 IMPLEMENTATION

COMPREHENSIVE ENVIRONMENTAL AND CLIMATE ACTION PLAN

03 IMPLEMENTATION + MONITORING

To encourage buy-in and broad participation of the CECAP from businesses and residents, the plan assumes a phased approach to implementation, starting with educational programs or incentives that inspire action and allow time for the community to prepare for significant changes, before moving towards compulsory mandates or ordinances. Using pilot projects that focus on one geographic area, sector, or community may also be used to facilitate a transition to the implementation of actions.

For example, action 'B10 Prepare for the implementation of a benchmarking and disclosure ordinance for commercial buildings' starts with a voluntary pilot program through a 'Better Buildings Challenge' focused on the Central Business District (See Figure 36 on the following page). Participant and stakeholder feedback will help design the specifics of a citywide benchmarking and disclosure ordinance. This approach also enables the City to identify barriers that would compromise the implementation and provides opportunities to address them. Subsequently, in phase I of this action a commercial benchmarking and disclosure ordinance will be adopted to establish a baseline understanding of buildings' energy efficiency. Phase II will include developing a commercial building energy performance ordinance that requires building owners to measure perform energy audits of their buildings. Phase III could include establishing energy use or emission reduction targets. At each phase, based upon participation levels and community support, the City will evaluate how and when the next phase needs to be adopted.

.....

Given the importance of social equity for the plan, a focus will be placed on roll out of actions in neighborhoods where residents are most in need or will most benefit from the action. Additionally, when actions are initiated with pilot programs, the City will focus on under-invested neighborhoods.

.....

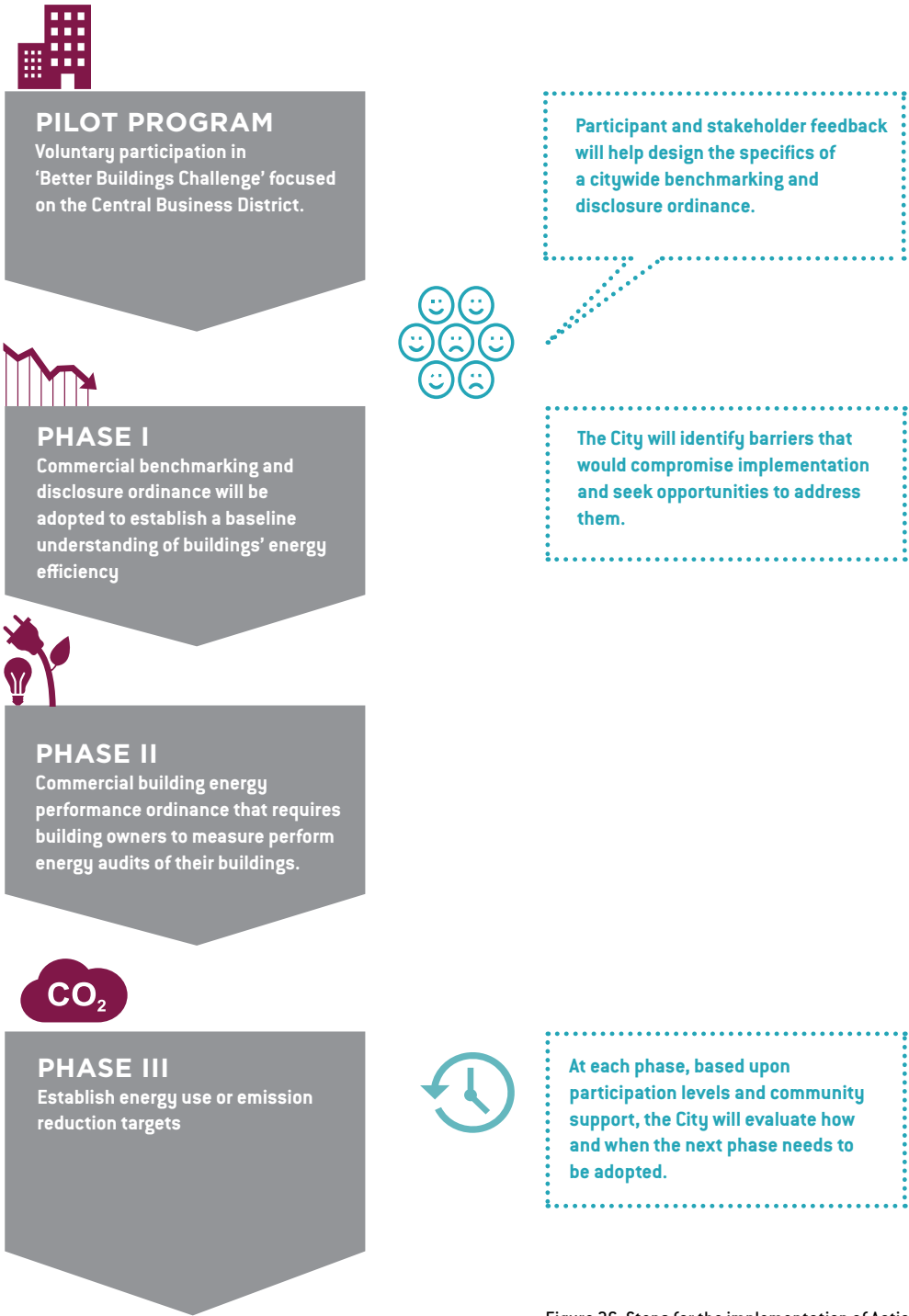


Figure 36: Steps for the implementation of Action B10
Source: AECOM 2020

IMMEDIATE ACTIONS

Table 6 includes actions the City believes form a good initial focus for immediate initiation and implementation. The City of Dallas' Office of Environmental Quality and Sustainability will work with other City departments or appropriate partners to develop immediate implementation plans. 15 actions are already currently underway and will be implemented in the current financial year. Most actions are anticipated to be implemented in the near time frame (0-2 years); all actions will be implemented within the first ten years of the plan with appropriate updates to the plan anticipated at least every three years.

Timeframes are shown in [Appendix B](#) for each action.

#	Action
SW2	Develop a comprehensive green procurement plan for City operations and establish a sustainable procurement policy.
B11	Update the building code to require wiring conduits for solar photovoltaics and electric vehicle charging infrastructure in new construction.
FA2	Create a Food Advisory Council
FA14	Adopt a special events ordinance that encourages procurement of locally sourced food, recycling of waste generated, and compost bins at special events.
AQ1	Work with the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality to install additional air quality monitoring stations across the city.

Table 6: Immediate actions to be completed this calendar year

IMPLEMENTATION PARTNERS

The City will continue to collaborate with various partners to ensure broad participation, support and accountability during implementation.

.....
Based on the interest from stakeholders, the City will form a new Environment and Sustainability Advisory Committee to assist with implementation, across all sectors and concerned departments.
.....

In addition, the City will continue to work with two additional partners:

City of Dallas Environmental & Sustainability Committee

Mayor Johnson established the Environment and Sustainability (ENVS) Committee with the specific tasks of developing and implementing the CECAP. This Committee, comprising City Council Members representing all areas of the city, has been tasked with ensuring staff accountability towards developing and implementing an equitable, common sense, and data-driven plan. It is anticipated that monthly meetings with the ENVS Committee will be helpful to progress implementation.

Regional Climate Coalition

The City is working with other area cities to form a regional climate council to collaborate on actions, share knowledge, and undertake joint initiatives, such as non-regulatory air quality monitoring efforts. Acknowledging that environmental and climate challenges are regional and watershed-wide, this regional climate group can provide opportunities to identify and address shared vulnerabilities and assist smaller municipalities in overcoming barriers to prepare and undertake such an effort. The City will work closely with other cities, and with support from organizations such as NCTCOG, will build upon their efforts in regional transportation and sustainability to undertake a regional GHG inventory, and a follow-on regional comprehensive climate assessment to understand sector-specific vulnerabilities for future scenarios aligned with CECAP interim years (2030, 2040, and 2050). This assessment will incorporate several studies already undertaken, focus on climate resilience and supplement the Resilient Dallas strategy, which focused on social resilience.

CONSUMPTION BASED INVENTORY

As appropriate, the City may complement the conventional GHG inventory with a consumption-based inventory to assess life cycle carbon emissions. A consumption-based inventory provides a more complete assessment of the community's contributions to global emissions and can help to identify additional local actions that would contribute to mitigating global emissions.

Based on the consumption inventory results, the City can develop additional actions that address significant emissions sources not represented in the City's conventional GHG inventory, such as food production and an education campaign targeted at residents, which could include signposting some of the existing on-line carbon calculators available for individuals.



Figure 37: Stakeholder Advisory Committee, April 2019
Source: AECOM 2020

CECAP EVALUATION AND UPDATES

The City will track and publicly report on the implementation of the actions, emission reductions targets, and action metrics on [dallasclimateaction.com](#). Draft metrics (provided in [Appendix B](#)) will be finalized and used to track progress of each action. Monitoring and reporting intervals will be dependent on the data collection process required for each metric. Climate action planning is a cyclical and iterative process (**Figure 38**). The City of Dallas Office of Environmental Quality and Sustainability will work with other City departments to track and publish annual progress reports summarizing CECAP progress. The GHG inventory will be updated every 3 years and will be a key indicator of the success of the Plan. The next inventory will be initiated in January 2021 using data from calendar year 2020, and following in 2024, using 2023 data. These data will be used to review progress towards meeting the GHG emission targets; depending on trend analyses, additional actions may be implemented to improve trending towards the goals of the Paris Agreement.



Figure 38: Climate Action Planning Process
Source: AECOM 2020

The City of Dallas recognizes the importance of the actions included in this CECAP and is dedicated towards timely and effective implementation. We will be relying on the residents, businesses and institutions within the City to work together towards this effort.

FUNDING CONSIDERATIONS FOR IMPLEMENTATION

Fully understanding that there is reticence to take on ambitious plans in a time of market uncertainty, CECAP implementation has been determined to allow a sustainable implementation strategy, utilizing efforts under existing budgets, and maximizing external grants, loans, and partnerships, to the degree practicable to minimize the need for additional general funds. Additionally, there are several tasks within the plan that focus on identifying funding, partnering, and teaming arrangements that can be used by both public and private entities to implement the actions in this plan. Identified funding mechanisms that are anticipated to be available for plan implementation include but are not limited to:

Carryout Bag Fund

The CECAP was developed using funds collected during the short-lived single-use plastic carryout ban. These funds are limited to environmental outreach, administrative costs related to the ban, and environmental actions. There is about \$500k left in this fund that may be helpful towards developing a city-wide energy strategy, implementing the FY 20-21 GHG Inventory, and towards the administrative effort for implementing this plan (outreach, developing online dashboards to track progress, community and council coordination, etc.).

Reforestation Fund

The recently enacted Tree Ordinance includes a penalty for removing healthy native trees, intended as a deterrent to removing trees; however, many simply paid into the fund, resulting in fewer trees, and a healthy, but largely unencumbered fund for tree replacement. These funds are limited to procuring trees for public property only and do not include tree maintenance nor water and irrigation. The

fund has accumulated several million dollars and has had little usage under the original intent. It is anticipated that these funds may be available to use to implement recommendations of the Urban Forest Master Plan.

Green Energy Policy Implementation and Contract

The City's recent green energy policy includes requirements for an Energy Management System to identify City buildings where energy efficiency retrofits may be helpful, and to develop a program for implementation. The subsequent Green Energy contract includes resources to allow investigation of on- and off-site renewable energy generation. It is anticipated that implementing energy efficiency retrofits should allow programmatic savings that may be used to implement energy generation. These measures are anticipated to be implemented in the medium (2- 6 year) timeframe.

VW Settlement Funds

The TCEQ has been charged with distribution of funding from the Volkswagen Emissions Settlement. These funds may be used for equipment conversion from high to lower emission, electric vehicles, and charging equipment. OEQS has been working with the North Central Texas Council of Governments, the Equipment & Fleet Department, the Office of Strategic Partnerships & Public Affairs to apply for funding under this program to support Dallas City fleet conversion, and potential public-facing EV charging infrastructure.

Texas Emissions Reduction Plan (TERP)

The TCEQ also has several grant opportunities for vehicle replacement, EV charging and other emission reduction technologies. The Notice of Funding Availability is generally quarterly. OEQS has been working with the North Central Texas Council of Governments,

the Equipment & Fleet Department, the Office of Strategic Partnerships & Public Affairs to apply for funding under this program to support Dallas City fleet conversion, and potential public-facing EV charging infrastructure.

Existing Partnerships

The City has several ongoing partnerships with great non-governmental organizations such as the Trust for Public Land, The Nature Conservancy, the Communities Foundation of Texas, The Texas Trees Foundation, Earthx and many others, and value these partnerships as an important way of meeting joint public-private goals towards improved quality of life in Dallas. We anticipate continuing our efforts with these organizations.

New Partnerships

We welcome the opportunity to develop new partnerships to implement the actions within this plan and are actively working towards several commercial public-private partnerships relative to the waste and energy sectors. The City of Dallas was recently selected by three international climate partners, C40, Carbon Disclosure Project, and the World Business Council for Sustainable Development (WBCSD), as one of three cities to be part of the first cohort of the City-Business Climate Alliance (CBCA) cities. This Alliance includes receiving direct support to build or develop a local city-business partnership on climate, as well as joining the CBCA Global Network for scaled-up action and advocacy opportunities.

Grants and Loans

Several City programs, including our Air Quality Program are currently funded under grants from the TCEQ, and other state and federal agencies. The Office of Strategic Partnerships and Government Affairs does a great job of researching and actively applying

for grants and loans to support these City programs. Once project specific costs are identified, we anticipate that grants and loans may be explored as funding options for future actions that may require additional funding.

Forest Carbon Sequestration Credits

The City is exploring the potential to establish a City Urban Forest Carbon Sequestration program, similar to programs in Austin and Portland. The program quantifies the amount of carbon sequestered through urban trees. These credits may be used as a potential way to fund CECAP implementation; additionally, Carbon credit programs require measures to maintain, preserve and protect the urban canopy in areas subject to the carbon credit program, and so can serve to help ensure appropriate care of this important natural resource.

Green Bonds

Many communities develop “green bond programs”, similar to current bond programs for facilities and infrastructure to help finance energy-related building efficiency upgrades, and or renewable energy generation.

Federal & State Legislation

Energy efficiency, renewable power generation, storage and distribution, and financial incentives to support communities trying to reduce emissions, and heat island impacts would be an important part of our legislative agenda. Particularly, increasing state renewable incentives to commercial and homeowners would be helpful towards plan implementation.

Environmental Fees

Very last, for obvious equity and other reasons, as necessary, it may be necessary to investigate implementing environmental fees, similar to those levied for stormwater compliance, solid waste management, drainage infrastructure,

and water utilities, with the funding earmarked for implementing measures within the CECAP. This would be well into the plan, after all other viable funding options are exhausted.

It should be noted that there are also several national and international funding opportunities available solely to cities with formally adopted climate plans. Climate planning, particularly plans like the CECAP that encompass the Paris Climate Agreement and the United Nations Sustainability Goals, is also encouraged by monetary organizations such as the Federal Reserve Bank, and Moody’s Bond Rating Service as an indicator of a city that has identified the risks associated with climate change and that is moving proactively to appropriately manage that risk.



REFERENCES

1 U.S. Global Change Research Program. 2018. Impacts, Risks, and Adaptation in the United States: Fourth National Climate Assessment, Volume II. – Chapter 23 – Southern Great Plains.

2 USDN. 2017. Guide to Equitable, community-driven climate preparedness planning. May. p.11, 16.

3 Urban Heat Island Management Study. Texas Trees Foundation. 2017. Urban Heat Island Management Study.

4 Kaplan, R.S. 2019. A brief discussion regarding the impact of climate change on economic conditions in the eleventh district. Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas. June.

5 Fannin, B. 2012. Updated 2011. Texas agricultural drought losses total \$7.62. Agrilife Today, Texas A&M.

6 Risky Business. 2015. Come heat and high water: Climate Risk in the Southern U.S. and Texas. July. p.84.

7 Ip, G. 2020. For the economy, climate risks are no longer theoretical. The Wall Street Journal. January.

8 Kahn, et al. 2019. Long-term macroeconomic effects of climate change: A cross-country analysis.

9 U.S. Global Change Research Program. 2018. Impacts, Risks, and Adaptation in the United States: Fourth National Climate Assessment, Volume II. – Chapter 23 – Southern Great Plains.

10 U.S. Energy Information Administration. 2019. Profile overview.

11 EPA. 2014. eGRID2014v2.

12 City of Dallas. 2012. Green Building Ordinance.

13 City of Dallas. 2018. 2015 Greenhouse Gas Emission Inventory.

14 Dallas County Health and Human Services. 2020. Weatherization.

15 EIA.2009. Household Energy Use in Texas - A closer look at residential energy consumption.

16 EIA. 2009. Household Energy Use in Texas - A closer look at residential energy consumption.

17 EPA. 2020. Green Power Partnership

18 City of Dallas. 2019. Energy Policy, Strategy, and Electricity Procurement.

19 City of Dallas. 2019. Energy Policy, Strategy, and Electricity Procurement.

20 NCTCOG. 2018. Mobility 2045: The Metropolitan Transportation Plan for North Central Texas.

21 DataUSA. 2020. Datausa.io.

22 DataUSA. 2020. Datausa.io.

23 City of Dallas. 2015. Clean Fleet Vehicle Policy. September.

24 DART. 2019. Approval of Amendment to DART’s Fare Structure. December.

25 City of Dallas. 2013. Local Solid Waste Management Plan. February.

26 City of Dallas. 2018. Multifamily Recycling Ordinance. June.

27 City of Dallas. 2013. Local Solid Waste Management Plan. February.

28 City of Dallas. 2015. Clean Fleet Vehicle Policy. September.

29 City of Houston. 2020. Solid Waste Management - Reuse Warehouse.

30 Dallas Water Utility. 2015. 2014 Dallas Long Range Water Supply Plan to 2070 and Beyond.

31 City of Dallas. 2019. City of Dallas. MS4 Stormwater Management Plan.

32 City of Dallas. 2020. City of Dallas – Environmental Education Initiative.

33 City of Dallas. 2016. Water Conservation Five- Year Work Plan. p.6

34 City of Dallas. 2016. Water Conservation Five- Year Work Plan. p.13

35 City of Dallas. 2016. Water Conservation Five- Year Work Plan. p..6

36 The Trust for Public Land. Dallas Park Score.

37 Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. 2012. The Impact of the 2011 drought and beyond.

38 WhyHunger. 2020. What is Community Food Security?

39 U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics. 2020. Measuring Green Jobs.

40 NCTCOG. 2018. Air Quality – Handbook.

41 NCTCOG. 2018. Air Quality – Handbook.

42 Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). 2017. Asthma’s Impact on the Nation in Children’s Health. Beyond ABC’s, Assessing the Well-being of North Texas Children.

43 City of Dallas. 2018. Project Highlight: Breathe Easy Dallas.

44 Air North Texas. 2020. AQ Resources.

45 Texas Commission on Environmental Quality. 2020. Air Monitoring Sites.

MAPS

- City of Dallas, 2015. 100-year floodplain. Data accessed April 1 2020 <https://gis.dallascityhall.com/shapefileDownload.aspx>
- City of Dallas, FHWA, NCTCOG, & University of Texas- Arlington, 2015. Critical roadway segments in the 100-year floodplain. Data accessed April 1 2020 <https://library.ctr.utexas.edu/Presto/content/Detail.aspx?ctlD=UHVibGJiYXRpb25fMTE2MTA=&rlD=Mjk4NTg=&ssid=c2NyZWVuSURfMTQ2MDk=>
- City of Dallas, FHWA, NCTCOG, & University of Texas- Arlington, 2015. Critical railway segments in the 100-year floodplain. Data accessed April 1 2020. <https://library.ctr.utexas.edu/Presto/content/Detail.aspx?ctlD=UHVibGJiYXRpb25fMTE2MTA=&rlD=Mjk4NTg=&ssid=c2NyZWVuSURfMTQ2MDk=>
- City of Dallas Fire Rescue Department & Texas A&M Forest Service, 2016. Wildland Fire Susceptibility Index. Data accessed March 31 2020 https://tfsweb.tamu.edu/uploadedFiles/TFSMain/Preparing_for_Wildfires/Prepare_Your_Home_for_Wildfires/Contact_Us/City%20of%20Dallas%20CWPP_FINAL.pdf
- City of Dallas, 2020. City of Dallas Land use. Data accessed April 1 2020 <https://gis.dallascityhall.com/shapefileDownload.aspx>
- Dallas Central Appraisal District, 2015. Percent of Housing in Poor Condition. Data accessed March 31 2020 <https://dallascityhall.com/departments/pnv/DCH%20Documents/Neighborhood-Plus-June17-small.pdf>
- Dallas Fort Worth Hospital Council Foundation. N.d. Hospital discharges mapped by patient zip code for patients diagnosed with adult asthma or COPD during their hospital visit.
- Dallas Fort Worth Hospital Council Foundation. N.d. Hospital discharges mapped by patient zip code for patients diagnosed with pediatric asthma, diabetes, heart disease, stroke, obesity, depression or anxiety during their hospital visit.
- ESRI, 2012. USA ZIP Code Areas. Data accessed April 1 2020 <https://www.arcgis.com/home/item.html?id=8d2012a2016e484dafaac0451f9aea24>
- Google Project Sunroof, 2020. Citywide Solar Energy Capture Potential. Data accessed April 1 2020 https://www.google.com/get/sunroof/data-explorer/place/ChIJS5dFe_cZTIYRj2dH9qSb7Lk/
- NASA, 2016. Land Surface Temperature Grid.
- Rivera, S. J., 2018. Guiding green stormwater infrastructure planning through socio-ecological vulnerability: An integrated and spatially scalable prioritization framework. Data accessed March 31 2020 <https://www.ideals.illinois.edu/handle/2142/101571>
- Texas Trees Foundation, 2009. Tree Canopy.
- US Census Bureau, 2016. American Community Survey. Data accessed March 31 2020 <https://factfinder.census.gov/>
- USDA, 2015. Census tracts with Low Income And Low Access (1 Mile) to Grocery Stores. Data accessed April 1 2020 <https://www.ers.usda.gov/data-products/food-access-research-atlas/download-the-data/>

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure i: GHG forecast and reduction targets..... xvi

Figure ii: Intersection of mitigation, adaptation and environmental quality..... xix

Figure 1: Equality versus Equity 4

Figure 2: Participation by zip code 6

Figure 3: Participation by zip code..... 6

Figure 4: Share of total insured flood losses outside Texas floodplains12

Figure 5: Elderly14

Figure 8: People of color.....14

Figure 6: Children14

Figure 7: People with low income14

Figure 9: Heat exposure to people with low income15

Figure 10: Heat exposure to people of color15

Figure 11: Flood risk to people with low income16

Figure 12: Flood risk to people of color16

Figure 13: Weather and climate disasters in the United States (CPI adjusted).....18

Figure 14: City of Dallas and wildfire threat.....20

Figure 15: Community emissions by sub-sector22

Figure 16: Straight line trajectory.....24

Figure 17: Intersection of mitigation, adaptation and environmental quality33

Figure 18: Action development process34

Figure 19: Household energy use in Texas45

Figure 20: Percent of housing in poor condition46

Figure 21: Electricity generation by source69

Figure 22: Citywide solar energy capture potential70

Figure 23: Critical roadway segments in the 100-year floodplain86

Figure 24: Critical railway segments in the 100-year floodplain86

Figure 25: Estimated citywide disposal.....108

Figure 26: Types of waste in Dallas' landfills.....108

Figure 27: Landfills and transfer stations relative to low income areas.....108

Figure 28: Flood risk relative to low Income areas.....122

Figure 29: Tree canopy in Dallas138

Figure 30: Heat island in Dallas138

Figure 31: Floor risk index.....139

Figure 32: Green infrastructure opportunities140

Figure 33: Census tracts with low Income and low access (1 Mile) to grocery stores.....154

Figure 34: Pediatric asthma in communities with low income170

Figure 35: Adult asthma in communities with low income.....170

Figure 36: Steps for the implementation of action B10.....179

Figure 37: Stakeholder Advisory Committee, April 2019.....181

Figure 38: Climate Action Planning Process.....183

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: 2015 Community emissions by sector, subsector, and fuel22

Table 2: Targets adopted by peer cities.....24

Table 3: City of Dallas 2030 and 2050 emissions reduction targets24

Table 4: Energy sources for 2015, 2030 and 2050.....27

Table 5: A matrix comparison of CECAP objectives with other City plans.....36

Table 6: Immediate actions to be completed this calendar year..... 180

GLOSSARY

Carbon Neutral - Refers to achieving net zero carbon emissions by either balancing carbon emissions with carbon removal or simply eliminating sources of carbon emissions.

Equity - Equity is about fairness, which is about ensuring that people have access to the same opportunities and have what they need to thrive and succeed.

Equality - Equality is about sameness, meaning that everyone receives the same thing regardless of any other factors.

Fugitive emissions - Unintentional emissions arising from facilities or industry activities. The EPA distinguishes fugitive emissions by separating them from the type of emissions that would usually be vented through a chimney, vent or other opening. Fugitive emissions may also occur as a result of leaks from pressurized equipment.

Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Emissions - Gases that trap heat in the atmosphere.

Scope 1 emissions - GHG emissions from sources located within the city boundary; generally includes in-boundary water and wastewater generation, waste management, transportation, stationary fuel combustion, and agriculture, forestry and other land uses.

Scope 2 emissions - GHG emissions occurring through grid-supplied electricity, heat, steam and/or cooling within the city boundary.

Scope 3 emissions - All other indirect sources of GHG emissions that occur outside the city boundary as a result of activities taking place within the city boundary; generally includes out-of-boundary transportation, water and wastewater generation, power generation and distribution, and other emissions. These are all indirect emissions (not included in scope 2).

Stationary energy - Energy utilized by residential buildings, commercial and institutional buildings and facilities, manufacturing industries and construction, energy industries, agriculture, forestry, and fishing activities, non-specified sources, fugitive emissions from mining, processing, storage, and transportation of coal and fugitive emissions from oil and natural gas systems.

Net Zero - Achieved when the amount of CO₂ emissions released on an annual basis is zero, or negative.

Net Zero energy building - A building with zero net energy consumption, meaning the total amount of energy used by the building on an annual basis is equal to the amount of renewable energy created on the site, or by renewable energy sources offsite.

Non-potable - Non-potable water is water that is not of drinking quality, but may still be used for many other purposes, depending on its quality.

APPENDIX A: LIST OF STAKEHOLDERS

Advocacy and Community

Public Citizen
Dallas Environmental Justice Network
Builders of Hope
Joppa Freedman’s Town Association
West Dallas One
Texas Campaign for the Environment
350 Dallas
Dallas Sierra Club
Faith in Texas
Grow North Texas
Climate Reality Project
Green Careers Dallas

Academia

University of Texas- Arlington
Paul Quinn College
Dallas County Community College District

Business

EarthX
Container Store
Apartment Association of Greater Dallas
Options Real Estate
Lyda Hill Philanthropies
Oncor
Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas
AT&T
Dallas Regional Chamber
Black Chamber of Commerce
Hispanic Chamber of Commerce
American Airlines
Southwest Airlines
Toyota Motors North America
Hunt Consolidated, Inc.
JPMorgan Chase
U.S. Green Building Council Texas

GGO Architects
RE:source
The Real Estate Council
Dallas Builders Association
Atmos Gas

Government

City of Dallas
North Central Texas Council of Governments
Dallas Area Rapid Transit

Public Health

Asthma Chasers
Baylor Scott and White
Parkland Hospital
Texas Trees Foundation
The Nature Conservancy
Trust for Public Land

APPENDIX B: IMPLEMENTATION TABLES

The tables in this appendix identify the draft time horizon for each action. The City has identified the actions for immediate implementation and will then develop a schedule for implementing the other short-term actions.

Horizons considered include – Immediate, Short (1-2 years), Medium (2-6 years). The City will need to evaluate the actions holistically to align with targets, and departmental capacity.

The tables also outline some draft metrics that could be used to track progress. Two kinds of metrics are included: output metrics which are measurable indicators directly related to action implementation, (e.g. miles of bike lanes installed), and outcome metrics which measure the broader impacts that the action will lead to (e.g. increase in bicycle mode share).

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
Goal 1: Dallas' buildings are energy-efficient and climate resilient.				
B1	Demonstrate leadership in developing a carbon neutrality plan for municipal operations.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of energy audits performed on municipal buildings/facilitieskWp of renewable energy systems installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated energy savings (kWh, therms) from implementing audit resultsNon-renewable energy use in municipal buildings
B2	Achieve Level 3+ Airport Carbon Accreditation at Love Field for carbon neutral operations and maintain accreditation for DFW, and pursue for Dallas Executive Airport	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Total Scope 3 emissions estimated (MT CO₂e)# of third-party entities engaged through optimization process to reduce Scope 3 emissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated emissions reductions (MT CO₂e) from third-party sourcesTotal emissions reduced through optimization effortsTotal emissions addressed through offset
B3	Develop clear and comprehensive educational program for building owners and tenants about existing energy efficiency programs.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of residents and businesses engaged by the City through the energy resource center# of participants accessing funding from each source# of low-income participants accessing funding from each source	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated energy savings (kWh, therms) from use of financial incentive programsEnergy use in existing buildings
B4	Implement a citywide building weatherization program through partnership with community organizations.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of residents engaged by the City through weatherization program# of low-income residents engaged by the City through weatherization program	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated energy savings (kWh, therms) from program participationEnergy usage in existing residential buildings
B5	Identify new financing mechanisms to accelerate energy efficiency improvements in existing buildings.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of residents and businesses engaged by the City through the energy resource center# of participants accessing funding from each source# of low-income participants accessing funding from each source	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated energy savings (kWh, therms) from use of financial incentive programsEnergy use in existing buildings
B6	Establish a building efficiency and electrification program (for existing buildings) to replace appliances and systems with electric and other efficient and cost effective options.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of residents and businesses engaged by the City through the energy resource center# of low-income residents and small businesses engaged by the City through the energy resource center	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of electric HVAC systems installed
B7	Increase participation and scope of the Dallas Green Business Certification program.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of certified Green Businesses	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Energy use in existing commercial buildingsEstimated energy savings (kWh, therms) from program certification requirements
B8	Implement a Better Buildings Challenge that expands the 2030 District goals beyond Downtown Dallas.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Building area (sq ft) of participants in Better Buildings Challenge	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated energy savings (kWh, therms) from participants' goalsEnergy use in existing buildings
B9	Establish a point-of-sale/point-of-lease home energy rating and disclosure educational program for single-family buildings.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of homes retrofitted each year# of low-income homes retrofitted each yearCompliance with ordinance	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated home energy savings (kWh, therms) from voluntary improvementsEnergy use in existing buildings
B10	Prepare for the implementation of a benchmarking and disclosure ordinance for commercial buildings.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Total building area (sq ft) covered by the benchmarking program% compliance with the benchmarking program	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Energy use in existing commercial buildings

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
B11	Update the building code to require wiring conduit for solar photovoltaics and electric vehicle charging infrastructure in new construction.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of solar ready homes constructed# of low income solar ready homes constructed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Energy use in residential buildings# of residential solar permits issued
B12	Evaluate and consider a Zero Net Energy (ZNE) code for all new buildings and substantial renovations by 2030.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of Zero Net Energy buildings constructed# of low income Zero Net Energy developments constructedEstimated avoided energy consumption (kWh, therms)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Energy use in buildings
B13	Establish urban greening factor requirements for new developments that quantify how projects contribute to urban greening for reduced stormwater runoff and urban heat island improvements.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of new residential projects developed that achieve urban greening factor requirements# of new low-income residential projects developed that achieve urban greening factor requirements# of new commercial projects developed that achieve urban greening factor requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Urban heat island index# of flooding events in areas of new development
B14	Promote passive building design (e.g., orientation, shading devices) through the City's zoning ordinance and design standards	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of buildings constructed with passive design features# of low-income homes constructed with passive design features	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Energy use in new buildings
B15	Evaluate potential city- owned properties for the creation of 'resilience hubs'.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of resilience hubs constructed# of resilience hubs constructed or renovated in vulnerable communities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Provision of emergency services during storm eventsAccess to safe spaces during storm eventsAccess to safe spaces during storm events for vulnerable communities
B16	Encourage building owners to submeter their buildings to support increased energy conservation.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Quantity of property owners reached	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Quantity of submeters installed (self-reported)Energy use in existing buildings
Goal 2: Dallas generates and uses renewable, reliable and affordable energy.				
E1	Maintain a high degree of reliability in the electric delivery grid through cooperative actions between the City and Oncor.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of tree cuttings to reduce risk to power lines# of facilities with back-up power through storage batteries# of facilities with back-up power through storage batteries in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of customers suffering power outage caused by storm events annually
E2	Evaluate the potential for the City to make investments in energy storage technologies for both resilience and renewable energy development purposes	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Total energy storage capacity# of resilience hubs developed# of resilience hubs developed in vulnerable communities# of projects realized through partnerships# of projects realized through partnerships in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of people served during emergencies
E3	Continue partnership with Oncor and other Public Utility Companies on an intensive education program on renewable energy options	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of people reached through education campaignkWp of renewable energy systems installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh renewable electricity generated# of people signed up to a green electricity program (if available)

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
E4	Invest in programs through local community colleges to train and establish a local workforce that is focused on renewable energy technologies.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of students graduating in sustainable construction ore energy courses	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Increased installation of solar panels and energy conservation measures by local contractors
E5	Build a regional strategic partnership to promote adoption of renewable energy.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appointment of technical advisory committee# of partnershipskWp of renewable energy systems installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh renewable electricity generated
E6	Establish and invest in renewable energy hubs through partnerships with the private sector	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of projects following first demonstration projectkWp of renewable energy systems installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh renewable electricity generated
E7	Extend City efforts to develop more renewable energy projects on City facilities.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWp of renewable energy installed by City	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh renewable electricity generated
E8	Continue to implement Green Energy policy for City facilities.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh of renewable energy installed by City# Partnerships with off-site projects	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh renewable electricity generated
E9	Extend partnership with Oncor, PACE, and other Public Utility Companies to provide further incentives for renewable energy.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of projects approved under the programkWp of renewable energy systems installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kWh renewable electricity generated# of people signed up to a green electricity program (if available)
E10	Advocate for renewable energy policies at the state and federal levels.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Texas Mayors advocate the State Legislature	<ul style="list-style-type: none">State Legislature increases the Texas Renewable Portfolio Standard to 80% zero carbon electricity by 2050.
E11	Educate commercial power users about power savings associated with demand side management.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Commercial properties reached	<ul style="list-style-type: none">kW reduced during summer peak periodFinancial energy savings by participating commercial propertiesFinancial incentives earned by service providers
Goal 3: Dallas’ communities have access to carbon-free, affordable, transportation options.				
T1	Work with City of Dallas, DISD, and DART to transition the bus fleet to a 100% electric by 2040.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% of vehicle fleet/bus fleet that is electrified	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Improvement in local air quality
T2	Work with private and public intrastate transport operators to expand transit services between major super commuting cities.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of super commuting services offered# incentive packages offered	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Super Commuting services annual ridership
T3	Create an incentives/fee program in which shared mobility services (Lyft, Uber, etc.) can increase their fleet size and operating footprint if their fleets are increasingly electrified.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of EV registered in Dallas% of Transportation Network Company trips provided by Electric Vehicles	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Take up of incentive program
T4	Put in place a comprehensive incentives package to help accelerate Electric Vehicle (EV) use	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of EV charging stations# of EV charging stations in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of EV registered in Dallas

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
T5	Support and expand recommended Travel Demand Management strategies identified within the Strategic Mobility Plan.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of companies with enhanced communications around Transportation Demand Management strategies	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Commute Time: Ratio between the average time spent commuting one way to work (in minutes) for Hispanic and White adults aged 25-64Decrease in Single Occupancy Vehicles
T6	Support the development of a platform for a comprehensive 'Mobility as a Service' (MaaS) provider (i.e. Whim, Uber) to unify and streamline connectivity between multi-modal networks, including DART bus and rail service.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Development of a Mobility as a Service (MaaS) system in Dallas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of users on Mobility as a Service (MaaS) systemDecrease in Single Occupancy Vehicles (SOV)Commute Time: Ratio between the average time spent commuting one way to work (in minutes) for Hispanic and White adults aged 25-64
T7	Secure resources to implement the existing bicycle network masterplan.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Individual hired to implement the Bicycle Masterplan (Y/N)# of miles of bike lanes installed% of bicycle facility network completed# of identified projects implemented# of end-of-trip facilities installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Bicycle mode share %# of reported bicycle crashes per total number of bicyclists counted and annual traffic volumes
T8	Evaluate infrastructure to enable City policy on micro mobility services to be distributed equitably	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of micro-mobility assets in underserved neighborhoodsInfrastructure improvement projects in underserved neighborhoods	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Miles traveled by passengers who originate in specific neighborhoodsTrips generated by passengers in specific neighborhoods
T9	Increase bus service across the City by adding new routes, shortening headways, and overall increasing service reliability and customer experience.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Bus system ridershipBus ridership increase for transit dependent communities.Transit Frequency: Ratio between the average number of public transit trips available to majority-Hispanic and majority-Black neighborhoods on Monday between 4:30 a.m. and midnight	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Transit ridership mode splitCommute Time: Ratio between the average time spent commuting one way to work (in minutes) for Hispanic and White adults aged 25-64
T10	Adopt a target corridor, district, or city-wide mode split goals to help reinforce policies aimed at reducing single-occupancy vehicle use	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% carpool, public or active transportation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% Single Occupied Vehicles (SOV) per CorridorAverage Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT) per CapitaModal split percentages
T11	Develop a new comprehensive land use strategy in the upcoming comprehensive plan update to pair with the Strategic Mobility Plan and CECAP goals, adopt policy to reduce transportation related GHG emissions	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comprehensive Plan is adopted	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Transit Oriented Development (TOD), both bus and rail, is more widespread in Dallas.Transit Frequency: Ratio between the average number of public transit trips available to majority-Hispanic and majority-Black neighborhoods on Monday between 4:30 a.m. and midnight
T12	Expand upon the DART Transit Oriented Development guidelines to collaborate on a new proactive TOD and housing strategy with DART	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comprehensive Transit Oriented Development (TOD) and housing strategy adopted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of Transit Oriented Developments (TOD) developed# of mixed income housing units
T13	Work with DART to roll out a sustainable transport 'Mobility Hub' infrastructure program	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of mobility hubs constructed# of mobility hubs constructed in underserved communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% mode splits for transit, bicycling and walking increasing

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
T14	Adopt a revised parking ordinance strategy that supports new mode split goals and land use strategy that minimizes	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Revised parking strategy or ordinance adoptedsqft of permeable parking spaces installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Decrease in number of new parking spaces in the cityIncrease in transit ridership
T15	Implement green infrastructure programs that sets specify design and performance standards that treat the Right of way (ROW) as both a mobility and green infrastructure asset	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Miles of new green mobility infrastructure installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Increase in # of bicycle and pedestrian tripsReduction in # of flooding events
T16	Convert all traffic lights and streetlights to LEDs	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% of streetlights retrofitted% of traffic lights retrofitted	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Estimated energy savings (kWh) from implementationEnergy use in municipal facilities
T17	Work with DART to improve bus station shelter amenities that reduce the impact of weather on rider comfort and usability	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Miles of roadway improved# of trees in planted in right-of-way# shelters modified	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of transit riders (tickets/passes sold)
T18	Develop and implement the Climate Change and Extreme Weather Vulnerability and Risk Assessment for Transportation Infrastructure.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Assessment of follow up actions has been completed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in exposure of assets to climate stressors
T19	Encourage businesses, commercial entities and institutions to electrify fleet, including, but not limited to local and regional delivery trucks and other heavier vehicles	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Quantity of local business reachedQuantity of outreach events	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Quantity of EVs purchased
Goal 4: Dallas is a zero-waste community.				
SW1	Actively promote source reduction, recycling and composting to the Dallas community.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of information campaigns# of people reached through campaigns (media impressions, bill inserts circulated, ad campaigns initiated etc.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tons of waste generated per capitaTons recycled% of contamination in recycled materials taken to material recovery facilities# of new recycling markets attracted to the cityEmployment in the recycling industry in Dallas
SW2	Develop a comprehensive green procurement plan for City operations and establish a sustainable procurement policy.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Procurement plan and policy adopted	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Increase in green business certificationsAll City departments follow requirements
SW3	Improve solid waste, recycling, and brush/bulky waste collection efficiency.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of miles driven by SAN collection vehiclesTonnes of brush/bulky waste collected# of trips reduced in low income communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduced greenhouse gas emissions, miles, and gas consumption
SW4	Explore potential for electric waste collection trucks.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of vehicles operating using Compressed Natural Gas or electricity as fuel	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduced greenhouse gas emissions due to reduced diesel fuel reliance

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
SW5	Update and implement a Zero Waste Management Plan.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Adoption of the Plan by City CouncilPeriodic technical assessments of alternatives for waste management	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduced quantities of waste landfilledIncreased recycling and organics diversion.Reduced greenhouse gas through reductions in landfill quantitiesTons of waste processed in energy recovery facilities
SW6	Expand efforts to reduce illegal dumping by implementing recommendations identified in the Litter and Illegal Dumping Assessment Study (2018).	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Decrease in # of illegal dump sitesDecrease in # of sites reportedDecrease in # of sites reported in vulnerable communitiesTonnes of waste collected	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Elimination of illegal dump sites
SW7	Encourage the development of material markets – focusing on creating new economic opportunities.	Medium		<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of new recycling markets attracted to the cityIncrease in recycling ratesEmployment in the recycling industry in DallasGreenhouse Gas emission reductions brought about through increased recycling and reduced waste disposalTons of material kept out of the landfill
SW8	Continue to capture gas and expand capacity from landfill for reuse and evaluate for City operations.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Landfill gas capturedLandfill gas sold	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Greenhouse gas emission reductions
SW9	Adopt an ordinance to implement a city-wide organics management program.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tons of compost produced	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tons of materials not landfilledGreenhouse gas emission reductions
Goal 5: Dallas protects its water resources and its communities from flooding and drought.				
WR1	Continue investment in public awareness campaigns to increase knowledge of the value of water and importance of conservation.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Dollars invested in partnership communication campaigns# of enhanced communication campaigns	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in gallons consumed daily per capitaWater bill savings reported by large consumers
WR2	Continue investment in leak detection and expand programs to reduce overall water loss through the conveyance systems.	Medium		<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in the measurable water loss across the entire system annually.Reduction in Water demand due to water loss reduction in customer cities
WR3	Evaluate potential opportunities and financial feasibility for reusing water for non-drinking purposes	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of feasibility studies completed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of locations using water effluent for irrigationReduction in potable water used in non-potable applications
WR4	Encourage businesses and residents to plant drought-tolerant and native vegetation or xeriscape to reduce irrigation water use	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Amount of financial assistance providedAmount of financial assistance provided in low income communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of properties that shift from green lawns to native drought-tolerant landscape

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
WR5	Continue to monitor and protect water quality and implement improvement projects in of the watershed	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in average instances in large-scale eutrophication	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Improved operations at Dallas Water Utilities Water Treatment Plants due to improved quality of source water being treatedIncrease in recreational usage of water bodies due to improve water quality conditions.
WR6	Continue to protect and monitor water quality by tracking emerging contaminants that may impact public health.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in the concentrations of emerging contaminants	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Achieve regulatory compliance
WR7	Use FEMA Community Rating System to educate and protect communities from flooding.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Community Rating System class designation# of structures in low vulnerable communities protected	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Improve drainage infrastructure within flood prone areas
WR8	Complete the implementation of major planned and ongoing drainage infrastructure projects to improve community resilience to flooding.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Completion of projects within schedule and budget	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in flood severity and occurrence in flood prone areas
WR9	Initiate a comprehensive Storm Drainage System assessment and planning process	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Necessary long term 10-year capital improvements list of projects prioritized based on importance	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in flood severity and occurrence in flood prone areas
WR10	Evaluate policies affecting drainage and erosion to ensure sustainable development and mitigate adverse impacts	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of policies identified# of structures protected from localized flood	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Improvement in water quality
WR11	Continue implementation of the 'Drought Contingency Plan.'	Medium		<ul style="list-style-type: none">Less severe water use restrictions during drought conditions
WR12	Continue contingency planning to protect and maintain service of key water infrastructure facilities from extreme weather events.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of upgrades completed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Prevent disruption of service to customersZero unplanned shutdown/interruption of service due to extreme weather events for water, wastewater and storm facilities
WR13	Evaluate new technologies to lower nutrient releases into the Trinity Watershed from wastewater treatment plants and incorporate as appropriate	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of new technologies evaluated	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Recoup cost and generate incomeReduce the overall operating costReduce biosolid volume disposal at both plantsImprove wastewater effluent quality at both plants
WR14	Evaluate new or improved operational strategies and technologies to optimize the use of chemicals and reduce energy usage at water and wastewater treatment facilities.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduce use of chemicals and energy	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Lower greenhouse gas foot printReduce overall Operation & Management (O&M) cost due to optimization

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
WR15	Continue investment in sewer collection system to reduce Inflow/ Infiltration (I/I) to improve water quality and reduce energy usage.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduce inflow/infiltration (I/I) peak factors during wet weatherReduce number of wet weather Sanitary Sewer Overflows (SSOs).	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Improve Compliance with TCEQ regarding Sanitary Sewer Overflow (SSOs)Reduce overall cost of operating wastewater treatment plants by reducing the volume of wastewater flow during wet weather events
Goal 6: Dallas protects and enhances its ecosystems and green spaces that in turn improve public health.				
EG1	Increase and improve access to green spaces particularly within vulnerable communities to reduce impact of urban heat island, localized flooding and improve public health.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of new parks# of pocket parks#/ area of green roofs, green walls, etc.Access to Parks: Ratio between the average number of parks in majority-Black and racially diverse neighborhoods.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in urban heat islandIncrease in number of people within ½ mile walk of a parkIncrease in number of people from vulnerable communities within ¼ mile walk of a park
EG2	Assess opportunities for blue-green infrastructure in the public realm to reduce flood risk.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of green infrastructure projects identified.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Reduction in urban heat islandIncrease in number of people within ½ mile walk of a park
EG3	Increase tree canopy in both private and public realm to complete implementation of recommendations from the Urban Forest Masterplan	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of tree saplings given away# of trees planted# of trees planted in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% increase of canopy coverReduction in heat island effect% canopy increase in vulnerable communitiesCarbon sequestrated as a result of tree planting
EG4	Continue ongoing programs to collaborate with community organizations to promote tree planting efforts, protection of trees and prairies, and drought tolerant landscapes	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of tree saplings given away# of trees planted# of trees protectedIncrease in prairie lands# of saplings given away, trees planted and protected in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% increase of canopy coverCarbon sequestrated as a result of tree plantingReduction in heat island effectReduction in heat island effect in vulnerable communitiesa
EG5	Update City Park operations and maintenance procedures to include comprehensive ecofriendly and best management practices sustainable practices.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Updated procedures# of people trained on the new procedures	
EG6	Partner with local universities, schools and NGOs and launch projects for community members to help inventory urban trees	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of trees recorded# of participants	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Updated and complete tree inventory
EG7	Develop a City Forest Carbon Credits program to quantify and monetize sequestered carbon in urban trees	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of credits sold	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Increase in canopy cover

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
EG8	Improve the quality of urban ecosystems in Dallas through the sustainable appropriate design, creation and planting of urban habitats.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of pollinator gardens# of bee box/hives	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Wildlife diversity- increase in species count
EG9	Support public and private partnerships using nature-based solutions to address public health challenges.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of grants applied for# of partnerships# of partnerships in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of successful grant applications
Goal 7: All Dallas' communities have access to healthy, local, sustainably grown food.				
FA1	Increase access to information on sustainable agriculture, best practices and the benefits of healthy and local foods.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># social media shares# events attendedIncrease in access to information about local and sustainable food	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tons local food produced# urban farms/community gardensParticipation rate of local restaurants holding 'Meatfree Mondays'
FA2	Create a Food Policy Council	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Food Policy Council is formed and convenes to create a shared mission and objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of activities carried out by the Food Policy Council
FA3	Develop a Dallas comprehensive food and urban agriculture plan.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Comprehensive Food and Urban Agriculture Plan is aligned with goals and targets from CECAP and developed by a diverse group of stakeholders.# of partnerships formed	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Lbs. of local food produced
FA4	Facilitate partnerships between schools and nonprofits to develop neighborhood-based growing initiatives and kitchen gardens in neighborhoods with low food access.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of new urban gardens through programAcres of neighborhood urban agriculture projects# of new urban gardens through program in vulnerable communitiesAcres of neighborhood urban agriculture projects in vulnerable communities	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Lbs of food produced% of locally produced food out of total sold
FA5	Support nonprofits solving food justice issues in Dallas with grant writing and developing creative financing options.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of grants applied for	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of Households within 1/2 mile walk or 10 minute drive to a healthy food retailer.# of successful grant applications
FA6	Partner with transportation organizations to identify creative transportation solutions to access healthy food retailers for low income residents in in neighborhoods with low food access.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of on-demand DART trips provided	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of Households within 1/2 mile walk or 10 minute drive to a healthy food retailer.
FA7	Partner with supermarkets, food retailers and other supporting organizations to bring mobile grocery stores to neighborhoods with low food access.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of neighborhoods served with a regular mobile grocery store	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of purchases made at the mobile grocery stores
FA8	Support the creation of food related green jobs in production, processing, storage, distribution and waste management.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of participants who complete workforce training	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of green jobs

#	Action	Horizon	Potential Output Metrics	Potential Outcome Metrics
FA9	Establish a local food procurement plan to encourage local food purchasing at City-sponsored events	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">\$ spent by public agencies on local foods	<ul style="list-style-type: none">% of locally produced food out of total purchased at City events
FA10	Enhance the market by providing incentives to sell locally produced food at affordable prices.	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># large employers signing up to support Community Supported Agriculture (CSA) schemes for their employees	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Share of locally produced and consumed food
FA11	Increase food security by supporting stakeholders in the food systems food supply chain with tools to plan for changing weather and extreme events.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of retailer consultations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of food retailers with continuity plans in place
FA12	Identify opportunities for controlled-environment agriculture to increase local food production that is less energy and water intensive and protected from climate extremes	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"># of retailer consultations	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tons locally produced food
FA13	Collaborate with organizations who are working to divert surplus food from grocery stores and markets to reach communities in need	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Lbs. of food donated	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tonnes of rganic waste diverted from landfill
FA14	Adopt a special events ordinance that encourages procurement of locally sourced food, recycling of waste generated and compost bins at special events	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Ordinance adopted	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Tonnes of organic waste diverted from landfill
Goal 8: All Dallas' communities breathe clean air.				
AQ1	Work with the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality to install additional air quality monitoring stations across the city.	Immediate	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Number of air quality monitors deployed city-wideMean average exposure to PM2.5 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Mean average exposure to NO2 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Mean average exposure to SO2 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Ground Level Ozone	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Detailed data regarding air quality at the neighborhood level
AQ2	Partner with nonprofits and schools to develop and implement non-regulatory monitors in neighborhoods.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Number of air quality monitors deployed city-wide in vulnerable communitiesMean average exposure to PM2.5 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Mean average exposure to NO2 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Mean average exposure to SO2 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Ground Level Ozone	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Detailed data regarding air quality at the neighborhood level
AQ3	Continue to support and expand on the Air North Texas campaign to raise public awareness and improve air quality.	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Ground Level OzoneMean average exposure to PM2.5 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Mean average exposure to NO2 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)Mean average exposure to SO2 concentrations (milligrams per cubic meter)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Ozone attainment statusNAAQS attainment status for prirority pollutants
AQ4	Ensure new industries are an appropriate distance away from neighborhoods	Short	<ul style="list-style-type: none">New buffer zones identified# Residential properties within x miles of industrial land uses (number to be determined during implementation planning)# vulnerable communities within x miles of industrial land uses (number to be determined during implementation planning)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Buffer zones are enforcedDetailed data regarding air quality at the neighborhood level

APPENDIX C: DALLAS' GREENHOUSE GAS EMISSIONS

This appendix provides additional detail to Section Greenhouse gas emissions and targets, and is organized into four sections:

1. **Base Year Inventory** – describes the sources of greenhouse gas emissions within the city and the relative contribution of various subsectors to the city's emissions in 2015.
2. **Forecasts** – describes how these emissions could change if no further action is taken and estimates annual emissions by subsector for 2030 and 2050 based on various growth factors (population, employment, and vehicle miles traveled).
3. **GHG Reduction Targets** - describes the City's emissions reduction targets and how they were developed.
4. **GHG Reductions** - based on actions in the plan, and a scenario that assumes mandates and higher participation rates.

BASE YEAR INVENTORY

The 2015 inventory was prepared according to the Global Protocol for Community Scale GHG Inventories (GPC), an internationally accepted protocol developed by the C40 Cities Climate Leadership Group (C40), the World Bank, ICLEI-Local Governments for Sustainability (ICLEI), and World Resources Institute (WRI). The inventory was prepared using a calculation-based methodology, which estimates emissions using a combination of activity data (measurements of energy use or other GHG-generating processes, such as fuel consumption by fuel type or vehicle miles traveled) and emissions factors (emissions per unit of activity data, such as emissions per kilowatt of electricity, or per mile driven). The results are expressed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (MT CO₂e), which allows emissions of different greenhouse gases to be compared as a single unit.

EMISSIONS BY SECTOR

Dallas' 2015 emissions inventory totals 19,529,600 MT CO₂e/year, which is approximately 15 MT CO₂e per person per year. Stationary energy is the largest contributor of GHG emissions in the city (64%), with transportation contributing most of the remainder (35%). Stationary energy sources refer to electricity and other combustible fuels utilized in buildings and the GHG emissions that are contributed through these (also see Glossary). The transportation and energy sectors account for approximately 99% of total emissions, meaning that local emissions reduction efforts will need to focus on these two sectors. The waste sector (including wastewater) is responsible for the remaining <1% of emissions.

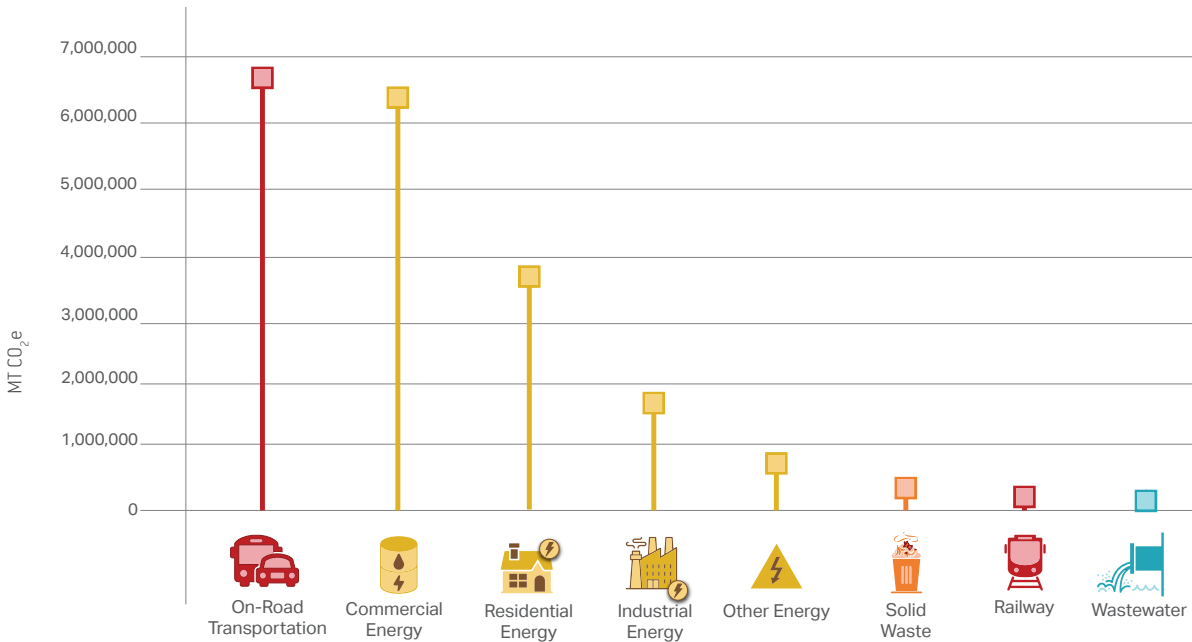


Figure A: 2015 Community Emissions by Subsector
Source: Data from 2015 GHG Inventory, AECOM 2020

Figure A, illustrates emissions by subsector and fuel type. As shown, the highest emitting subsectors are on-road transportation (35%), commercial energy use (33%), and residential energy use (20%). The four yellow bars represent stationary energy subsectors, red bars show transportation subsectors, and the orange and blue bars show waste subsectors (including wastewater).

Stationary Energy (Energy Use in Buildings)

Most emissions in the stationary energy sector come from commercial building energy (54%), followed by residential building energy (32%), and industrial energy (14%). Other sources include fugitive emissions from natural gas transmission and non-specified sources, make up the remaining 4%. Emissions from electricity consumption are the primary source of emissions in the commercial, residential, and industrial subsectors.

In fact, electricity consumption contributed 77% of total emissions in the stationary energy sector, compared to 23% from on-site combustion of fuels and fugitive emissions from natural gas distribution. This is due to a combination of relatively inexpensive electricity in the city, (which can minimize the need for energy efficiency improvements) and a relatively high level of carbon intensity in the electricity that is consumed.

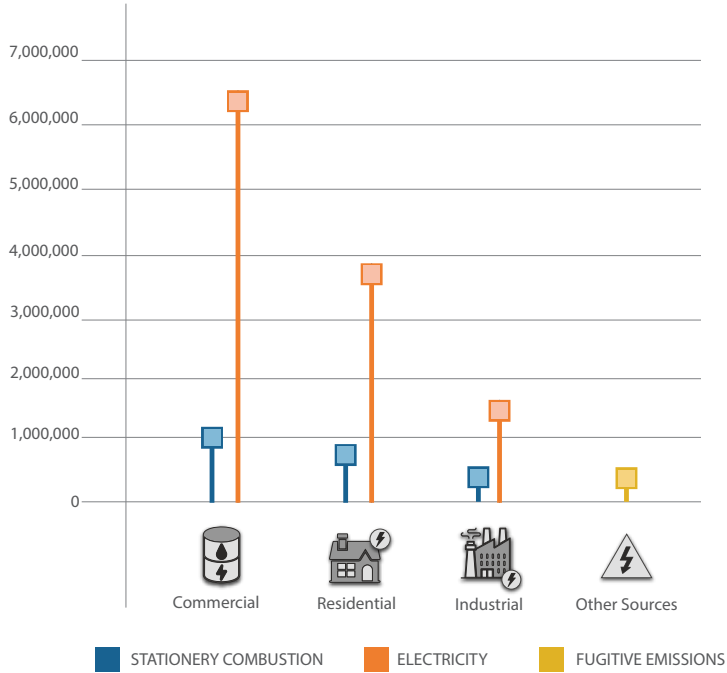


Figure B: Stationery Emissions by subsector and fuel type
Source: Data from 2015 GHG Inventory, AECOM 2020

Figure B shows this breakdown for stationary energy sources and fuel types.

Transportation

Within the transportation sector, on-road vehicles are the greatest source of emissions (99%). Railways contribute the remaining <1%. On-road vehicles are the highest emitting subsector across all sectors, contributing 35% of the community's total emissions. This indicates that increasing the amount of non-automotive travel in Dallas, improving the fuel economy of vehicles in Dallas, and switching to non-fossil fuel vehicles could lead to substantial reduction in communitywide emissions.

Waste

Emissions from the waste sector make up a relatively small amount of total emissions (<1%). However, from a broader environmental sustainability perspective, waste-based emissions are still an important area for local action. Within the waste sector, 99.9% of emissions come from solid waste, while the remainder are associated with wastewater treatment. Reducing the amount of waste sent to landfills can provide a variety of environmental benefits, including GHG emissions reductions.

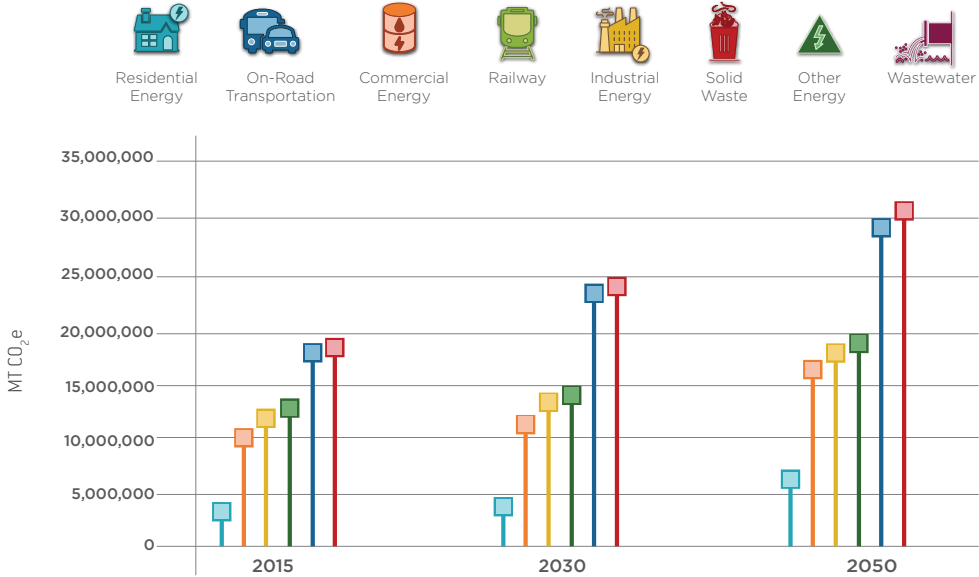
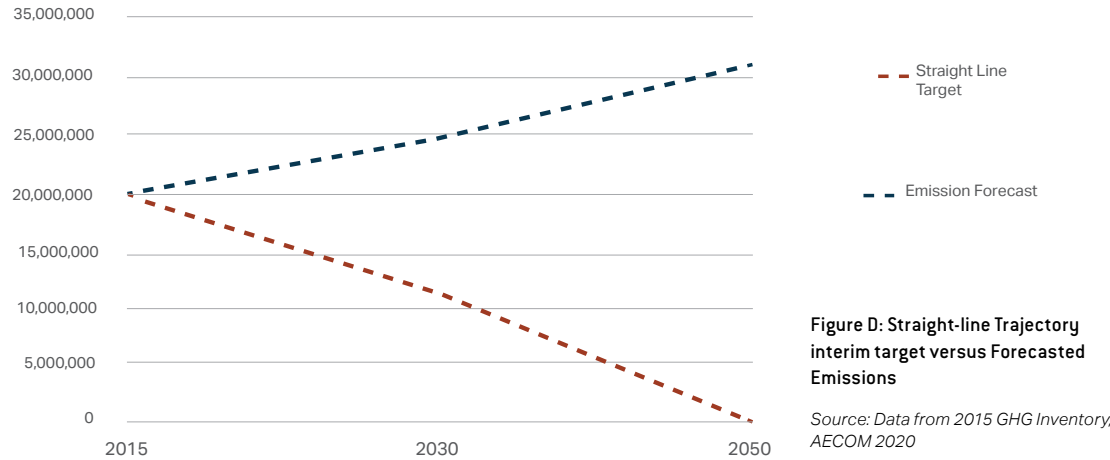


Figure C: Emissions Forecasts by Subsector

FORECASTS

The City used 2015 as the base year and its 2015 greenhouse gas inventory results as the basis to develop communitywide emissions forecasts for the plan's 2030 and 2050 horizon years to help understand how emissions could grow into the future without further intervention. This type of emissions forecast is sometimes called a "business-as-usual" forecast because it assumes no additional GHG reduction actions would be implemented beyond those already in place in the base year. Emissions were forecasted by subsector based on projected population growth, employment growth, and/or on-road travel forecasts from the North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) regional travel demand model. The emissions forecasts provide insight regarding the scale and source of local reductions necessary to achieve the City's GHG targets. They represent a best estimate at the time of CECAP preparation for the City's future emissions levels. However, no forecasting exercise is ever perfect, so climate

action planning should always be an iterative process to continually update projections and compare against local GHG reduction progress. Figure C illustrates Dallas' communitywide emissions by subsector in 2015 with forecasts for 2030 and 2050. Emissions are forecast to increase by 11,340,500 MT CO₂e/year between 2015 and 2050, which represents a 58% increase. This indicates that without further action, the city will see strong future emissions growth and continue to contribute to the effects of global climate change. While all sectors are projected to increase in total emissions, the percent of total emissions from stationary energy is projected to decrease from 64% in 2015 to 60% in 2050. During this period, the percent of total emissions from on-road transportation is projected to increase from 35% in 2015 to 39% in 2050. This indicates that regional travel demand is projected to increase at a faster rate than the city's population and employment growth.



GHG REDUCTION TARGETS

This subsection describes the City of Dallas greenhouse gas emissions targets and how they were chosen. Emission reduction targets are a critical component of climate change mitigation planning—they demonstrate the City’s commitment to global efforts on climate change and provide a goal post against which to evaluate the cumulative progress of the City’s GHG reduction actions over time.

2050 CARBON NEUTRALITY TARGET

The City is committed to meeting the international emission reduction targets set by the Paris Agreement in 2016 and the goal to keep warming temperatures at or below 1.5 degrees Celsius. In 2017, Mayor Rawlings signed the Mayors National Climate Agreement in support of the Paris Agreement. Upon election in June 2019, Mayor Johnson reaffirmed the City of Dallas’ commitment to this agreement. The City of Dallas is fully committed to protecting the community from the impacts of climate change and taking measures to reduce its GHG emissions.

To position the Dallas CECAP as a climate action plan that meets the ambitious objectives of the Paris Agreement, and with other cities around the

world committed to bold action on climate change, the City of Dallas has adopted a target of carbon neutrality by 2050. Carbon neutrality refers to achieving net zero GHG emissions, through reducing emissions as much as possible and then balancing remaining emissions with carbon removal or carbon offset programs. The actions described in this plan are measurable, common sense solutions intended to move Dallas forward towards achieving this goal.

2030 INTERIM TARGET

Achieving the City’s goal of carbon neutrality will require bold action, beginning now. Since the 2050 target year is still decades away, it is important to set interim targets to ensure the City is on a path to achieving its long-term goal. In evaluating interim targets for 2030, the City compared its emissions forecasts against different target options to understand the scale of reductions needed from the CECAP actions, and then selected an interim target that balances the City’s ambition with the realities of Dallas’ relatively high level of emissions in its base year.

A common approach used by cities is to set interim targets based on a straight-line trajectory from their base year to their long-term goal. **Figure D** shows this trajectory from the 2015 emissions base year to carbon neutrality by 2050. In Dallas, this would translate to a 43% reduction in total emissions below 2015 levels by 2030.

GHG REDUCTION ESTIMATE SCENARIOS

The following pages present the two GHG reduction scenarios analyzed for the CECAP. The left page in each scenario includes a figure illustrating the city’s emissions forecasts, target, and impact from action implementation, as well as a summary of progress toward the 2030 and 2050 targets. The right page shows how the CECAP’s actions are organized into GHG reduction strategies and notes the underlying assumptions for each strategy. The figures and lists of actions use colors to identify which GHG emissions sector is reduced through each action as indicated by the legend.

Scenario 1: GHG reductions based on CECAP actions

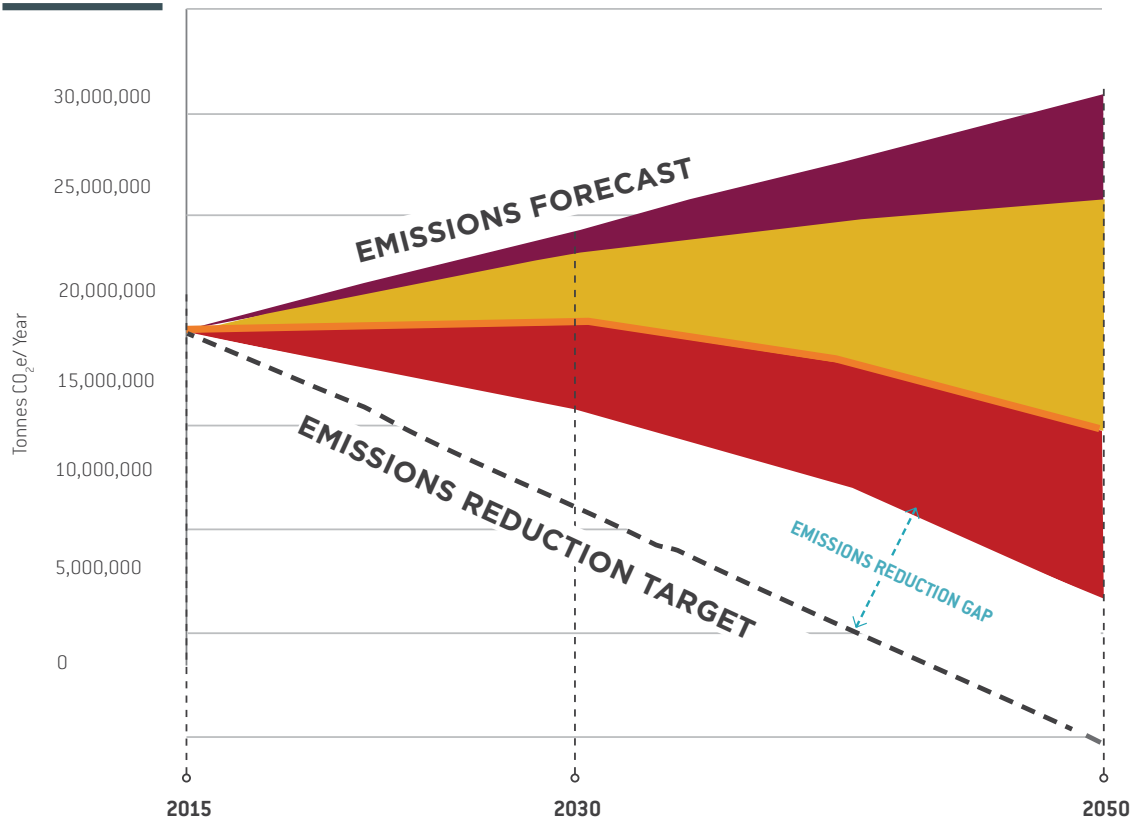
The first scenario represents implementation of the CECAP actions as currently written. This scenario would achieve 25% reductions below 2015 levels in 2030 and 66% below 2015 levels in 2050. As shown in the figure, the greatest reductions are associated with increased renewable electricity. This is a combination of the changes estimated to occur in the ERCOT grid, installation of rooftop solar photovoltaic systems, and a portion of residents and businesses voluntarily choosing electricity providers that offer 100% renewable energy options. The second greatest source of reductions are from transportation actions that would reduce total vehicle trips in the community and a gradual shift toward electric vehicles based on industry forecasts. Building energy actions that increase energy efficiency provide additional reductions and increase through 2050 with an assumption that all new construction is designed to be zero net energy beginning in 2030. Waste actions provide minimal GHG reductions due to that sector’s relatively minor contribution to Dallas’ total emissions inventory. However, waste actions will be critical to

achieving carbon neutrality and provide other important co-benefits described in the plan.

Scenario 2: GHG reductions based on increased participation

The second scenario is more optimistic based on increased action implementation in certain areas, including through use of some regulatory mandates. This scenario would achieve 30% reductions below 2015 levels in 2030 and 71% below 2015 levels in 2050. The changes in the second scenario are highlighted through the list of GHG reduction strategies and implementation assumptions. This scenario would increase reductions in the building energy sector with requirements for residential and commercial building energy efficiency improvements beginning in 2030. It also includes an aggressive transportation demand management program to increase work-from-home participation for jobs that can be performed remotely. This would help to reduce total vehicle trips in the city. The remaining reduction gap in this optimistic scenario primarily represents a need to further increase use of renewable electricity and expand electrification of vehicles and buildings.

GHG REDUCTION ESTIMATE FOR MITIGATION ACTIONS



PROJECTED GHG REDUCTION	25% BELOW 2015	66% BELOW 2015
TARGET GHG REDUCTION	43% BELOW 2015	100% BELOW 2015

LEGEND



Actions that result in improved energy efficiency or fuel switching from natural gas to electricity.



Actions that support waste diversion and treatment changes.



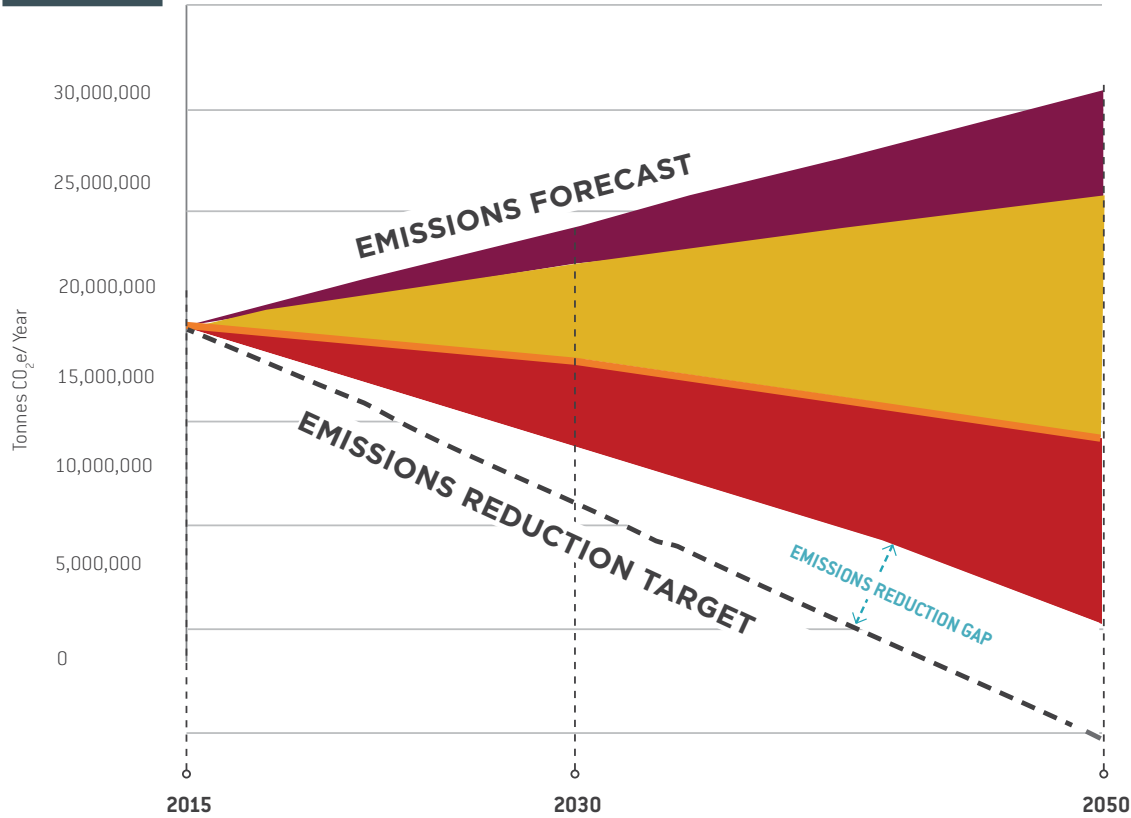
Actions related to the electricity grid energy mix to increase use of renewable sources.



Actions to increase use of public transit and active transportation options, as well as those that support the adoption of electric vehicle technology.

Tonnes CO ₂ e/Year (2030)	Tonnes CO ₂ e/Year (2050)	Actions	GHG Reduction Strategies	Assumptions
473,700	445,100	B1 B2 E7 E8 T16	Energy Efficiency: Existing City Buildings	City buys RECs to offset 100% of municipal electricity use in 2030 and 2050.
339,400	455,100	B4 B9	Energy Efficiency: Existing Residential Buildings	50% and 100% of municipal buildings achieve carbon neutrality by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
140,900	261,500	B7 B8 B10	Energy Efficiency: Existing Commercial Buildings	Love Field and Dallas Executive Airport achieve Level 3+ carbon accreditation.
-	2,034,600	B12 B14	Energy Efficiency: New Construction	All existing residential buildings reduce energy use 10% and 25% through lighting, appliance upgrades, space heating/cooling improvements, low-flow fixtures, and building envelope improvements by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
4,772,300	12,729,000	B11 E3 E4 E5 E6 E9	Renewable Energy: Increase Use	20% of existing commercial buildings reduce energy use 15% below 2015 levels by 2030 and 50% reduce energy use 20% below 2015 levels by 2050.
24,300	36,800	SW9	Energy Generation: Organics	All new construction from 2030 onward is zero-net energy.
56,400	103,900	SW5	Recycling: Paper Diversion	Dallas achieves 10% and 50% of solar capacity potential by 2030 and 2050, respectively (currently achieves less than 1% potential).
741,400	3,469,700	T3 T4 SW4	Electric Vehicles: Passenger	20% and 50% of customers purchase 100% renewable program by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
36,100	402,300	T1	Electric Vehicles: Transit	35% and 80% of food and yard waste is diverted by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
1,300	11,700	T11 T12	Land Use: Transit Oriented Development	60% and 90% paper waste diversion by 2030 and 2050, respectively.
635,800	2,762,600	T2 T5 T6 T9 T7 T10 T13 T14 T15	Travel Mode Shift: SOV Trip Reduction	14% and 50% passenger vehicles electric in 2030 and 2050, respectively.
2,603,600	1,536,200		Vehicle Fuel Efficiency: Federal	75% and 100% of DART buses are electric by 2030 and 2050, respectively.

GHG REDUCTION ESTIMATE FOR HIGH PARTICIPATION
SCENARIO



PROJECTED
GHG REDUCTION

30%
BELOW 2015

71%
BELOW 2015

TARGET
GHG REDUCTION

43%
BELOW 2015

100%
BELOW 2015

LEGEND



Actions that result in improved energy efficiency or fuel switching from natural gas to electricity.



Actions related to the electricity grid energy mix to increase use of renewable sources.



Actions that support waste diversion and treatment changes.



Actions to increase use of public transit and active transportation options, as well as those that support the adoption of electric vehicle technology.

Tonnes CO ₂ e/Year (2030)	Tonnes CO ₂ e/Year (2050)	Actions	GHG Reduction Strategies	Additional Assumptions
473,700	445,100	B1 B2 E7 E8 T16	Energy Efficiency: Existing City Buildings	
339,400	544,100	B4 B9	Energy Efficiency: Existing Residential Buildings	100% of homes sold from 2030 through 2050 reduce energy use by 10% through energy efficiency improvements at point-of-sale.
600,200	857,900	B7 B8 B10	Energy Efficiency: Existing Commercial Buildings	100% commercial buildings perform retro-commissioning to reduce energy use 15% by 2030, 100% commercial buildings perform comprehensive energy upgrade program to reduce energy use 30% by 2050.
-	2,034,600	B12 B14	Energy Efficiency: New Construction	
4,752,500	12,531,500	B11 E3 E4 E5 E6 E9	Renewable Energy: Increase Use	Changed as a result of decreased electricity use from other actions.
24,300	36,800	SW9	Energy Generation: Organics	
56,400	103,900	SW5	Recycling: Paper Diversion	
659,300	2,977,400	T3 T4 SW4	Electric Vehicles: Passenger	Changed as a result of decreased electricity use from other actions.
36,100	402,300	T1	Electric Vehicles: Transit	
1,300	11,700	T11 T12	Land Use: Transit Oriented Development	
1,520,700	3,922,900	T2 T5 T6 T9 T7 T10 T13 T14 T15	Travel Mode Shift: SOV Trip Reduction	10% of single occupant vehicle trips are avoided in TDM work from home programs.
2,314,300	1,316,800		Vehicle Fuel Efficiency: Federal	Changed as a result of fewer vehicle trips from other actions.

